CONTENTS

PREFACE

Preface xvii
  Objectives xvii
  Important Information on Features and Commands xvii
  Related Documentation xvii
  Document Conventions xviii
  Obtaining Documentation and Submitting a Service Request xx

CHAPTER 1

Read Me First 1

CHAPTER 2

Overview 3
  Introduction 3
  Sections in this Document 4
  Processes 5

CHAPTER 3

Configure Initial Router Settings on Cisco 4000 Series ISRs 7
  Perform Initial Configuration on Cisco 4000 Series ISRs 7
    Use Cisco Setup Command Facility 7
      Complete the Configuration 11
    Use Cisco IOS XE CLI—Manual Configuration 12
      Configure Cisco 4000 Series ISR Hostname 13
      Configure the Enable and Enable Secret Passwords 14
      Configure the Console Idle Privileged EXEC Timeout 15
  Gigabit Ethernet Management Interface Overview 17
    Default Gigabit Ethernet Configuration 17
    Gigabit Ethernet Port Numbering 17
    Configure Gigabit Ethernet Interfaces 17
Contents

CHAPTER 4  Basic Router Configuration 31
  Default Configuration 31
  Configuring Global Parameters 33
  Configuring Gigabit Ethernet Interfaces 33
  Configuring a Loopback Interface 34
  Configuring Module Interfaces 36
  Enabling Cisco Discovery Protocol 36
  Configuring Command-Line Access 36
  Configuring Static Routes 38
  Configuring Dynamic Routes 40
    Configuring Routing Information Protocol 40
    Configuring Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol 43

CHAPTER 5  Using Cisco IOS XE Software 45
  Accessing the CLI Using a Router Console 45
  Accessing the CLI Using a Directly-Connected Console 45
    Connecting to the Console Port 45
Using the Console Interface 46
Using SSH to Access Console 46
Accessing the CLI from a Remote Console Using Telnet 47
  Preparing to Connect to the Router Console Using Telnet 47
  Using Telnet to Access a Console Interface 48
Accessing the CLI from a USB Serial Console Port 48
Using Keyboard Shortcuts 49
Using the History Buffer to Recall Commands 49
  Understanding Command Modes 49
  Understanding Diagnostic Mode 51
Getting Help 52
Using the no and default Forms of Commands 56
Saving Configuration Changes 56
Managing Configuration Files 56
Filtering Output from the show and more Commands 57
Powering Off a Router 57
Finding Support Information for Platforms and Cisco Software Images 58
  Using Cisco Feature Navigator 58
  Using Software Advisor 58
  Using Software Release Notes 58
CLI Session Management 58
  Information About CLI Session Management 58
  Changing the CLI Session Timeout 59
  Locking a CLI Session 59

CHAPTER 6  Smart Licensing 61

Smart Licensing Client 61
  Prerequisites for Cisco Smart Licensing Client 61
  Restrictions for Cisco Smart Licensing Client 61
  Information About Cisco Smart Licensing Client 61
    Cisco Smart Licensing - An Overview 61
    Transitioning from CSL to Smart Licensing 62
    Cisco ONE Suites 62
  How to Activate Cisco Smart Licensing Client 62
Enable Smart Licensing 62
Smart License Disable 63
Device Registration 65
Troubleshooting for Cisco Smart Licensing Client 65
Configuration Examples for Cisco Smart Licensing Client 66
Example: Displays summary information about all licenses 66
Example: Enabling Smart Licensing 67

CHAPTER 7
Managing the Device Using Web User Interface 69
Setting Up Factory Default Device Using Web UI 69
Using Basic or Advanced Mode Setup Wizard 70
Configure LAN Settings 71
Configure Primary WAN Settings 71
Configure Secondary WAN Settings 72
Configure Security Settings 72
Using Web User Interface for Day One Setup 73

CHAPTER 8
Console Port, Telnet, and SSH Handling 75
Notes and Restrictions for Console Port, Telnet, and SSH 75
Console Port Overview 75
Console Port Handling Overview 76
Telnet and SSH Overview 76
Persistent Telnet and Persistent SSH Overview 76
Configuring a Console Port Transport Map 77
Configuring Persistent Telnet 79
Configuring Persistent SSH 81
Viewing Console Port, SSH, and Telnet Handling Configurations 84
Configuring Auxiliary Port for Modem Connection 89

CHAPTER 9
Installing the Software 91
Overview 91
ROMMON Images 91
Provisioning Files 92
File Systems 92
Autogenerated File Directories and Files 93
Flash Storage 94
Configuring the Configuration Register for Autoboot 94
Licensing 95
Cisco Software Licensing 95
Consolidated Packages 95
Technology Packages 96
securityk9 96
uck9 97
appxk9 97
Feature Licenses 97
HSECK9 97
Performance 98
Boost Performance Licenses 99
CME-SRST 102
Activating the CME-SRST Feature License 102
Unlicensed Feature: Example 103
LED Indicators 104
Related Documentation 104
How to Install and Upgrade the Software 104
Managing and Configuring a Router to Run Using a Consolidated Package 104
Configuring a Router to Boot the Consolidated Package via TFTP Using the boot Command: Example 106
Managing and Configuring a Router to Run Using Individual Packages 109
Installing Subpackages from a Consolidated Package 109
Installing Subpackages from a Consolidated Package on a Flash Drive 115
How to Install and Upgrade the Software for Cisco IOS XE Denali Release 16.3 115
Upgrading to Cisco IOS XE Denali Release 16.3 115
Installing a Firmware Subpackage 121
Upgrading the Firmware on xDSL NIMs 127

CHAPTER 10 Slot and Subslot Configuration 137
Configuring the Interfaces 137
Configuring Gigabit Ethernet Interfaces 137
Contents

CHAPTER 11

Process Health Monitoring 141
  Monitoring Control Plane Resources 141
    Avoiding Problems Through Regular Monitoring 141
  Cisco IOS Process Resources 142
  Overall Control Plane Resources 142
  Monitoring Hardware Using Alarms 144
    Router Design and Monitoring Hardware 145
    BootFlash Disk Monitoring 145
    Approaches for Monitoring Hardware Alarms 145
      Onsite Network Administrator Responds to Audible or Visual Alarms 145
      Viewing the Console or Syslog for Alarm Messages 146
      Network Management System Alerts a Network Administrator when an Alarm is Reported Through SNMP 148

CHAPTER 12

System Messages 151
  Information About Process Management 151
    How to Find Error Message Details 151

CHAPTER 13

Trace Management 157
  Tracing Overview 157
    How Tracing Works 157
  Tracing Levels 158
    Viewing a Tracing Level 159
  Setting a Tracing Level 161
    Viewing the Content of the Trace Buffer 161

CHAPTER 14

Environmental Monitoring and PoE Management 163
  Environmental Monitoring 163
    Environmental Monitoring and Reporting Functions 164
      Environmental Monitoring Functions 164
Diagnostic Signature Variables  236
How to Configure Diagnostic Signatures  236
Configuring the Call Home Service for Diagnostic Signatures  236
Configuring Diagnostic Signatures  238
Displaying Call Home Configuration Information  240
Default Call Home Settings  246
Alert Group Trigger Events and Commands  246
Message Contents  253
  Sample Syslog Alert Notification in Long-Text Format  257
  Sample Syslog Alert Notification in XML Format  259
Additional References  261

CHAPTER 17
Managing Cisco Enhanced Services and Network Interface Modules  263
Information About Cisco Enhanced Services and Network Interface Modules  263
Modules Supported  264
Network Interface Modules  264
  Cisco Fourth-Generation LTE Network Interface Module  264
  Cisco 4-Port and 8-Port Layer 2 Gigabit EtherSwitch Network Interface Module  264
  Cisco Fourth-Generation T1/E1 Voice and WAN Network Interface Module  264
  Cisco SSD/HDD Carrier Card NIM  265
  Cisco 1-, 2-, and 4-Port Serial NIM  265
  Upgrading the SSD or HDD Firmware  265
Error Monitoring  266
Enhanced Service Modules  266
  Cisco SM-1 T3/E3 Service Module  266
  Cisco UCS E-Series Server  266
  Cisco SM-X Layer 2/3 EtherSwitch Service Module  267
  Cisco 6-Port GE SFP Service Module  267
  Cisco 4-port GE SFP and 1-port 10 GE SFP Service Module  267
  Cisco 1GE-CU-SFP and 2GE-CU-SFP Network Interface Modules  267
Implementing SMs and NIMs on Your Router  268
  Downloading the Module Firmware  268
  Installing SMs and NIMs  268
  Accessing Your Module Through a Console Connection or Telnet  268
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 21: Session Initiation Protocol Triggered VPN</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Information about VPN-SIP</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Components for VPN-SIP Solution</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Session Initiation Protocol</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPN-SIP Solution</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature at a glance</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIP Call Flow</td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IKEv2 Negotiation</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supported Platforms</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisites for VPN-SIP</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restrictions for VPN-SIP</td>
<td>316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Configure VPN-SIP</td>
<td>316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring VPN-SIP</td>
<td>316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verifying VPN-SIP on a Local Router</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verifying VPN-SIP on a Remote Router</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Examples for VPN-SIP</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Examples for VPN-SIP</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troubleshooting for VPN-SIP</td>
<td>323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional References for VPN-SIP</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Information for VPN-SIP</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 22: Configuring Voice Functionality</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Call Waiting</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Transfers</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E1 R2 Signaling Configuration</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Group D Configuration</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Media and Signaling Authentication and Encryption</td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 23

Dying Gasp Through SNMP, Syslog and Ethernet OAM 347
Prerequisites for Dying Gasp Support 347
Restrictions for Dying Gasp Support 347
Information About Dying Gasp Through SNMP, Syslog and Ethernet OAM 348
  Dying Gasp 348
How to Configure Dying Gasp Through SNMP, Syslog and Ethernet OAM 348
  Dying Gasp Trap Support for Different SNMP Server Host/Port Configurations 348
    Environmental Settings on the Network Management Server 348
  Message Displayed on the Peer Router on Receiving Dying Gasp Notification 349
  Displaying SNMP Configuration for Receiving Dying Gasp Notification 349
Configuration Examples for Dying Gasp Through SNMP, Syslog and Ethernet OAM 349
  Example: Configuring SNMP Community Strings on a Router 349
  Example: Configuring SNMP-Server Host Details on the Router Console 350
Feature Information for Dying Gasp Support 350

CHAPTER 24

Support for Software Media Termination Point 351
Finding Feature Information 351
Information About Support for Software Media Termination Point 351
How to Configure Support for Software Media Termination Point 352
Prerequisites 352
Restrictions 352
Configuring Support for Software Media Termination Point 352
  Examples 355
    Troubleshooting Tips 355
Feature Information for Support for Software Media Termination Point 357

CHAPTER 25

Configuration Examples 359
Copying the Consolidated Package from the TFTP Server to the Router 359
Configuring the Router to Boot Using the Consolidated Package Stored on the Router 360
Extracting the Subpackages from a Consolidated Package into the Same File System 362
Extracting the Subpackages from a Consolidated Package into a Different File System 364
Configuring the Router to Boot Using Subpackages 365

Backing Up Configuration Files 371
  - Copying a Startup Configuration File to BootFlash 371
  - Copying a Startup Configuration File to a USB Flash Drive 372
  - Copying a Startup Configuration File to a TFTP Server 372

DisplayingDigitallySignedCiscoSoftwareSignatureInformation 372

Obtaining the Description ofa Module or Consolidated Package 376

A P P E N D I X  A

Unsupported Commands 377
Preface

This section briefly describes the objectives of this document and provides links to additional information on related products and services:

- Objectives, on page xvii
- Important Information on Features and Commands, on page xvii
- Related Documentation, on page xvii
- Document Conventions, on page xviii
- Obtaining Documentation and Submitting a Service Request, on page xx

Objectives

This guide provides an overview of the Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers (ISRs) and explains how to configure the various features on these routers.

The structure of this document is explained in Overview, on page 3.

Important Information on Features and Commands

For more information about Cisco IOS XE software, including features available on the router (described in configuration guides), see the Cisco IOS XE 3S Software Documentation set. In addition to the features described in the Cisco IOS XE 3S Configuration Guides, there also separate configuration guides for features such as No Service Password Recovery, Multilink PPP Support, and Network Synchronization. See the Configuration Guides for the Cisco ISR 4400 Series.

To verify support for specific features, use Cisco Feature Navigator. For more information about this, see Using Cisco Feature Navigator, on page 58.

To find reference information for a specific Cisco IOS XE command, see the Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases.

Related Documentation

- Documentation Roadmap for the Cisco 4400 Series Integrated Services Routers
- Release Notes for the Cisco 4400 Series Integrated Services Routers
 Commands

Cisco IOS XE commands are identical in look, feel, and usage to Cisco IOS commands on most platforms. To find reference information for a specific Cisco IOS XE command, see the Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases document.

 Features

The router runs Cisco IOS XE software which is used on multiple platforms. For more information on the available software features, see the configuration guides on the Cisco IOS XE 3S Software Documentation page.

In addition to the features in the Cisco IOS XE 3S Configuration Guides, there are also separate configuration guides for the features listed in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>URL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

To verify support for specific features, use the Cisco Feature Navigator tool. For more information, see Using Cisco Feature Navigator, on page 58.

Document Conventions

This documentation uses the following conventions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Convention</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>^ or Ctrl</td>
<td>The ^ and Ctrl symbols represent the Control key. For example, the key combination ^D or Ctrl-D means hold down the Control key while you press the D key. Keys are indicated in capital letters but are not case sensitive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>string</td>
<td>A string is a nonquoted set of characters shown in italics. For example, when setting an SNMP community string to public, do not use quotation marks around the string or the string will include the quotation marks.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Command syntax descriptions use the following conventions:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Convention</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>bold</strong></td>
<td>Bold text indicates commands and keywords that you enter exactly as shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>italics</em></td>
<td>Italic text indicates arguments for which you supply values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[x]</td>
<td>Square brackets enclose an optional element (keyword or argument).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A vertical line indicates a choice within an optional or required set of keywords or arguments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[x</td>
<td>y]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{x</td>
<td>y}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nested sets of square brackets or braces indicate optional or required choices within optional or required elements. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Convention</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[x {y</td>
<td>z}]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples use the following conventions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Convention</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>screen</td>
<td>Examples of information displayed on the screen are set in Courier font.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bold screen</strong></td>
<td>Examples of text that you must enter are set in Courier bold font.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;&gt;</td>
<td>Angle brackets enclose text that is not printed to the screen, such as passwords.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!</td>
<td>An exclamation point at the beginning of a line indicates a comment line. (Exclamation points are also displayed by the Cisco IOS XE software for certain processes.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ ]</td>
<td>Square brackets enclose default responses to system prompts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ **Caution**

Means *reader be careful*. In this situation, you might do something that could result in equipment damage or loss of data.
Means reader take note. Notes contain helpful suggestions or references to materials that may not be contained in this manual.

Obtaining Documentation and Submitting a Service Request

For information on obtaining documentation, submitting a service request, and gathering additional information, see the monthly What's New in Cisco Product Documentation, which also lists all new and revised Cisco technical documentation at: http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/general/whatsnew/whatsnew.html.
Read Me First

Important Information about Cisco IOS XE 16

Effective Cisco IOS XE Release 3.7.0E for Catalyst Switching and Cisco IOS XE Release 3.17S (for Access and Edge Routing) the two releases evolve (merge) into a single version of converged release—the Cisco IOS XE 16—providing one release covering the extensive range of access and edge products in the Switching and Routing portfolio.

Feature Information
Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about feature support, platform support, and Cisco software image support. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Related References
• Cisco IOS Command References, All Releases

Obtaining Documentation and Submitting a Service Request
• To receive timely, relevant information from Cisco, sign up at Cisco Profile Manager.
• To get the business impact you’re looking for with the technologies that matter, visit Cisco Services.
• To submit a service request, visit Cisco Support.
• To discover and browse secure, validated enterprise-class apps, products, solutions and services, visit Cisco Marketplace.
• To obtain general networking, training, and certification titles, visit Cisco Press.
• To find warranty information for a specific product or product family, access Cisco Warranty Finder.
Overview

This document is a summary of software functionality that is specific to the Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers (ISRs).

The following table lists the router models that belong to the Cisco 4000 Series ISRs.

Table 1: Cisco 4000 Series Router Models

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cisco 4000 Series ISRs</th>
<th>Cisco 4300 Series ISRs</th>
<th>Cisco 4200 Series ISRs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco 4221 ISR</td>
<td>Cisco 4321 ISR</td>
<td>Cisco 4221 ISR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco 4321 ISR</td>
<td>Cisco 4331 ISR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco 4331 ISR</td>
<td>Cisco 4351 ISR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco 4431 ISR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco 4451 ISR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco 4461 ISR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note

Unless otherwise specified, the information in this document is applicable to both Cisco 4400 Series, Cisco 4300 Series and Cisco 4200 Series routers.

The following sections are included in this chapter:

- Introduction, on page 3
- Sections in this Document, on page 4
- Processes, on page 5

Introduction

The Cisco 4000 Series ISRs are modular routers with LAN and WAN connections that can be configured by means of interface modules, including Cisco Enhanced Service Modules (SM-Xs), and Network Interface Modules (NIMs). NIM slots also support removable storage for hosted applications.

The following features are provided for enterprise and service provider applications:

- Enterprise Applications
  - High-end branch gateway
  - Regional site aggregation
• Key server or PfR master controller
• Device consolidation or "Rack in a Box"

• Service Provider Applications
  • High-end managed services in Customer-Premises Equipment (CPE)
  • Services consolidation platform
  • Route reflector or shadow router
  • Flexible customer edge router

The router runs Cisco IOS XE software, and uses software components in many separate processes. This modular architecture increases network resiliency, compared to standard Cisco IOS software.

## Sections in this Document

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overview, on page 3</td>
<td>Provides a high-level description of the router and describes the main internal processes of the router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Cisco IOS XE Software, on page 45</td>
<td>Describes the basics of using Cisco IOS XE software with the router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing the Device Using Web User Interface, on page 69</td>
<td>Describes the uses of a Gigabit Ethernet management interface and a web user interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Console Port, Telnet, and SSH Handling, on page 75</td>
<td>Describes software features that are common across Cisco IOS XE platforms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installing the Software, on page 91</td>
<td>Contains important information about filesystems, packages, licensing, and installing software.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic Router Configuration, on page 31</td>
<td>Describes the basic tasks required to configure a router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slot and Subslot Configuration, on page 137</td>
<td>Provides information about the chassis slot numbers and subslots where the service modules are installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process Health Monitoring, on page 141</td>
<td>Provides information about managing and monitoring the health of various components of the router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Messages, on page 151</td>
<td>Provides information about syslog messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trace Management, on page 157</td>
<td>Describes the tracing function where logs of internal events on a router are recorded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental Monitoring and PoE Management, on page 163</td>
<td>Describes the environmental monitoring features on a router.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Processes

The list of background processes in the following table may be useful for checking router state and troubleshooting. However, you do not need to understand these processes to understand most router operations.

Table 3: Individual Processes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Process</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
<th>Affected FRUs</th>
<th>Sub Package Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chassis Manager</td>
<td>Controls chassis management functions, including management of the High Availability (HA) state, environmental monitoring, and FRU state control.</td>
<td>RP, SIP, ESP</td>
<td>RPControl, SIPBase, ESPBase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host Manager</td>
<td>Provides an interface between the IOS process and many of the information gathering functions of the underlying platform kernel and operating system.</td>
<td>RP, SIP, ESP</td>
<td>RPControl, SIPBase, ESPBase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logger</td>
<td>Provides IOS logging services to processes running on each FRU.</td>
<td>RP, SIP, ESP</td>
<td>RPControl, SIPBase, ESPBase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IOS</td>
<td>Implements all forwarding and routing features for the router.</td>
<td>RP</td>
<td>RPIOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td>Affected FRUs</td>
<td>Sub Package Mapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forwarding Manager</td>
<td>Manages downloading of configuration details to the ESP and the communication of forwarding plane information, such as statistics, to the IOS process.</td>
<td>RP</td>
<td>RPControl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ESP</td>
<td>ESPBase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluggable Services</td>
<td>Provide integration between platform policy applications, such as authentication and the IOS process.</td>
<td>RP</td>
<td>RPControl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shell Manager</td>
<td>Provides user interface (UI) features relating to non-IOS components of the consolidated package. These features are also available for use in diagnostic mode when the IOS process fails.</td>
<td>RP</td>
<td>RPControl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO Module process</td>
<td>Exchanges configuration and other control messages with a NIM, or Enhanced Service Module (SM-X).</td>
<td>IO Module</td>
<td>SIPSPA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPP driver process</td>
<td>Manages CPP hardware forwarding engine on the ESP.</td>
<td>ESP</td>
<td>ESPBase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPP HA process</td>
<td>Manages HA state for the CPP hardware forwarding engine.</td>
<td>ESP</td>
<td>ESPBase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPP SP process</td>
<td>Performs high-latency tasks for the CPP-facing functionality in the ESP instance of the Forwarding Manager process.</td>
<td>ESP</td>
<td>ESPBase</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For further details of router capabilities and models, see the Hardware Installation Guide for the Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers.
Perform Initial Configuration on Cisco 4000 Series ISRs

You can perform initial configuration on Cisco 4000 Series ISRs by using either the setup command facility or the Cisco IOS command-line interface (CLI):

Use Cisco Setup Command Facility

The setup command facility prompts you to enter the information about your router and network. The facility steps guides you through the initial configuration, which includes LAN and WAN interfaces. For more general information about the setup command facility, see the following document:


This section explains how to configure a hostname for the router, set passwords, and configure an interface to communicate with the management network.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The messages that are displayed will vary based on your router model, the installed interface modules, and the software image. The following example and the user entries (in <strong>bold</strong>) are shown only as examples.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If you make a mistake while using the setup command facility, you can exit and run the setup command facility again. Press Ctrl-C, and enter the setup command in privileged EXEC mode (Router#)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This chapter describes how to perform the initial configuration on Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers (ISRs). It contains the following sections:

- Perform Initial Configuration on Cisco 4000 Series ISRs, on page 7
- Verify Network Connectivity, on page 25
- Verify Initial Configuration on Cisco 4000 Series ISRs, on page 29
To configure the initial router settings by using the setup command facility, follow these steps:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. From the Cisco IOS-XE CLI, enter the `setup` command in privileged EXEC mode:
2. To proceed using the setup command facility, enter `yes`.
3. To enter the basic management setup, enter `yes`.
4. Enter a hostname for the router (this example uses ‘myrouter’):
5. Enter an enable secret password. This password is encrypted (for more security) and cannot be seen when viewing the configuration.
6. Enter an enable password that is different from the enable secret password. This password is not encrypted (and is less secure) and can be seen when viewing the configuration.
7. Enter the virtual terminal password, which prevents unauthenticated access to the router through ports other than the console port:
8. Respond to the following prompts as appropriate for your network:
9. Respond to the following prompts as appropriate for your network:
10. Respond to the following prompts. Select [2] to save the initial configuration:

**DETAILED STEPS**

---

**Step 1**

From the Cisco IOS-XE CLI, enter the `setup` command in privileged EXEC mode:

**Example:**

Router> enable
Password: <password>
Router# setup

--- System Configuration Dialog ---
Continue with configuration dialog? [yes/no]:

You are now in the Setup Configuration Utility.

Depending on your router model, the installed interface modules, and the software image, the prompts in the setup command facility vary. The following steps and the user entries (in bold) are shown only as examples.

**Note**

This setup command facility is also entered automatically if there is no configuration on the router when it is booted into Cisco IOS-XE.

**Note**

If you make a mistake while using the setup command facility, you can exit and run the setup command facility again. Press Ctrl-C, and enter the setup command at the privileged EXEC mode prompt (Router#).

For more information on using the setup command facility, see *The Setup Command* chapter in *Cisco IOS Configuration Fundamentals Command Reference*, Release 12.2T, at the following URL:


---

**Step 2**

To proceed using the setup command facility, enter `yes`.

**Example:**

Continue with configuration dialog? [yes/no]:
At any point you may enter a question mark '?' for help.
Use ctrl-c to abort configuration dialog at any prompt. Default settings are in square brackets '[]'.

Step 3  
To enter the basic management setup, enter yes.

Example:

Would you like to enter basic management setup? [yes/no]: yes

Step 4  
Enter a hostname for the router (this example uses ‘myrouter’):

Example:

Configuring global parameters:
Enter host name [Router]: myrouter

Step 5  
Enter an enable secret password. This password is encrypted (for more security) and cannot be seen when viewing the configuration.

Example:

The enable secret is a password used to protect access to privileged EXEC and configuration modes. This password, after entered, becomes encrypted in the configuration.
Enter enable secret: cisco

Step 6  
Enter an enable password that is different from the enable secret password. This password is not encrypted (and is less secure) and can be seen when viewing the configuration.

Example:

The enable password is used when you do not specify an enable secret password, with some older software versions, and some boot images.
Enter enable password: cisco123

Step 7  
Enter the virtual terminal password, which prevents unauthenticated access to the router through ports other than the console port:

Example:

The virtual terminal password is used to protect access to the router over a network interface.
Enter virtual terminal password: cisco

Step 8  
Respond to the following prompts as appropriate for your network:

Example:

Configure SNMP Network Management? [no]: yes
   Community string [public]:

A summary of the available interfaces is displayed.

Note  
The interface summary includes interface numbering, which is dependent on the router model and the installed modules and interface cards.

Example:

Current interface summary
Step 9

Respond to the following prompts as appropriate for your network:

Example:

Configuring interface GigabitEthernet0/1/0:

Configure IP on this interface? [yes]: yes
IP address for this interface [10.10.10.12]:
Subnet mask for this interface [255.0.0.0]: 255.255.255.0
Class A network is 10.0.0.0, 24 subnet bits; mask is /24

The following configuration command script was created:

Example:

hostname myrouter
enable secret 5 $1$t/Dj$yAeGv1LLNQBX0b9efO0 enable password cisco123 line vty 0 4 password cisco
snmp-server community public
no ip routing!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0
shutdown
no ip address!
interface GigabitEthernet0/1/0
shutdown
no ip address!
interface GigabitEthernet0/2/0
shutdown
no ip address!
end

Step 10

Respond to the following prompts. Select [2] to save the initial configuration:

Example:

[0] Go to the IOS command prompt without saving this config.
[1] Return back to the setup without saving this config.
[2] Save this configuration to nvram and exit.
Enter your selection [2]: 2
Building configuration... Use the enabled mode 'configure' command to modify this configuration.
Press RETURN to get started! RETURN

The user prompt is displayed:

Example:

myrouter>
**Complete the Configuration**

When using the Cisco Setup, and after you have provided all the information requested by the facility, the final configuration appears. To complete your router configuration, follow these steps:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. Choose to save the configuration when the facility prompts you to save the configuration.
2. When the messages stop appearing on your screen, press **Return** to get the Router> prompt.
3. Choose to modify the existing configuration or create another configuration. The Router> prompt indicates that you are now at the command-line interface (CLI) and you have just completed a initial router configuration. Nevertheless, this is not a complete configuration. At this point, you have two choices:

**DETAILED STEPS**

**Step 1**  Choose to save the configuration when the facility prompts you to save the configuration.

- If you answer ‘no’, the configuration information you entered is not saved, and you return to the router enable prompt (Router#). Enter setup to return to the System Configuration Dialog.
- If you answer ‘yes’, the configuration is saved, and you are returned to the user EXEC prompt (Router>).

**Example:**

```
Use this configuration? {yes/no} : yes
Building configuration...
Press RETURN to get started!
%LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface Ethernet0/0, changed state to up
%LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface Ethernet0/1, changed state to up
%LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface Serial0/0/0, changed state to up
%LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface Serial0/0/1, changed state to down
%LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface Serial0/2, changed state to down
%LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface Serial1/0, changed state to up
%LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface Serial1/1, changed state to down
%LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface Serial1/2, changed state to down
<Additional messages omitted.>
```

**Step 2**  When the messages stop appearing on your screen, press **Return** to get the Router> prompt.

**Step 3**  Choose to modify the existing configuration or create another configuration. The Router> prompt indicates that you are now at the command-line interface (CLI) and you have just completed a initial router configuration. Nevertheless, this is not a complete configuration. At this point, you have two choices:

- Run the setup command facility again, and create another configuration.

**Example:**

```
Router> enable
Password: password
Router# setup
```

- Modify the existing configuration or configure additional features by using the CLI:

**Example:**

```
Router> enable
Password: password
```
Use Cisco IOS XE CLI—Manual Configuration

This section describes how to access the command-line interface (CLI) to perform the initial configuration on the router.

Note

To configure the initial router settings by using the Cisco IOS CLI, you must set up a console connection. If the default configuration file is installed on the router prior to shipping, the system configuration dialog message does not appear. To configure the device, follow these steps:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. Enter the appropriate answer when the following system message appears on the router.
2. Press Return to terminate autoinstall and continue with manual configuration:
3. Press Return to bring up the Router> prompt.
4. Type enable to enter privileged EXEC mode:

DETAILED STEPS

Step 1
Enter the appropriate answer when the following system message appears on the router.

Example:

--- System Configuration Dialog ---
At any point you may enter a question mark '?' for help.
Use ctrl-c to abort configuration dialog at any prompt.
Default settings are in square brackets '
'.
Would you like to enter the initial configuration dialog? [yes/no]: no

Step 2
Press Return to terminate autoinstall and continue with manual configuration:

Example:

Would you like to terminate autoinstall? [yes]

Several messages are displayed, ending with a line similar to the following:

Example:

...
Configure Cisco 4000 Series ISR Hostname

The hostname is used in CLI prompts and default configuration filenames. If you do not configure the router hostname, the router uses the factory-assigned default hostname “Router.”

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. hostname name
4. Verify that the router prompt displays your new hostname.
5. end

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Router&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>hostname name</td>
<td>Specifies or modifies the hostname for the network server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Router(config)# hostname myrouter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Verify that the router prompt displays your new hostname.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configure the Enable and Enable Secret Passwords

To provide an additional layer of security, particularly for passwords that cross the network or are stored on a TFTP server, you can use either the `enable password` command or `enable secret` command. Both commands accomplish the same thing—they allow you to establish an encrypted password that users must enter to access privileged EXEC (enable) mode.

We recommend that you use the `enable secret` command because it uses an improved encryption algorithm. Use the `enable password` command only if you boot an older image of the Cisco IOS XE software.

For more information, see the “Configuring Passwords and Privileges” chapter in the Cisco IOS Security Configuration Guide. Also see the Cisco IOS Password Encryption Facts tech note and the Improving Security on Cisco Routers tech note.

---

**Note**

If you configure the `enable secret` command, it takes precedence over the `enable password` command; the two commands cannot be in effect simultaneously.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. ` configure terminal`
3. `enable password password`
4. `enable secret password`
5. `end`
6. `enable`
7. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Router&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action | Purpose
--- | ---
Router# configure terminal |  
**Step 3** ```enable password password```  
**Example:**  
Router(config)# enable password pswd2 | (Optional) Sets a local password to control access to various privilege levels.  
- We recommend that you perform this step only if you boot an older image of the Cisco IOS-XE software or if you boot older boot ROMs that do not recognize the ```enable secret``` command.

**Step 4** ```enable secret password```  
**Example:**  
Router(config)# enable secret greentree | Specifies an additional layer of security over the ```enable password``` command.  
- Do not use the same password that you entered in **Step 3**.

**Step 5** ```end```  
**Example:**  
Router(config)# end | Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

**Step 6** ```enable```  
**Example:**  
Router> enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
- Verify that your new enable or ```enable secret``` password works.

**Step 7** ```end```  
**Example:**  
Router(config)# end | (Optional) Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

### Configure the Console Idle Privileged EXEC Timeout

This section describes how to configure the console line’s idle privileged EXEC timeout. By default, the privileged EXEC command interpreter waits 10 minutes to detect user input before timing out.

When you configure the console line, you can also set communication parameters, specify autobaud connections, and configure terminal operating parameters for the terminal that you are using. For more information on configuring the console line, see the *Cisco IOS Configuration Fundamentals and Network Management Configuration Guide*. In particular, see the “Configuring Operating Characteristics for Terminals” and “Troubleshooting and Fault Management” chapters.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. ```enable```  
2. ```configure terminal```  
3. ```line console 0```  
4. ```exec-timeout minutes [seconds]```  
5. ```end```
### 6. show running-config

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> line console 0</td>
<td>Configures the console line and starts the line configuration command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>collection mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# line console 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> exec-timeout minutes [seconds]</td>
<td>Sets the idle privileged EXEC timeout, which is the interval that the privileged EXEC command interpreter waits until user input is detected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-line)# exec-timeout 0 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> show running-config</td>
<td>Displays the running configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to set the console idle privileged EXEC timeout to 2 minutes 30 seconds:

```plaintext
line console
exec-timeout 2 30
```

The following example shows how to set the console idle privileged EXEC timeout to 30 seconds:

```plaintext
line console
exec-timeout 0 30
```
Gigabit Ethernet Management Interface Overview

The router provides an Ethernet management port named GigabitEthernet0.

The purpose of this interface is to allow users to perform management tasks on the router. It is an interface that should not and often cannot forward network traffic. It can, however, be used to access the router through Telnet and SSH to perform management tasks on the router. The interface is most useful before a router begins routing, or in troubleshooting scenarios when other forwarding interfaces are inactive.

Note the following aspects of the management ethernet interface:

- The router has one management ethernet interface named GigabitEthernet0.
- IPv4, IPv6, and ARP are the only routed protocols supported for the interface.
- The interface provides a way to access to the router even if forwarding interfaces are not functional, or the IOS process is down.
- The management ethernet interface is part of its own VRF. See the “Management Ethernet Interface VRF” section in the Software Configuration Guide for Cisco 4000 Series ISRs for more details.

Default Gigabit Ethernet Configuration

By default, a forwarding VRF is configured for the interface with a special group named “Mgmt-intf.” This cannot be changed. This isolates the traffic on the management interface away from the forwarding plane. The basic configuration is like other interfaces; however, there are many forwarding features that are not supported on these interfaces. No forwarding features can be configured on the GigabitEthernet0 interface as it is only used for management.

For example, the default configuration is as follows:
```
interface GigabitEthernet0
vrf forwarding Mgmt-intf
ip address 172.18.77.212 255.255.255.240
negotiation auto
```

Gigabit Ethernet Port Numbering

The Gigabit Ethernet Management port is always GigabitEthernet0.

The port can be accessed in configuration mode.

```
Router# config t
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Router(config)#interface gigabitethernet0
Router(config-if)#
```

Configure Gigabit Ethernet Interfaces

This section shows how to assign an IP address and interface description to an Ethernet interface on your router.


For information on interface numbering, see the software configuration guide for your router.
### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `show ip interface brief`
3. `configure terminal`
4. `interface {fastethernet | gigabitethernet} 0/port`
5. `description string`
6. `ip address ip-address mask`
7. `no shutdown`
8. `end`
9. `show ip interface brief`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | `enable` | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
 | **Example:**  
 | Router> enable | - Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | `show ip interface brief` | Displays a brief status of the interfaces that are configured for IP.  
 | **Example:**  
 | Router# show ip interface brief | - Learn which type of Ethernet interface is on your router. |
| **Step 3** | `configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode.  
 | **Example:**  
 | Router# configure terminal | |
| **Step 4** | `interface {fastethernet | gigabitethernet} 0/port` | Specifies the Ethernet interface and enters interface configuration mode.  
 | **Example:**  
 | Router(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/0/0 | **Note** For information on interface numbering, see [Slots, Subslots (Bay), Ports, and Interfaces in Cisco 4000 Series ISRs, page 1-38](#). |
| **Step 5** | `description string` | (Optional) Adds a description to an interface configuration. The description helps you remember what is attached to this interface. The description can be useful for troubleshooting.  
 | **Example:**  
 | Router(config-if)# description GE int to 2nd floor south wing | |
| **Step 6** | `ip address ip-address mask` | Sets a primary IP address for an interface.  
 | **Example:**  
 | Router(config-if)# ip address 172.16.74.3 255.255.255.0 | |
### Command or Action | Purpose
--- | ---
**Step 7**  
no shutdown  
*Example:*  
Router (config-if)# no shutdown | Enables an interface.

**Step 8**  
end  
*Example:*  
Router (config)# end | Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

**Step 9**  
show ip interface brief  
*Example:*  
Router# show ip interface brief | Displays a brief status of the interfaces that are configured for IP. Verify that the Ethernet interfaces are up and configured correctly.

### Configuration Examples

**Configuring the GigabitEthernet Interface: Example**

```plaintext
!  
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0  
description GE int to HR group  
ip address 172.16.3.3 255.255.255.0  
duplex auto  
speed auto  
no shutdown  
!
```

**Sample Output for the show ip interface brief Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>IP-Address</th>
<th>OK? Method Status</th>
<th>Protocol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/0</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES NVRAM administratively down down</td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/1</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES NVRAM administratively down down</td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/2</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES NVRAM administratively down down</td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/3</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES NVRAM administratively down down</td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0</td>
<td>10.0.0.1</td>
<td>YES manual up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Specify a Default Route or Gateway of Last Resort

This section describes how to specify a default route with IP routing enabled. For alternative methods of specifying a default route, see the Configuring a Gateway of Last Resort Using IP Commands Technical Specifications Note.

The Cisco IOS-XE software uses the gateway (router) as a last resort if it does not have a better route for a packet and if the destination is not a connected network. This section describes how to select a network as a default route (a candidate route for computing the gateway of last resort). The way in which routing protocols propagate the default route information varies for each protocol.
Configure Initial Router Settings on Cisco 4000 Series ISRs

Configure IP Routing and IP Protocols

For comprehensive configuration information about IP routing and IP routing protocols, see the Configuring IP Routing Protocol-Independent Feature at cisco.com.

IP Routing

IP routing is automatically enabled in the Cisco ISO-XE software. When IP routing is configured, the system will use a configured or learned route to forward packets, including a configured default route.

This task section does not apply when IP routing is disabled. To specify a default route when IP routing is disabled, refer to the Configuring a Gateway of Last Resort Using IP Commands Technical Specifications Note at cisco.com.

Default Routes

A router might not be able to determine the routes to all other networks. To provide complete routing capability, the common practice is to use some routers as smart routers and give the remaining routers default routes to the smart router. (Smart routers have routing table information for the entire internetwork.) These default routes can be passed along dynamically, or can be configured into the individual routers.

Most dynamic interior routing protocols include a mechanism for causing a smart router to generate dynamic default information that is then passed along to other routers.

Default Network

If a router has an interface that is directly connected to the specified default network, the dynamic routing protocols running on the router generates or sources a default route. In the case of RIP, the router will advertise the pseudonetwork 0.0.0.0. In the case of IGRP, the network itself is advertised and flagged as an exterior route.

A router that is generating the default for a network may also need a default of its own. One way a router can generate its own default is to specify a static route to the network 0.0.0.0 through the appropriate device.

Gateway of Last Resort

When default information is being passed along through a dynamic routing protocol, no further configuration is required. The system periodically scans its routing table to choose the optimal default network as its default route. In the case of RIP, there is only one choice, network 0.0.0.0. In the case of IGRP, there might be several networks that can be candidates for the system default. The Cisco IOS-XE software uses both administrative distance and metric information to determine the default route (gateway of last resort). The selected default route appears in the gateway of last resort display of the show ip route EXEC command.

If dynamic default information is not being passed to the software, candidates for the default route are specified with the ip default-network global configuration command. In this usage, the ip default-network command takes an unconnected network as an argument. If this network appears in the routing table from any source (dynamic or static), it is flagged as a candidate default route and is a possible choice for the default route.

If the router has no interface on the default network, but does have a route to it, it considers this network as a candidate default path. The route candidates are examined and based on administrative distance and metric, the best one is chosen. The gateway to the best default path becomes the gateway of last resort.
**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. ip routing
4. **ip route** dest-prefix mask next-hop-ip-address [admin-distance] [permanent]
5. Do one of the following:
   - **ip default-network** network-number
   - **ip route** dest-prefix mask next-hop-ip-address
6. end
7. show ip route

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> ip routing</td>
<td>Enables IP routing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# ip routing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> ip route dest-prefix mask next-hop-ip-address [admin-distance] [permanent]</td>
<td>Establishes a static route.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# ip route 192.168.24.0 255.255.255.0 172.28.99.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> Do one of the following:</td>
<td>Selects a network as a candidate route for computing the gateway of last resort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- <strong>ip default-network</strong> network-number</td>
<td>Creates a static route to network 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 for computing the gateway of last resort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- <strong>ip route</strong> dest-prefix mask next-hop-ip-address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# ip default-network 192.168.24.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 172.28.99.1</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 6

**Example:**

Router(config)# end

### Step 7

**Example:**

Router# show ip route

---

**Configuration Examples**

**Specifying a Default Route: Example**

```plaintext
! ip route 192.168.24.0 255.255.255.0 172.28.99.2 !
! ip default-network 192.168.24.0 !
```

**Sample Output for the show ip route Command**

Router# show ip route

Codes: L - local, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, M - mobile, B - BGP
D - EIGRP, EX - EIGRP external, O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2 i - IS-IS, su - IS-IS summary, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2 ia - IS-IS inter area, * - candidate default,
U - per-user static route o - ODR, P - periodic downloaded static route, H - NHRP, l - LISP a - application route + - replicated route, % - next hop override
Gateway of last resort is not set 40.0.0.0/8 is variably subnetted, 2 subnets, 2 masks C
40.0.0.0/24 is directly connected, Loopback1 L 40.0.0.1/32 is directly connected, Loopback1
```

**Configure Virtual Terminal Lines for Remote Console Access**

Virtual terminal (vty) lines are used to allow remote access to the router. This section shows you how to configure the virtual terminal lines with a password, so that only authorized users can remotely access the router.

By default, the router has five virtual terminal lines. However, you can create additional virtual terminal lines. See the Cisco IOS XE Dial Technologies Configuration Guide at http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/ios/dial/configuration/guide/2_xe/dia_2_xe_book.html.

. See the Security with Passwords, Privilege Levels, and Login Usernames for CLI Sessions on Networking Devices section. If you want to secure the virtual terminal lines (vty) with an access list, see the Access Control Lists: Overview and Guidelines.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **line vty line-number [ending-line-number]**
4. **password password**
5. **login**
6. **end**
7. **show running-config**
8. From another network device, attempt to open a Telnet session to the router.

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><strong>enable</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Router&gt; enable</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><strong>configure terminal</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Router# configure terminal</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><strong>line vty line-number [ending-line-number]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Starts the line configuration command collection mode for the virtual terminal lines (vty) for remote console access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Make sure that you configure all vty lines on your router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> To verify the number of vty lines on your router, use the line vty ? command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Router(config)# line vty 0 4</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><strong>password password</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Specifies a password on a line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Router(config-line)# password guessagain</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td><strong>login</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Enables password checking at login.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Router(config-line)# login</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td><strong>end</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-line)# end</td>
<td>Displays the running configuration file. Verify that you have properly configured the virtual terminal lines for remote access.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 7**

**Example:**

Router# show running-config

Verifies that you can remotely access the router and that the virtual terminal line password is correctly configured.

**Step 8**

**Example:**

Router# 172.16.74.3

Password:

**Configuration Examples**

The following example shows how to configure virtual terminal lines with a password:

```
! line vty 0 4
  password guessagain
  login
!
```

**What to Do Next**

After you configure the vty lines, follow these steps:

- (Optional) To encrypt the virtual terminal line password, see the “Configuring Passwords and Privileges” chapter in the Cisco IOS Security Configuration Guide. Also see the Cisco IOS Password Encryption Facts tech note.
- (Optional) To secure the VTY lines with an access list, see the “Part 3: Traffic Filtering and Firewalls” in the Cisco IOS Security Configuration Guide.

**Configure the Auxiliary Line**

This section describes how to enter line configuration mode for the auxiliary line. How you configure the auxiliary line depends on your particular implementation of the auxiliary (AUX) port. See the following documents for information on configuring the auxiliary line:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. line aux 0
4. See the Technical Specifications Note and sample configurations to configure the line for your particular implementation of the AUX port.

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>line aux 0</td>
<td>Starts the line configuration command collection mode for the auxiliary line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# line aux 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See the Technical Specifications Note and sample configurations to configure the line for your particular implementation of the AUX port.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Verify Network Connectivity

This section describes how to verify network connectivity for your router.

Before you begin

• All configuration tasks describe in this chapter must be completed.
• The router must be connected to a properly configured network host.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. ping [ip-address | hostname]
3. telnet {ip-address | hostname}
## DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Router&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> ping [ip-address</td>
<td>hostname]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Router# ping 172.16.74.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> telnet [ip-address</td>
<td>hostname]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Router# telnet 10.20.30.40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Examples

The following display shows sample output for the ping command when you ping the IP address 192.168.7.27:

```
Router# ping
Protocol [ip]:
Target IP address: 192.168.7.27
Repeat count [5]:
Datagram size [100]:
Timeout in seconds [2]:
Extended commands [n]:
Sweep range of sizes [n]:
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 192.168.7.27, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent, round-trip min/avg/max = 1/2/4 ms
```

The following display shows sample output for the ping command when you ping the IP hostname donald:

```
Router# ping donald
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 192.168.7.27, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent, round-trip min/avg/max = 1/3/4 ms
```

## Save Your Device Configuration

This section describes how to avoid losing your configuration at the next system reload or power cycle by saving the running configuration to the startup configuration in NVRAM. The NVRAM provides 256KB of storage on the router.
SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. copy running-config startup-config

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Saves the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Save Backup Copies of Configuration and System Image

To aid file recovery and minimize downtime in case of file corruption, we recommend that you save backup copies of the startup configuration file and the Cisco IOS-XE software system image file on a server.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. copy nvram:startup-config {ftp: | rcp: | tftp:}
3. show {bootflash0|bootflash1}:
4. copy {bootflash0|bootflash1}: {ftp: | rcp: | tftp:}

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 copy nvram:startup-config {ftp:</td>
<td>rcp:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# copy nvram:startup-config ftp:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 show {bootflash0</td>
<td>bootflash1}:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# show {bootflash0</td>
<td>bootflash1}:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Configuration Examples

### Step 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>`copy {bootflash0</td>
<td>bootflash1}: {ftp:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`Router# copy {bootflash0</td>
<td>bootflash1}: ftp:`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Enter the filename and destination URL when prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuration Examples

#### Copying the Startup Configuration to a TFTP Server: Example

The following example shows the startup configuration being copied to a TFTP server:

```plaintext
Router# copy nvram:startup-config tftp:
```

Remote host[?]: 172.16.101.101

Name of configuration file to write [rtr2-config]? <cr>

Write file rtr2-config on host 172.16.101.101?[confirm] <cr>

![OK]
```

#### Copying from Flash Memory to a TFTP Server: Example

The following example shows the use of the `show {flash0|flash1}:` command in privileged EXEC to learn the name of the system image file and the use of the `copy {flash0|flash1}: tftp:` privileged EXEC command to copy the system image to a TFTP server. The router uses the default username and password.

```plaintext
Router#Directory of bootflash:
11 drwx 16384 Jun 12 2012 17:31:45 +00:00 lost+found 64897 drwx 2012 17:32:50 +00:00 . cram 73128 drwx 17:32:51 +00:00 .installer 420654048 Aug 28 15:01:31 +00:00
```

**Cisco 4000 Series ISRs Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.x**
To avoid losing work you have completed, be sure to save your configuration occasionally as you proceed. Use the `copy running-config startup-config` command to save the configuration to NVRAM.

### Verify Initial Configuration on Cisco 4000 Series ISRs

Enter the following commands at Cisco IOS-XE to verify the initial configuration on the router:

- **show version**—Displays the system hardware version; the installed software version; the names and sources of configuration files; the boot images; and the amount of installed DRAM, NVRAM, and flash memory.
• **show diag**—Lists and displays diagnostic information about the installed controllers, interface processors, and port adapters.

• **show interfaces**—Shows interfaces are operating correctly and that the interfaces and line protocol are in the correct state; either up or down.

• **show ip interface brief**—Displays a summary status of the interfaces configured for IP protocol.

• **show configuration**—Verifies that you have configured the correct hostname and password.

• **show platform**—Displays the software/rommon version, and so on.

When you have completed and verified the initial configuration, specific features and functions are ready to be configured. See the Software Configuration Guide for the Cisco 4400 and Cisco 4300 Series ISRs.
Basic Router Configuration

This section includes information about some basic router configuration, and contains the following sections:

- Default Configuration, on page 31
- Configuring Global Parameters, on page 33
- Configuring Gigabit Ethernet Interfaces, on page 33
- Configuring a Loopback Interface, on page 34
- Configuring Module Interfaces, on page 36
- Enabling Cisco Discovery Protocol, on page 36
- Configuring Command-Line Access, on page 36
- Configuring Static Routes, on page 38
- Configuring Dynamic Routes, on page 40

Default Configuration

When you boot up the router, the router looks for a default file name—the PID of the router. For example, the Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers look for a file named isr4451.cfg. The Cisco 4000 Series ISR looks for this file before finding the standard files-router-conf or the ciscorrtr.cfg.

The Cisco 4000 ISR looks for the isr4451.cfg file in the bootflash. If the file is not found in the bootflash, the router then looks for the standard files-router-conf and ciscorrtr.cfg. If none of the files are found, the router then checks for any inserted USB that may have stored these files in the same particular order.

Note

If there is a configuration file with the PID as its name in an inserted USB, but one of the standard files are in bootflash, the system finds the standard file for use.

Use the show running-config command to view the initial configuration, as shown in the following example:

Router# show running-config
Building configuration...
Current configuration : 977 bytes
!
version 15.3
service timestamps debug datetime msec
service timestamps log datetime msec
no platform punt-keepalive disable-kernel-core
!
hostname Router
Defaults Configuration

! boot-start-marker
boot-end-marker

! vrf definition Mgmt-intf
! address-family ipv4
exit-address-family
! address-family ipv6
exit-address-family
!
no aaa new-model
!
ipv6 multicast rpf use-bgp
!
multilink bundle-name authenticated
!
redundancy
mode none
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0
no ip address
negotiation auto
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/1
no ip address
negotiation auto
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/2
no ip address
negotiation auto
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/3
no ip address
negotiation auto
!
interface GigabitEthernet0
vrf forwarding Mgmt-intf
no ip address
negotiation auto
!
ip forward-protocol nd
!
no ip http server
no ip http secure-server
!
!
control-plane
!
!
line con 0
stopbits 1
line vty 0 4
login
!

Configuring Global Parameters

To configure the global parameters for your router, follow these steps.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. `configure terminal`
2. `hostname name`
3. `enable secret password`
4. `no ip domain-lookup`

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | **configure terminal**  
| *Example:*  
| `Router> enable`  
| `Router# configure terminal`  
| `Router(config)#`  |
| Enters global configuration mode when using the console port.  
| Use the following to connect to the router with a remote terminal:  
| `telnet router-name or address`  
| `Login: login-id`  
| `Password: *********`  
| `Router> enable`  |
| **Step 2** | `hostname name`  
| *Example:*  
| `Router(config)# hostname Router`  |
| Specifies the name for the router.  |
| **Step 3** | `enable secret password`  
| *Example:*  
| `Router(config)# enable secret cr1ny5ho`  |
| Specifies an encrypted password to prevent unauthorized access to the router.  |
| **Step 4** | `no ip domain-lookup`  
| *Example:*  
| `Router(config)# no ip domain-lookup`  |
| Disables the router from translating unfamiliar words (typos) into IP addresses.  
| For complete information on global parameter commands, see the [Cisco IOS Release Configuration Guide documentation set](#).  |

Configuring Gigabit Ethernet Interfaces

To manually define onboard Gigabit Ethernet interfaces, follow these steps, beginning from global configuration mode.
SUMMARY STEPS

1. interface gigabitethernet slot/bay/port
2. ip address ip-address mask
3. ipv6 address ipv6-address/prefix
4. no shutdown
5. exit

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enters the configuration mode for a Gigabit Ethernet interface on the router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface gigabitethernet slot/bay/port</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/0/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Sets the IP address and subnet mask for the specified Gigabit Ethernet interface. Use this Step if you are configuring an IPv4 address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip address ip-address mask</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router(config-if)# ip address 192.168.12.2 255.255.255.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Sets the IPv6 address and prefix for the specified Gigabit Ethernet interface. Use this step instead of Step 2, if you are configuring an IPv6 address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ipv6 address ipv6-address/prefix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:db8::ffff:1/128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Enables the Gigabit Ethernet interface and changes its state from administratively down to administratively up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no shutdown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router(config-if)# no shutdown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>Exits configuration mode for the Gigabit Ethernet interface and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router(config-if)# exit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring a Loopback Interface

Before you begin

The loopback interface acts as a placeholder for the static IP address and provides default routing information. To configure a loopback interface, follow these steps.
SUMMARY STEPS

1. **interface type number**
2. (Option 1) **ip address ip-address mask**
3. (Option 2) **ipv6 address ipv6-address/prefix**
4. **exit**

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enters configuration mode on the loopback interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>interface type number</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# interface Loopback 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Sets the IP address and subnet mask on the loopback interface. (If you are configuring an IPv6 address, use the <strong>ipv6 address ipv6-address/prefix</strong> command described below.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Option 1) <strong>ip address ip-address mask</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-if)# ip address 10.108.1.1 255.255.255.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Sets the IPv6 address and prefix on the loopback interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Option 2) <strong>ipv6 address ipv6-address/prefix</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-if)# 2001:db8::ffff:1/128</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Exits configuration mode for the loopback interface and returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>exit</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-if)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

**Verifying Loopback Interface Configuration**

The loopback interface in this sample configuration is used to support Network Address Translation (NAT) on the virtual-template interface. This configuration example shows the loopback interface configured on the Gigabit Ethernet interface with an IP address of 192.0.2.0/24, which acts as a static IP address. The loopback interface points back to virtual-template1, which has a negotiated IP address.

```
!
interface loopback 0
ip address 192.0.2.0 255.255.255.0 (static IP address)
ip nat outside
!
interface Virtual-Template1
ip unnumbered loopback0
no ip directed-broadcast
ip nat outside
```
Enter the `show interface loopback` command. You should see an output similar to the following example:

```
Router# show interface loopback 0
Loopback0 is up, line protocol is up
    Hardware is Loopback
    Internet address is 200.200.100.1/24
    MTU 1514 bytes, BW 8000000 Kbit, DLY 5000 usec,
        reliability 255/255, txload 1/255, rxload 1/255
    Encapsulation LOOPBACK, loopback not set
    Last input never, output never, output hang never
    Last clearing of "show interface" counters never
    Queueing strategy: fifo
    Output queue 0/0, 0 drops; input queue 0/75, 0 drops
    5 minute input rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
    5 minute output rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
        0 packets input, 0 bytes, 0 no buffer
        Received 0 broadcasts, 0 runts, 0 giants, 0 throttles
        0 input errors, 0 CRC, 0 frame, 0 overrun, 0 ignored, 0 abort
        0 packets output, 0 bytes, 0 underruns
        0 output errors, 0 collisions, 0 interface resets
        0 output buffer failures, 0 output buffers swapped out
```

Alternatively, use the `ping` command to verify the loopback interface, as shown in the following example:

```
Router# ping 192.0.2.0
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 192.0.2.0, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/2/4 ms
```

**Configuring Module Interfaces**

For detailed information about configuring service modules, see "Service Modules" in the "Service Module Management" section of the Cisco SM-1T3/E3 Service Module Configuration Guide.

**Enabling Cisco Discovery Protocol**

Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) is enabled by default on the router.

---

**Note**

CDP is not enabled by default on Cisco Aggregation Services Routers or on the Cisco CSR 1000v.

For more information on using CDP, see Cisco Discovery Protocol Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Release 3S.

**Configuring Command-Line Access**

To configure parameters to control access to the router, follow these steps.
**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `line [aux | console | tty | vty] line-number`
2. `password password`
3. `login`
4. `exec-timeout minutes [seconds]`
5. `exit`
6. `line [aux | console | tty | vty] line-number`
7. `password password`
8. `login`
9. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><strong>Purpose</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`line [aux</td>
<td>console</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Example:</em> Router(config)# <code>line console 0</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Specifies a unique password for the console terminal line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>password password</code></td>
<td><em>Example:</em> Router(config-line)# <code>password 5dr4Hepw3</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Enables password checking at terminal session login.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>login</code></td>
<td><em>Example:</em> Router(config-line)# <code>login</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Sets the interval during which the EXEC command interpreter waits until user input is detected. The default is 10 minutes. Optionally, adds seconds to the interval value. The example provided here shows a timeout of 5 minutes and 30 seconds. Entering a timeout of 0 0 specifies never to time out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>exec-timeout minutes [seconds]</code></td>
<td><em>Example:</em> Router(config-line)# <code>exec-timeout 5 30</code> Router(config-line)#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>Exits line configuration mode to re-enter global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>exit</code></td>
<td><em>Example:</em> Router(config-line)# <code>exit</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>Specifies a virtual terminal for remote console access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`line [aux</td>
<td>console</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring Static Routes

Static routes provide fixed routing paths through the network. They are manually configured on the router. If the network topology changes, the static route must be updated with a new route. Static routes are private routes unless they are redistributed by a routing protocol.

To configure static routes, follow these steps.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. (Option 1) `ip route prefix mask {ip-address | interface-type interface-number [ip-address]}
2. (Option 2) `ipv6 route prefix/mask {ipv6-address | interface-type interface-number [ipv6-address]}
3. `end

### Example

The following configuration shows the command-line access commands.

You do not have to input the commands marked **default**. These commands appear automatically in the configuration file that is generated when you use the `show running-config` command.

```bash
! line console 0 exec-timeout 10 0 password 4youreyesonly login transport input none (default) stopbits 1 (default) line vty 0 4 password secret login !
```

---

**Cisco 4000 Series ISRs Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.x**
## DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Specifies a static route for the IP packets. (If you are configuring an IPv6 address, use the ipv6 route command described below.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Option 1) `ip route prefix mask {ip-address</td>
<td>interface-type interface-number [ip-address]}`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# <code>ip route 192.168.1.0 255.255.0.0 10.10.10.2</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Specifies a static route for the IP packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Option 2) `ipv6 route prefix/mask {ipv6-address</td>
<td>interface-type interface-number [ipv6-address]}`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# <code>ipv6 route 2001:db8:2::/64</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and enters privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# <code>end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

#### Verifying Configuration

In the following configuration example, the static route sends out all IP packets with a destination IP address of 192.168.1.0 and a subnet mask of 255.255.255.0 on the Gigabit Ethernet interface to another device with an IP address of 10.10.10.2. Specifically, the packets are sent to the configured PVC.

You do not have to enter the command marked `default`. This command appears automatically in the configuration file generated when you use the `running-config` command.

```
! ip classless (default)
ip route 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
```

To verify that you have configured static routing correctly, enter the `show ip route` command (or `show ipv6 route` command) and look for static routes marked with the letter S.

When you use an IPv4 address, you should see verification output similar to the following:

```
Router# `show ip route`
Codes: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, M - mobile, B - BGP
D - EIGRP, EX - EIGRP external, O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
i - IS-IS, su - IS-IS summary, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2
ia - IS-IS inter area, * - candidate default, U - per-user static route
O - ODR, P - periodic downloaded static route

Gateway of last resort is not set
```
10.0.0.0/24 is subnetted, 1 subnets
C 10.108.1.0 is directly connected, Loopback0
S* 0.0.0.0/0 is directly connected, FastEthernet0

When you use an IPv6 address, you should see verification output similar to the following:

Router# show ipv6 route
IPv6 Routing Table - default - 5 entries
Codes: C - Connected, L - Local, S - Static, U - Per-user Static route
B - BGP, R - RIP, H - NHRP, I1 - ISIS L1
I2 - ISIS L2, IA - ISIS interarea, IS - ISIS summary, D - EIGRP
EX - EIGRP external, ND - ND Default, NDp - ND Prefix, DCE -
Destination
NDr - Redirect, O - OSPF Intra, DI - OSPF Inter, OE1 - OSPF ext 1
OE2 - OSPF ext 2, ON1 - OSPF NSSA ext 1, ON2 - OSPF NSSA ext 2
ls - LISP site, ld - LISP dyn-EID, a - Application
C 2001:DB8:3::/64 [0/0]
via GigabitEthernet0/0/2, directly connected
S 2001:DB8:2::/64 [1/0]
via 2001:DB8:3::1

Configuring Dynamic Routes

In dynamic routing, the network protocol adjusts the path automatically, based on network traffic or topology. Changes in dynamic routes are shared with other routers in the network.

A router can use IP routing protocols, such as Routing Information Protocol (RIP) or Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP), to learn about routes dynamically.

- Configuring Routing Information Protocol, on page 40
- Configuring Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol, on page 43

Configuring Routing Information Protocol

To configure the RIP on a router, follow these steps.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. router rip
2. version {1 | 2}
3. network ip-address
4. no auto-summary
5. end

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>router rip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# router rip</td>
<td>Specifies use of RIP version 1 or 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> version {1</td>
<td>2}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Router(config-router)# version 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> network ip-address</td>
<td>Specifies a list of networks on which RIP is to be applied, using the address of the network of each directly connected network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Router(config-router)# network 192.168.1.1 Router(config-router)# network 10.10.7.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> no auto-summary</td>
<td>Disables automatic summarization of subnet routes into network-level routes. This allows subprefix routing information to pass across classful network boundaries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Router(config-router)# no auto-summary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits router configuration mode, and enters privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Router(config-router)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

**Verifying Configuration**

The following configuration example shows RIP Version 2 enabled in IP networks 10.0.0.0 and 192.168.1.0. To see this configuration, use the `show running-config` command from privileged EXEC mode.

```shell
! Router# show running-config
Building configuration...

Current configuration : 1616 bytes
!
! Last configuration change at 03:17:14 EST Thu Sep 6 2012
!
version 15.3
service timestamps debug datetime msec
service timestamps log datetime msec
no platform punt-keepalive disable-kernel-core
!
hostname Router
!
boot-start-marker
boot-end-marker
!
!
vrf definition Mgmt-intf
```

Cisco 4000 Series ISRs Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.x
!  
address-family ipv4  
exit-address-family  
!  
address-family ipv6  
exit-address-family  
!  
enable password cisco  
!  
no aaa new-model  
!  
transport-map type console consolehandler  
  banner wait ^C  
  Waiting for IOS vty line  
^C  
  banner diagnostic ^C  
  Welcome to diag mode  
^C  
!  
clock timezone EST -4 0  
!  
ip domain name cisco.com  
ip name-server vrf Mgmt-intf 203.0.113.1  
ip name-server vrf Mgmt-intf 203.0.113.129  
!  
ipv6 multicast rpf use-bgp  
!  
multilink bundle-name authenticated  
!  
redundancy  
  mode none  
!  
ip ftp source-interface GigabitEthernet0  
ip tftp source-interface GigabitEthernet0  
!  
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0  
  no ip address  
  negotiation auto  
!  
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/1  
  no ip address  
  negotiation auto  
!  
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/2  
  no ip address  
  negotiation auto  
!  
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/3  
  no ip address  
  negotiation auto  
!  
interface GigabitEthernet0  
  vrf forwarding Mgmt-intf  
ip address 172.18.77.212 255.255.255.240  
  negotiation auto  
!  
ip forward-protocol nd  
!
Configuring Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol

To configure Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP), follow these steps.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. `router eigrp as-number`
2. `network ip-address`
3. `end`

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>router eigrp as-number</code></td>
<td>Enters router configuration mode, and enables EIGRP on the router. The autonomous-system number identifies the route to other EIGRP routers and is used to tag the EIGRP information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>router eigrp 109</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# <code>router eigrp 109</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Purpose**

Command or Action | Purpose
--- | ---
**Step 2**
network *ip-address*  
Example:  
Router(config)# network 192.168.1.0  
Router(config)# network 10.10.12.115  
| Specifies a list of networks on which EIGRP is to be applied, using the IP address of the network of directly connected networks.

**Step 3**
end  
Example:  
Router(config-router)# end  
| Exits router configuration mode, and enters privileged EXEC mode.

**Example**

**Verifying the Configuration**

The following configuration example shows the EIGRP routing protocol enabled in IP networks 192.168.1.0 and 10.10.12.115. The EIGRP autonomous system number is 109. To see this configuration, use the `show running-config` command.

Router# show running-config  
```
!
router eigrp 109
    network 192.168.1.0
    network 10.10.12.115
!
```

To verify that you have configured IP EIGRP correctly, enter the `show ip route` command, and look for EIGRP routes marked by the letter D. You should see verification output similar to the following:

Router# show ip route  
```
Codes:  C - connected,  S - static,  R - RIP,  M - mobile,  B - BGP  
       D - EIGRP,  EX - EIGRP external,  O - OSPF,  IA - OSPF inter area  
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1,  N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2  
       E1 - OSPF external type 1,  E2 - OSPF external type 2  
       i - IS-IS,  su - IS-IS summary,  L1 - IS-IS level-1,  L2 - IS-IS level-2  
       ia - IS-IS inter area,  * - candidate default,  U - per-user static route  
       o - ODR,  P - periodic downloaded static route  

Gateway of last resort is not set  

10.0.0.0/24 is subnetted, 1 subnets
  C  10.108.1.0 is directly connected, Loopback0
  D  3.0.0.0/8 [90/409600] via 2.2.2.1, 00:00:02, Ethernet0/0
```
Using Cisco IOS XE Software

This chapter describes the basics of using the Cisco IOS XE software and includes the following section:

- Accessing the CLI Using a Router Console, on page 45

Accessing the CLI Using a Router Console

Before you begin

There are two serial ports: a console (CON) port and an auxiliary (AUX) port. Use the CON port to access the command-line interface (CLI) directly or when using Telnet.

The following sections describe the main methods of accessing the router:

- Accessing the CLI Using a Directly-Connected Console, on page 45
- Using SSH to Access Console, on page 46
- Accessing the CLI from a Remote Console Using Telnet, on page 47
- Accessing the CLI from a USB Serial Console Port, on page 48

Accessing the CLI Using a Directly-Connected Console

The CON port is an EIA/TIA-232 asynchronous, serial connection with no-flow control and an RJ-45 connector. The CON port is located on the front panel of the chassis.

The following sections describe the procedure to access the control interface:

- Connecting to the Console Port, on page 45
- Using the Console Interface, on page 46

Connecting to the Console Port

Step 1 Configure your terminal emulation software with the following settings:

- 9600 bits per second (bps)
Step 1 Enter the following command:

```
Router> enable
```

Step 2 (Go to Step 3 if the enable password has not been configured.) At the password prompt, enter your system password:

```
Password: enablepass
```

When your password is accepted, the privileged EXEC mode prompt is displayed.

```
Router#
```

You now have access to the CLI in privileged EXEC mode and you can enter the necessary commands to complete your desired tasks.

Step 3 If you enter the `setup` command, see “Using Cisco Setup Command Facility” in the “Initial Configuration” section of the Hardware Installation Guide for the Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers.

Step 4 To exit the console session, enter the `quit` command:

```
Router# quit
```

## Using SSH to Access Console

Secure Shell (SSH) is a protocol which provides a secure remote access connection to network devices. To enable SSH support on the device:

Step 1 Configure the hostname:

```
Router# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
```

```
Router(config)# hostname xxx_lab
```

Here, `host name` is the router hostname or IP address.

Step 2 Configure the DNS domain of the router:

```
xxx_lab(config)# xxx.cisco.com
```

Step 3 Generate an SSH key to be used with SSH:

```
xxx_lab(config)# crypto key generate rsa
```

The name for the keys will be: xxx_lab.xxx.cisco.com Choose the size of the key modulus in the range
of 360 to 4096 for your General Purpose Keys. Choosing a key modulus greater than 512 may take a few minutes.

How many bits in the modulus [512]: 1024

% Generating 1024 bit RSA keys, keys will be non-exportable...

[OK] (elapsed time was 0 seconds)

xxx_lab(config)#

Step 4 By default, the vty? transport is Telnet. In this case, Telnet is disabled and only SSH is supported:

xxx_lab(config)#line vty 0 4
xxx_lab(config-line)#transport input SSH

Step 5 Create a username for SSH authentication and enable login authentication:

xxx_lab(config)# username jsmith privilege 15 secret 0 p@ss3456
xxx_lab(config)#line vty 0 4
xxx_lab(config-line)# login local

Step 6 Verify remote connection to the device using SSH.

---

**Accessing the CLI from a Remote Console Using Telnet**

The following topics describe the procedure to access the CLI from a remote console using Telnet:

- Preparing to Connect to the Router Console Using Telnet, on page 47
- Using Telnet to Access a Console Interface, on page 48

**Preparing to Connect to the Router Console Using Telnet**

To access the router remotely using Telnet from a TCP/IP network, configure the router to support virtual terminal lines using the `line vty` global configuration command. Configure the virtual terminal lines to require users to log in and specify a password.

See the Cisco IOS Terminal Services Command Reference document for more information about the `line vty` global configuration command.

To prevent disabling login on a line, specify a password with the `password` command when you configure the `login` command.

If you are using authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA), configure the `login authentication` command. To prevent disabling login on a line for AAA authentication when you configure a list with the login authentication command, you must also configure that list using the `aaa authentication login` global configuration command.

For more information about AAA services, see the Cisco IOS XE Security Configuration Guide: Secure Connectivity and the Cisco IOS Security Command Reference documents. For more information about the `login line-configuration` command, see the Cisco IOS Terminal Services Command Reference document.

In addition, before you make a Telnet connection to the router, you must have a valid hostname for the router or have an IP address configured on the router. For more information about the requirements for connecting to the router using Telnet, information about customizing your Telnet services, and using Telnet key sequences, see the Cisco IOS Configuration Fundamentals Configuration Guide.
Using Telnet to Access a Console Interface

**Step 1** From your terminal or PC, enter one of the following commands:

- `connect host [port] [keyword]`
- `telnet host [port] [keyword]`

Here, `host` is the router hostname or IP address, `port` is a decimal port number (23 is the default), and `keyword` is a supported keyword. For more information about these commands, see the Cisco IOS Terminal Services Command Reference document.

**Note** If you are using an access server, specify a valid port number, such as `telnet 172.20.52.40 2004`, in addition to the hostname or IP address.

The following example shows how to use the `telnet` command to connect to a router named `router`:

```
unix_host% telnet router
Trying 172.20.52.40...
Connected to 172.20.52.40.
Escape character is '^]'.
unix_host% connect
```

**Step 2** Enter your login password:

User Access Verification
Password: mypassword

**Note** If no password has been configured, press Return.

**Step 3** From user EXEC mode, enter the `enable` command:

```
Router> enable
```

**Step 4** At the password prompt, enter your system password:

Password: enablepass

**Step 5** When the `enable` password is accepted, the privileged EXEC mode prompt is displayed:

```
Router#
```

**Step 6** You now have access to the CLI in privileged EXEC mode and you can enter the necessary commands to complete your desired tasks.

**Step 7** To exit the Telnet session, use the `exit` or `logout` command.

```
Router# logout
```

Accessing the CLI from a USB Serial Console Port

The router provides an additional mechanism for configuring the system: a type B miniport USB serial console that supports remote administration of the router using a type B USB-compliant cable. See the “Connecting to a Console Terminal or Modem” section in the Hardware Installation Guide for the Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers.
Using Keyboard Shortcuts

Commands are not case sensitive. You can abbreviate commands and parameters if the abbreviations contain enough letters to be different from any other currently available commands or parameters.

The following table lists the keyboard shortcuts for entering and editing commands.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key Name</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl-B or the Left Arrow key¹</td>
<td>Move the cursor back one character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl-F or the Right Arrow key¹</td>
<td>Move the cursor forward one character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl-A</td>
<td>Move the cursor to the beginning of the command line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl-E</td>
<td>Move the cursor to the end of the command line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esc B</td>
<td>Move the cursor back one word.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esc F</td>
<td>Move the cursor forward one word.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Using the History Buffer to Recall Commands

The history buffer stores the last 20 commands you entered. History substitution allows you to access these commands without retyping them, by using special abbreviated commands.

The following table lists the history substitution commands.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl-P or the Up Arrow key¹</td>
<td>Recalls commands in the history buffer, beginning with the most recent command. Repeat the key sequence to recall successively older commands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl-N or the Down Arrow key¹</td>
<td>Returns to more recent commands in the history buffer after recalling commands with Ctrl-P or the Up Arrow key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# show history</td>
<td>While in EXEC mode, lists the last few commands you entered.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ The arrow keys function only on ANSI-compatible terminals such as VT100s.

Understanding Command Modes

The command modes available in Cisco IOS XE are the same as those available in traditional Cisco IOS. Use the CLI to access Cisco IOS XE software. Because the CLI is divided into many different modes, the commands
available to you at any given time depend on the mode that you are currently in. Entering a question mark (?) at the CLI prompt allows you to obtain a list of commands available for each command mode.

When you log in to the CLI, you are in user EXEC mode. User EXEC mode contains only a limited subset of commands. To have access to all commands, you must enter privileged EXEC mode, normally by using a password. From privileged EXEC mode, you can issue any EXEC command—user or privileged mode—or you can enter global configuration mode. Most EXEC commands are one-time commands. For example, show commands show important status information, and clear commands clear counters or interfaces. The EXEC commands are not saved when the software reboots.

Configuration modes allow you to make changes to the running configuration. If you later save the running configuration to the startup configuration, these changed commands are stored when the software is rebooted. To enter specific configuration modes, you must start at global configuration mode. From global configuration mode, you can enter interface configuration mode and a variety of other modes, such as protocol-specific modes.

ROM monitor mode is a separate mode used when the Cisco IOS XE software cannot load properly. If a valid software image is not found when the software boots or if the configuration file is corrupted at startup, the software might enter ROM monitor mode.

The following table describes how to access and exit various common command modes of the Cisco IOS XE software. It also shows examples of the prompts displayed for each mode.

**Table 6: Accessing and Exiting Command Modes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Mode</th>
<th>Access Method</th>
<th>Prompt</th>
<th>Exit Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User EXEC</td>
<td>Log in.</td>
<td>Router&gt;</td>
<td>Use the <strong>logout</strong> command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privileged EXEC</td>
<td>From user EXEC mode, use the <strong>enable</strong> command.</td>
<td>Router#</td>
<td>To return to user EXEC mode, use the <strong>disable</strong> command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global configuration</td>
<td>From privileged EXEC mode, use the <strong>configure terminal</strong> command.</td>
<td>Router(config)#</td>
<td>To return to privileged EXEC mode from global configuration mode, use the <strong>exit</strong> or <strong>end</strong> command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface configuration</td>
<td>From global configuration mode, specify an interface using an <strong>interface</strong> command.</td>
<td>Router(config-if)#</td>
<td>To return to global configuration mode, use the <strong>exit</strong> command. To return to privileged EXEC mode, use the <strong>end</strong> command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command Mode</td>
<td>Access Method</td>
<td>Prompt</td>
<td>Exit Method</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnostic</td>
<td>The router boots up or accesses diagnostic mode in the following scenarios:</td>
<td>Router(diag)#</td>
<td>If failure of the Cisco IOS process is the reason for entering diagnostic mode, the Cisco IOS problem must be resolved and the router rebooted to get out of diagnostic mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• In some cases, diagnostic mode will be reached when the Cisco IOS process or processes fail. In most scenarios, however, the router will reload.</td>
<td></td>
<td>If the router is in diagnostic mode because of a transport-map configuration, access the router through another port or by using a method that is configured to connect to the Cisco IOS CLI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A user-configured access policy is configured using the <strong>transport-map</strong> command that directs a user into diagnostic mode.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A break signal (<strong>Ctrl-C</strong>, <strong>Ctrl-Shift-6</strong>, or the <strong>send break</strong> command) is entered and the router is configured to go to diagnostic mode when the break signal is received.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROM monitor</td>
<td>From privileged EXEC mode, use the <strong>reload</strong> EXEC command. Press the <strong>Break</strong> key during the first 60 seconds while the system is booting.</td>
<td>rommon#&gt;</td>
<td>To exit ROM monitor mode, manually boot a valid image or perform a reset with autoboot set so that a valid image is loaded.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Understanding Diagnostic Mode**

The router boots up or accesses diagnostic mode in the following scenarios:

- The IOS process or processes fail, in some scenarios. In other scenarios, the system resets when the IOS process or processes fail.

- A user-configured access policy was configured using the **transport-map** command that directs the user into the diagnostic mode.

- A send break signal (**Ctrl-C** or **Ctrl-Shift-6**) was entered while accessing the router, and the router was configured to enter diagnostic mode when a break signal was sent.
In the diagnostic mode, a subset of the commands that are available in user EXEC mode are made available to the users. Among other things, these commands can be used to:

- Inspect various states on the router, including the IOS state.
- Replace or roll back the configuration.
- Provide methods of restarting the IOS or other processes.
- Reboot hardware, such as the entire router, a module, or possibly other hardware components.
- Transfer files into or off of the router using remote access methods such as FTP, TFTP, and SCP.

The diagnostic mode provides a more comprehensive user interface for troubleshooting than previous routers, which relied on limited access methods during failures, such as ROMMON, to diagnose and troubleshoot Cisco IOS problems. The diagnostic mode commands can work when the Cisco IOS process is not working properly. These commands are also available in privileged EXEC mode on the router when the router is working normally.

### Getting Help

Entering a question mark (?) at the CLI prompt displays a list of commands available for each command mode. You can also get a list of keywords and arguments associated with any command by using the context-sensitive help feature.

To get help that is specific to a command mode, a command, a keyword, or an argument, use one of the following commands.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>Provides a brief description of the help system in any command mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abbreviated-command-entry?</td>
<td>Provides a list of commands that begin with a particular character string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>There is no space between the command and the question mark.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abbreviated-command-entry&lt;Tab&gt;</td>
<td>Completes a partial command name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>?</td>
<td>Lists all the commands that are available for a particular command mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>command ?</td>
<td>Lists the keywords or arguments that you must enter next on the command line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>There is a space between the command and the question mark.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Finding Command Options: Example

This section provides information about how to display the syntax for a command. The syntax can consist of optional or required keywords and arguments. To display keywords and arguments for a command, enter a question mark (?) at the configuration prompt or after entering a part of a command followed by a space.
Cisco IOS XE software displays a list and brief descriptions of the available keywords and arguments. For example, if you are in global configuration mode and want to see all the keywords and arguments for the `arap` command, you should type `arap ?`.

The `<cr>` symbol in command help output stands for carriage return. On older keyboards, the carriage return key is the Return key. On most modern keyboards, the carriage return key is the Enter key. The `<cr>` symbol at the end of command help output indicates that you have the option to press Enter to complete the command and that the arguments and keywords in the list preceding the `<cr>` symbol are optional. The `<cr>` symbol by itself indicates that no more arguments or keywords are available, and that you must press Enter to complete the command.

The following table shows examples of using the question mark (?) to assist you in entering commands.

### Table 7: Finding Command Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Router&gt; enable Password: &lt;password&gt; Router#</td>
<td>Enter the <code>enable</code> command and password to access privileged EXEC commands. You are in privileged EXEC mode when the prompt changes to a “#” from the “&gt;”, for example, Router&gt; to Router#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# configure terminal Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z. Router(config)#</td>
<td>Enter the <code>configure terminal</code> privileged EXEC command to enter global configuration mode. You are in global configuration mode when the prompt changes to Router (config)#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# interface GigabitEthernet ? &lt;0-0&gt; GigabitEthernet interface number &lt;0-2&gt; GigabitEthernet interface number</td>
<td>Enter interface configuration mode by specifying the interface that you want to configure, using the <code>interface GigabitEthernet</code> global configuration command. Enter ? to display what you must enter next on the command line. When the <code>&lt;cr&gt;</code> symbol is displayed, you can press Enter to complete the command. You are in interface configuration mode when the prompt changes to Router(config-if)#</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Enter `?` to display a list of all the interface configuration commands available for the interface. This example shows only some of the available interface configuration commands.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-if)# ?</td>
<td>Interface configuration commands:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip</td>
<td>Interface Internet Protocol config commands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keepalive</td>
<td>Enable keepalive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lan-name</td>
<td>LAN Name command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>llc2</td>
<td>LLC2 Interface Subcommands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>load-interval</td>
<td>Specify interval for load calculation for an interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locaddr-priority</td>
<td>Assign a priority group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logging</td>
<td>Configure logging for interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loopback</td>
<td>Configure internal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loopback on an</td>
<td>interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mac-address</td>
<td>Manually set interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC address</td>
<td>mls router sub/interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mls commands</td>
<td>MPOA interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpoa configuration commands</td>
<td>Set the interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mtu</td>
<td>Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(MTU)</td>
<td>Use a defined NETBIOS or enable name-caching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>netbios</td>
<td>Enable use of NRZI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>access list</td>
<td>Configure NTP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no</td>
<td>Negate a command or set defaults</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>its defaults</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nrzi-encoding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encoding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ntp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-if)#</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-if)# <strong>ip</strong> ?</td>
<td>Enter the command that you want to configure for the interface. This example uses the <strong>ip</strong> command. Enter ? to display what you must enter next on the command line. This example shows only some of the available interface IP configuration commands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface IP configuration subcommands:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>access-group Specify access control for packets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accounting Enable IP accounting on this interface</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>address Set the IP address of an interface</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication authentication subcommands</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bandwidth-percent Set EIGRP bandwidth limit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broadcast-address Set the broadcast address of an interface</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cgmp Enable/disable CGMP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>directed-broadcast Enable forwarding of directed broadcasts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dvmrp DVMRP interface commands</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hello-interval Configures IP-EIGRP hello interval</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>helper-address Specify a destination address for UDP broadcasts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold-time Configures IP-EIGRP hold time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-if)# <strong>ip</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.B.C.D IP address</td>
<td>Enter the command that you want to configure for the interface. This example uses the <strong>ip address</strong> command. Enter ? to display what you must enter next on the command line. In this example, you must enter an IP address or the <strong>negotiated</strong> keyword. A carriage return (&lt;cr&gt;) is not displayed. Therefore, you must enter additional keywords or arguments to complete the command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negotiated IP Address negotiated over PPP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-if)# <strong>ip address</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>172.16.0.1 IP address</td>
<td>Enter the keyword or argument that you want to use. This example uses the 172.16.0.1 IP address. Enter ? to display what you must enter next on the command line. In this example, you must enter an IP subnet mask. &lt;cr&gt; is not displayed. Therefore, you must enter additional keywords or arguments to complete the command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.B.C.D IP subnet mask</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-if)# <strong>ip address 172.16.0.1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Using the **no** and **default** Forms of Commands

Almost every configuration command has a **no** form. In general, use the **no** form to disable a function. Use the command without the **no** keyword to re-enable a disabled function or to enable a function that is disabled by default. For example, IP routing is enabled by default. To disable IP routing, use the **no ip routing** command; to re-enable IP routing, use the **ip routing** command. The Cisco IOS software command reference publications provide the complete syntax for the configuration commands and describe what the **no** form of a command does.

Many CLI commands also have a **default** form. By issuing the `<command> default` command-name, you can configure the command to its default setting. The Cisco IOS software command reference publications describe the function from a **default** form of the command when the **default** form performs a different function than the plain and **no** forms of the command. To see what default commands are available on your system, enter **default ?** in the appropriate command mode.

Saving Configuration Changes

Use the **copy running-config startup-config** command to save your configuration changes to the startup configuration so that the changes will not be lost if the software reloads or a power outage occurs. For example:

```
Router# copy running-config startup-config
Building configuration...
```

It may take a few minutes to save the configuration. After the configuration has been saved, the following output is displayed:

```
[OK]
Router#
```

This task saves the configuration to the NVRAM.

Managing Configuration Files

The startup configuration file is stored in the nvram: file system and the running configuration files are stored in the system: file system. This configuration file storage setup is also used on several other Cisco router platforms.
As a matter of routine maintenance on any Cisco router, users should back up the startup configuration file by copying the startup configuration file from NVRAM to one of the router’s other file systems and, additionally, to a network server. Backing up the startup configuration file provides an easy method of recovering the startup configuration file if the startup configuration file in NVRAM becomes unusable for any reason.

The copy command can be used to back up startup configuration files.

Examples of backing up the startup configuration file in NVRAM are shown in Backing Up Configuration Files, on page 371.

For more detailed information on managing configuration files, see the “Managing Configuration Files” section in the Cisco IOS XE Configuration Fundamentals Configuration Guide.

Filtering Output from the show and more Commands

You can search and filter the output of show and more commands. This functionality is useful if you need to sort through large amounts of output or if you want to exclude output that you need not see.

To use this functionality, enter a show or more command followed by the “pipe” character ( | ); one of the keywords begin, include, or exclude; and a regular expression on which you want to search or filter (the expression is case sensitive):

```
show command | {append | begin | exclude | include | redirect | section | tee} regular-expression
```

The output matches certain lines of information in the configuration file.

Example

In this example, a modifier of the show interface command (include protocol) is used to provide only the output lines in which the expression protocol is displayed:

```
Router# show interface | include protocol
GigabitEthernet0/0/0 is administratively down, line protocol is down
  0 unknown protocol drops
GigabitEthernet0/0/1 is administratively down, line protocol is down
  0 unknown protocol drops
GigabitEthernet0/0/2 is administratively down, line protocol is down
  0 unknown protocol drops
GigabitEthernet0/0/3 is administratively down, line protocol is down
  0 unknown protocol drops
GigabitEthernet0 is up, line protocol is up
  0 unknown protocol drops
Loopback0 is up, line protocol is up
  0 unknown protocol drops
```

Powering Off a Router

The router can be safely turned off at any time by moving the router’s power supply switch to the Off position. However, any changes to the running config since the last WRITE of the config to the NVRAM is lost.

Ensure that any configuration needed after startup is saved before powering off the router. The copy running-config startup-config command saves the configuration in NVRAM and after the router is powered up, the router initializes with the saved configuration.
Finding Support Information for Platforms and Cisco Software Images

The Cisco IOS XE software is packaged in feature sets consisting of software images that support specific platforms. The group of feature sets that are available for a specific platform depends on which Cisco software images are included in a release. To identify the set of software images available in a specific release or to find out if a feature is available in a given Cisco IOS XE software image, you can use Cisco Feature Navigator or see the Release Notes for Cisco IOS XE.

Using Cisco Feature Navigator

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and software image support. Cisco Feature Navigator is a tool that enables you to determine which Cisco IOS XE software images support a specific software release, feature set, or platform. To use the navigator tool, an account on Cisco.com is not required.

Using Software Advisor

Cisco maintains the Software Advisor tool. See Tools and Resources. Use the Software Advisor tool to see if a feature is supported in a Cisco IOS XE release, to locate the software document for that feature, or to check the minimum software requirements of Cisco IOS XE software with the hardware installed on your router. You must be a registered user on Cisco.com to access this tool.

Using Software Release Notes

See the Release Notes document for the Cisco 4000 Series ISRs for information about the following:

- Memory recommendations
- Open and resolved severity 1 and 2 caveats

Release notes are intended to be release-specific for the most current release, and the information provided in these documents may not be cumulative in providing information about features that first appeared in previous releases. For cumulative feature information, refer to the Cisco Feature Navigator at: [http://www.cisco.com/go/cfh/](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfh/).

CLI Session Management

An inactivity timeout is configurable and can be enforced. Session locking provides protection from two users overwriting changes that the other has made. To prevent an internal process from using all the available capacity, some spare capacity is reserved for CLI session access. For example, this allows a user to remotely access a router.

- Changing the CLI Session Timeout, on page 59
- Locking a CLI Session, on page 59

Information About CLI Session Management

An inactivity timeout is configurable and can be enforced. Session locking provides protection from two users overwriting changes that each other has made. To prevent an internal process from using all the available capacity, some spare capacity is reserved for CLI session access. For example, this allows a user to remotely access the router.
Changing the CLI Session Timeout

**Step 1**
```
configure terminal
```
Enters global configuration mode.

**Step 2**
```
line console 0
```

**Step 3**
```
session-timeout minutes
```
The value of `minutes` sets the amount of time that the CLI waits before timing out. Setting the CLI session timeout increases the security of a CLI session. Specify a value of 0 for `minutes` to disable session timeout.

**Step 4**
```
show line console 0
```
Verifies the value to which the session timeout has been set, which is shown as the value for "Idle Session".

---

Locking a CLI Session

**Before you begin**
To configure a temporary password on a CLI session, use the `lock` command in EXEC mode. Before you can use the `lock` command, you need to configure the line using the `lockable` command. In this example the line is configured as `lockable`, and then the `lock` command is used and a temporary password is assigned.

**Step 1**
```
Router# configure terminal
```
Enter global configuration mode.

**Step 2**
Enter the line upon which you want to be able to use the `lock` command.
```
Router(config)# line console 0
```

**Step 3**
```
Router(config)# lockable
```
Enables the line to be locked.

**Step 4**
```
Router(config)# exit
```

**Step 5**
```
Router# lock
```
The system prompts you for a password, which you must enter twice.
```
Password: <password>
Again: <password>
Locked
```
Smart Licensing

This chapter provides an overview of the Cisco Smart Licensing Client feature and describes the several tools and processes required to complete the products registration and authorization.

This chapter includes this section:

• Smart Licensing Client, on page 61

Smart Licensing Client

Smart Licensing Client feature is a standardized licensing platform that simplifies the Cisco software experience and helps you to understand how Cisco software is used across your network. Smart Licensing is the next generation licensing platform for all Cisco software products.

Prerequisites for Cisco Smart Licensing Client

• Ensure that Call Home is enabled before using the Smart Licensing Client feature.

• Ensure that the device is running the Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.1 version that supports the Smart Licensing mode.

Restrictions for Cisco Smart Licensing Client

• Cisco 4000 Series ISR platforms support Cisco One Suites License, Technology Package License, Throughput License, and HSECK9 license in Cisco Smart Licensing from Cisco IOS XE Release 16.6.1.

Information About Cisco Smart Licensing Client

Cisco Smart Licensing - An Overview

A licensing model, based on a single technology, Smart Licensing has been designed for Cisco, which is intended to provide Enterprise-level Agreements for all Cisco products. Smart Licensing provides a software inventory management system that provides Customers, Cisco, and selected Partners with information about Software Ownership and Software Utilization.
Smart Licensing is software based end-to-end license platform that comprises several tools and processes that authorizes customers to use and to report Cisco products. Smart licensing has the capability to capture a customer's order and to communicate with Cisco Cloud License Service through the Smart Call Home Transport Gateway. Additionally, the Smart Call Home Transport Gateway helps to complete product registration and authorization based on the desired performance and technology levels of Cisco products. To know more about Call Home, refer to Call Home.

Benefits of Smart Licensing are the following:

- The Smart Licensing feature is aimed at giving users an experience of a single, standardized licensing solution for all Cisco products. Adding support for CiscoONE suites in the Cisco IOS Software License (CISL) and Smart Licensing mode, including the Foundation Suite and Active Directory Users and Computers (ADUC) Suite.
- Smart Licensing feature provides the ability to switch between traditional licensing (CSL) and Smart Licensing mode
- The Smart Licensing feature supports four software universal images NPE, NO-LI, NPE-NO-LI, and Non-NPE images.

Transitioning from CSL to Smart Licensing

In the Smart Licensing Model, customers can activate licensed objects without the use of a special software key or upgrade license file. Customers simply activate the new functionality using the appropriate product commands and configurations and the functionality is activated. A software reboot may or may not be required depending on the product capabilities and requirements.

Similarly, downgrading or removing an advanced feature, performance, or functionality would require removal of the configuration or command.

After either of the above actions has been taken, the change in license state is noted by the Smart Software Manager upon next synchronization and an appropriate action is taken.

Cisco ONE Suites

Cisco ONE Suites is a new way for customers to purchase infrastructure software. Cisco ONE offers a simplified purchasing model, centered on common customer scenarios in the data center, wide area network, and local access networks.

Smart Licensing supports Smart License Cisco ONE suite level licenses and image licenses, such as ipbase, Advanced IP Services (AIS), Advanced Enterprise Services (AES) and feature license and throughput performance, crypto throughput and port licensing on ASR 1000 Aggregation Series Routers.

To know more about Cisco One Suites, please refer to Cisco ONE Suites.

How to Activate Cisco Smart Licensing Client

Enable Smart Licensing

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3.  license smart enable
4.  exit
5.  write memory
6.  show license all

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>license smart enable</td>
<td>Activates Smart Licensing on the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# license smart enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td>When you enable Smart Licensing, the Cisco Software License (CSL) and all licensing calls pass through the Smart Agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>For the ‘no’ case, if Smart Licensing is already registered, the Smart Agent performs the ”license smart deregister” operation that deactivates Smart Licensing. Reload the device to activate the CSL on the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>exit</td>
<td>Exits the global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>write memory</td>
<td>Saves the running configuration to NVRAM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# write memory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>show license all</td>
<td>(Optional) Displays summary information about all licenses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# show license all</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Smart License Disable

### SUMMARY STEPS

1.  enable
2. configure terminal  
3. no license smart enable  
4. exit  
5. write memory  
6. reload  
7. show license all

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | enable                                     | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
Example:  
Device> enable  
- Enter your password if prompted. |
| Step 2 | configure terminal                        | Enters global configuration mode.                                                                                                    |
Example:  
Device# configure terminal |
| Step 3 | no license smart enable                    | Deactivates Smart Licensing on the device.  
Note:  
When you enable Smart Licensing, the Cisco Software License (CSL) and all licensing calls pass through the Smart Agent. For the ‘no’ case, if Smart Licensing is already registered, the Smart Agent performs the “license smart deregister” operation that deactivates Smart Licensing. Reload the device to activate the CSL on the device.  
Example:  
Device(config)# no license smart enable |
| Step 4 | exit                                       | Exits the global configuration mode.                                                                                                  |
Example:  
Device(config)# exit |
| Step 5 | write memory                               | Saves the running configuration to NVRAM.                                                                                                |
Example:  
Device# write memory |
| Step 6 | reload                                     | (Optional) Restarts the device to enable the new feature set.  
Note:  
Reload the device if you have not reloaded the device after configuring the Cisco One Suites. |
Example:  
Device# reload |
| Step 7 | show license all                           | (Optional) Displays summary information about all licenses.  
Example:  
 |

**Cisco 4000 Series ISRs Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.x**
### Device Registration

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. license smart register idtoken *idtoken* [force]
3. license smart deregister
4. license smart renew [ID | auth]

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>license smart register idtoken <em>idtoken</em> [force]</td>
<td>Registers the device with the back-end server. Token id can be obtained from your virtual a/c in the Smart Licensing server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device# license smart register idtoken 123</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>license smart deregister</td>
<td>Deregisters the device from the backend server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device# license smart deregister</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>license smart renew [ID</td>
<td>auth]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device# license smart renew ID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Troubleshooting for Cisco Smart Licensing Client

You can troubleshoot Smart Licensing enabling issues using the following commands on the device:

- show version
- show running-config
Configuration Examples for Cisco Smart Licensing Client

Example: Displays summary information about all licenses

The following example shows how to use the `show license all` command to display summary information about all licenses.

```
Device#show license all
Smart Licensing Status

Smart Licensing is ENABLED

Registration:
Status: REGISTERED
Smart Account: BU Production Test
Virtual Account: ISR4K
Export-Controlled Functionality: Allowed
Initial Registration: SUCCEEDED on Sep 04 15:40:03 2015 PDT
Last Renewal Attempt: None
Next Renewal Attempt: Mar 02 15:40:02 2016 PDT
Registration Expires: Sep 03 15:34:53 2016 PDT

License Authorization:
Status: AUTHORIZED on Sep 04 15:40:09 2015 PDT
Last Communication Attempt: SUCCEEDED on Sep 04 15:40:09 2015 PDT
Next Communication Attempt: Oct 04 15:40:08 2015 PDT
Communication Deadline: Dec 03 15:35:01 2015 PDT

License Usage

ISR_4400_FoundationSuite (ISR_4400_FoundationSuite):
Description: Cisco ONE Foundation Perpetual License ISR 4400
Count: 1
Version: 1.0
Status: AUTHORIZED

ISR_4400_AdvancedUCSuite (ISR_4400_AdvancedUCSuite):
Description: Cisco ONE Advanced UC Perpetual License ISR 4400
Count: 1
Version: 1.0
Status: AUTHORIZED

ISR_4451_2G_Performance (ISR_4451_2G_Performance):
Description: Performance on Demand License for 4450 Series
Count: 1
Version: 1.0
Status: AUTHORIZED
```
Example: Enabling Smart Licensing

The following example shows how to use the `license smart enable` command to confirm if the Cisco ONE Suite is enabled.

The warning message that is displayed in the following example applies only for Cisco ISR G2 platform. For Cisco 4000 Series ISR platform, it does not display warning message when you enable the smart license.

```
Device# license smart enable
Currently only Cisco ONE license suites are supported by Smart Licensing.
Please make sure your Cisco ONE suites are enabled before turning on Smart Licensing.
Any other licenses outside of Cisco ONE suites would be disabled and made unusable in Smart Licensing.
If you have any questions, please get in touch with your Cisco representative before using this mode.
Please confirm Cisco ONE suites are enabled? [yes/no]: yes
```
CHAPTER 7

Managing the Device Using Web User Interface

The Web User Interface (Web UI) is an embedded GUI-based device-management tool that provides the ability to provision the device, to simplify device deployment and manageability, and to enhance the user experience. It comes with the default image, so there is no need to enable anything or install any license on the device. You can use WebUI to build configurations, and to monitor and troubleshoot the device without having CLI expertise. This chapter includes the these sections:

- Setting Up Factory Default Device Using Web UI, on page 69
- Using Web User Interface for Day One Setup, on page 73

Setting Up Factory Default Device Using Web UI

Quick Setup Wizard allows you perform the basic router configuration. To configure the router:

Before you access the Web UI, you need to have the basic configuration on the device.

**Step 1**  Connect the RJ-45 end of a serial cable to the RJ-45 console port on the router.

**Step 2**  After the device initial configuration wizard appears, enter No to get into the device prompt when the following system message appears on the router.

Would you like to enter the initial configuration dialog? [yes/no]: no

**Step 3**  From the configuration mode, enter the following configuration parameters.

```plaintext
!  
ip dhcp pool WEBUIPool
    network 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    default-router 192.168.1.1
    username admin privilege 15 password 0 default
!  
interface gig 0/0/1
    ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0
!  
```

**Step 4**  Connect the PC to the router using an Ethernet cable to the gig 0/0/1 interface.

**Step 5**  Set up your PC as a DHCP client to obtain the IP address of the router automatically.
Step 6  Launch the browser and enter the device IP address in your browser’s address line. For a secure connection, type https://192.168.1.1/#/dayZeroRouting. For a less secure connection, enter http://192.168.1.1/#/dayZeroRouting.

Step 7  Enter the default username (admin) and the password as default.

Using Basic or Advanced Mode Setup Wizard

To configure the router using the basic or advanced mode setup:

Step 1  Choose the Basic Mode or Advanced Mode and click Go To Account Creation Page.
Step 2  Enter the username and password. Reenter the password to confirm.
Step 3  Click Create and Launch Wizard.
Step 4  Enter the device name and domain name.
Step 5  Select the appropriate time zone from the Time Zone drop-down list.
Step 6  Select the appropriate date and time mode from the Date and Time drop-down list.
Step 7  Click LAN Settings.
Configure LAN Settings

Step 1  Choose the Web DHCP Pool/DHCP Pool name or the Create and Associate Access VLAN option.
   a) If you choose the Web DHCP Pool, specify the following:
      Pool Name—Enter the DHCP Pool Name.
      Network—Enter network address and the subnet mask.
   b) If you choose the Create and Associate Access VLAN option, specify the following:
      Access VLAN—Enter the Access VLAN identification number. The range is from 1 to 4094.
      Network—Enter the IP address of the VLAN.
      Management Interfaces—Select the interface and move to the selected list box using the right and left arrows. You can also double click or drag and drop to move the interface to the selected list box.

Step 2  Click Primary WAN Settings.

Configure Primary WAN Settings

Step 1  Select the primary WAN type. You can configure Serial, 3G/4G, Ethernet, or Broadband (xDSL) as primary WAN depending on the WAN types supported by the router.

Step 2  Select the interface from the drop-down list.

Step 3  Check the Get DNS Server info directly from ISP check box to get the DNS server information directly from the service provider. You can also manually enter the Primary DNS and Secondary DNS.

Step 4  Check the Get IP automatically from ISP check box to get the IP address information directly from the service provider. You can also manually enter the IP address and subnet mask.

Step 5  Check the Enable NAT check box to enable NAT. It is recommended to enable NAT.

Step 6  Check the Enable PPPoE check box to enable PPPoE. If you have enabled PPPoE, select the required authentication mode. The options are: PAP and CHAP.
Configure Secondary WAN Settings

For advanced configuration, you should configure the secondary WAN connection.

Step 1 Select the secondary WAN type. You can configure Serial, 3G/4G, Ethernet, or Broadband (xDSL) as a secondary WAN depending on the WAN types supported by the router.

Step 2 Select the interface from the drop-down list.

Step 3 Check the Get DNS Server info directly from ISP check box to get the DNS server information directly from the service provider. You can also manually enter the Primary DNS and Secondary DNS.

Step 4 Check the Get IP automatically from ISP check box to get the IP address information directly from the service provider. You can also manually enter the IP address and subnet mask.

Step 5 Check the Enable NAT check box to enable NAT. It is recommended to enable NAT.

Step 6 Check the Enable PPPOE check box to enable PPPOE. If you have enabled PPPOE, select the required authentication mode. The options are PAP and CHAP.

Step 7 Enter the user name and password provided by the service provider.

Step 8 Click Security / APP Visibility WAN Settings.

Configure Security Settings

Step 1 Check the Enable Cisco Recommended Security Settings check box to ensure that all passwords are not shown in plain text. The passwords are encrypted.

Step 2 Click Day 0 Config Summary.

Step 3 To preview the configuration, click CLI Preview to preview the configuration.

Step 4 Click Finish to complete the Day Zero setup.
Using Web User Interface for Day One Setup

To configure the Web user interface:

**Step 1** Configure the HTTP server. By default, the HTTP server configuration should be present on the device. Ensure the configuration by checking if the `ip http server` and `ip http secure-server` commands are present in the running configuration.

Device #configure terminal
Device (config)#ip http server
Device (config)#ip http secure-server

**Step 2** Set up the authentication options to log into Web UI. You can use one of these methods to authenticate:

a) You can authenticate using local database. To use a local database for Web UI authentication, ensure to have the `ip http authentication local` command in the running configuration. This command is preconfigured on the device. If the command is not present, configure the device as shown in this example:

Device #configure terminal
Device (config)#ip http authentication local

**Note** You need a user with privilege 15 to access the configuration screens on Web UI. If the privilege is less than 15, you can access only the Dashboard and Monitoring screens on Web UI.

To create a user account, use the `username <username> privilege <privilege> password 0 <passwordtext>`

Device #configure terminal
Device (config)# username <username> privilege <privilege> password 0 <passwordtext>

b) Authenticate using AAA options. To use AAA authentication for Web UI, ensure to configure ‘ip http authentication aaa’ on the device. Also, ensure that the required AAA server configuration is present on the device.

Device #configure terminal
Device (config)#ip http authentication local
Step 3  Launch the browser. In the address bar, type the IP address of the device. For a secure connection, type https://ip-address.

Step 4  Enter the default username (cisco) and password provided with the device

Step 5  Click Log In.
CHAPTER 8

Console Port, Telnet, and SSH Handling

This chapter includes the following sections:

- Notes and Restrictions for Console Port, Telnet, and SSH, on page 75
- Console Port Overview, on page 75
- Console Port Handling Overview, on page 76
- Telnet and SSH Overview, on page 76
- Persistent Telnet and Persistent SSH Overview, on page 76
- Configuring a Console Port Transport Map, on page 77
- Configuring Persistent Telnet, on page 79
- Configuring Persistent SSH, on page 81
- Viewing Console Port, SSH, and Telnet Handling Configurations, on page 84
- Configuring Auxiliary Port for Modem Connection, on page 89

Notes and Restrictions for Console Port, Telnet, and SSH

- Telnet and Secure Shell (SSH) settings configured in the transport map override any other Telnet or SSH settings when the transport map is applied to the Ethernet management interface.

- Only local usernames and passwords can be used to authenticate users entering a Ethernet management interface. AAA authentication is not available for users accessing the router through a Ethernet management interface using persistent Telnet or persistent SSH.

- Applying a transport map to a Ethernet management interface with active Telnet or SSH sessions can disconnect the active sessions. Removing a transport map from an interface, however, does not disconnect any active Telnet or SSH session.

- Configuring the diagnostic and wait banners is optional, but recommended. The banners are especially useful as indicators to users about the status of their Telnet or SSH attempts.

Console Port Overview

The console port on the router is an EIA/TIA-232 asynchronous, serial connection with no flow control and an RJ-45 connector. The console port is used to access the router and is located on the front panel of the Route Processor.
For information on accessing the router using the console port, see Using Cisco IOS XE Software, on page 45.

## Console Port Handling Overview

If you are using the console port to access the router, you are automatically directed to the Cisco IOS command-line interface (CLI).

If you are trying to access the router through the console port and send a break signal (by entering Ctrl-C or Ctrl-Shift-6, or by entering the send break command at the Telnet prompt) before connecting to the CLI, you are directed to a diagnostic mode if the non-RPIOs subpackages are accessible. These settings can be changed by configuring a transport map for the console port and applying that transport map to the console interface.

## Telnet and SSH Overview

Telnet and SSH on the router can be configured and handled like Telnet and SSH on other Cisco platforms. For information on traditional Telnet, see the line command in the Cisco IOS Terminal Services Command Reference, Release 12.2 document. For more information on AAA authentication methods, see the line command in the Authentication Commands chapter.

For information on configuring traditional SSH, see the “Configuring Secure Shell” chapter in the Cisco IOS Terminal Services Command Reference, Release 12.2 document.

On the router, persistent Telnet and persistent SSH allow network administrators to more clearly define the treatment of incoming traffic when users access the router through the management ethernet port using Telnet or SSH. Notably, persistent Telnet and persistent SSH provide more robust network access by allowing the router to be configured to be accessible through the Ethernet management port using Telnet or SSH even when the Cisco IOS process has failed.

## Persistent Telnet and Persistent SSH Overview

In traditional Cisco routers, accessing the router using Telnet or SSH is not possible if the Cisco IOS software fails. When Cisco IOS fails on a traditional Cisco router, the only method of accessing the router is through the console port. Similarly, if all the active Cisco IOS processes have failed on a router that is not using persistent Telnet or persistent SSH, the only method of accessing the router is through the console port.

However, with persistent Telnet and persistent SSH, you can configure a transport map that defines the treatment of incoming Telnet or SSH traffic on the Ethernet management interface. Among the many configuration options, a transport map can be configured to direct all traffic to the Cisco IOS CLI, diagnostic mode, or to wait for a Cisco IOS VTY line to become available and then direct users to diagnostic mode when a user sends a break signal while waiting for the IOS VTY line to become available. If a user uses Telnet or SSH to access diagnostic mode, that Telnet or SSH connection will be usable even in scenarios when no Cisco IOS process is active. Therefore, persistent Telnet and persistent SSH introduce the ability to access the router via diagnostic mode when the Cisco IOS process is not active. For information on diagnostic mode, see Using Cisco IOS XE Software. For information on the options that are can be configured using persistent Telnet or persistent SSH transport maps, see Configuring Persistent Telnet, on page 79 and Configuring Persistent SSH, on page 81.
Configuring a Console Port Transport Map

This task describes how to configure a transport map for a console port interface on the router.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. transport-map type console transport-map-name
4. connection wait [allow [interruptible] | none [disconnect]]
5. (Optional) banner [diagnostic | wait] banner-message
6. exit
7. transport type console console-line-number input transport-map-name

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router&gt; enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Creates and names a transport map for handling console connections, and enters transport map configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transport-map type console transport-map-name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router(config)# transport-map type console consolehandler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Specifies how a console connection will be handled using this transport map.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connection wait [allow [interruptible]</td>
<td>none [disconnect]]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router(config-tmap)# connection wait none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• allow interruptible—The console connection waits for a Cisco IOS VTY line to become available, and also allows users to enter diagnostic mode by interrupting a console connection that is waiting for a Cisco IOS VTY line to become available. This is the default setting.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong> Users can interrupt a waiting connection by entering Ctrl-C or Ctrl-Shift-6.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• none—The console connection immediately enters diagnostic mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) banner [diagnostic</td>
<td>wait] banner-message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-tmap)# <code>banner diagnostic X</code></td>
<td><strong>diagnostic</strong>—Creates a banner message seen by users directed to diagnostic mode because of the console transport map configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter TEXT message. End with the character 'X'.</td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> Users can interrupt a waiting connection by entering Ctrl-C or Ctrl-Shift-6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>--Welcome to Diagnostic Mode-- X</code></td>
<td><strong>wait</strong>—Creates a banner message seen by users waiting for Cisco IOS VTY to become available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-tmap)#</td>
<td><strong>.banner-message</strong>—Banner message, which begins and ends with the same delimiting character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>exit</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Exits transport map configuration mode to re-enter global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-tmap)# <code>exit</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transport type console console-line-number input transport-map-name</td>
<td>Applies the settings defined in the transport map to the console interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>The <code>transport-map-name</code> for this command must match the <code>transport-map-name</code> defined in the <code>transport-map type console</code> command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# <code>transport type console 0 input consolehandler</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to create a transport map to set console port access policies and attach to console port 0:

```
Router(config)# `transport-map type console consolehandler`  
Router(config-tmap)# `connection wait allow interruptible`  
Router(config-tmap)# `banner diagnostic X`  
Enter TEXT message. End with the character 'X'.  
`--Welcome to diagnostic mode-- X`  
Router(config-tmap)# `banner wait X`  
Enter TEXT message. End with the character 'X'.  
Waiting for IOS vty line  
X  
Router(config-tmap)# `exit`  
Router(config)# `transport type console 0 input consolehandler`
```
Configuring Persistent Telnet

For a persistent Telnet connection to access an Cisco IOS vty line on the router, local login authentication must be configured for the vty line (the `login` command in line configuration mode). If local login authentication is not configured, users will not be able to access Cisco IOS using a Telnet connection into the management Ethernet interface with an applied transport map. Diagnostic mode will still be accessible in this scenario.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `transport-map type persistent telnet transport-map-name`
4. `connection wait [allow [interruptible] | none [disconnect]]`
5. (Optional) `banner [diagnostic | wait] banner-message`
6. `transport interface gigabitethernet 0`
7. `exit`
8. `transport type persistent telnetinput transport-map-name`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><strong>enable</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Router&gt; enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.&lt;br&gt;• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><strong>configure terminal</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Router# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><strong>transport-map type persistent telnet transport-map-name</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Router(config)# transport-map type persistent telnet telnethandler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Creates and names a transport map for handling persistent Telnet connections, and enters transport map configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>**connection wait [allow [interruptible]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Specifies how a persistent Telnet connection will be handled using this transport map:&lt;br&gt;• <strong>allow</strong>—The Telnet connection waits for a Cisco IOS vty line to become available, and exits the router if interrupted.&lt;br&gt;• <strong>allow interruptible</strong>—The Telnet connection waits for the Cisco IOS vty line to become available, and also allows user to enter diagnostic mode by interrupting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Persistent Telnet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a Telnet connection waiting for the Cisco IOS vty line to become available. This is the default setting.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>Users can interrupt a waiting connection by entering <strong>Ctrl-C</strong> or <strong>Ctrl-Shift-6</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>none</strong>—The Telnet connection immediately enters diagnostic mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>none disconnect</strong>—The Telnet connection does not wait for the Cisco IOS vty line and does not enter diagnostic mode, so all Telnet connections are rejected if no vty line is immediately available in the Cisco IOS software.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 5

(Optional) Creates a banner message seen by users entering diagnostic mode or waiting for the Cisco IOS vty line because of the persistent Telnet configuration.

**Example:**

```
Router(config-tmap)# banner diagnostic X
Enter TEXT message. End with the character 'X'.
--Welcome to Diagnostic Mode--
X
```

### Step 6

**transport interface gigabitethernet 0**

**Example:**

```
Router(config-tmap)# transport interface gigabitethernet 0
```

### Step 7

**exit**

**Example:**

```
Router(config-tmap)# exit
```

### Step 8

**transport type persistent telnetinput**

**Example:**

```
Router(config)# transport type persistent telnetinput
telnethandler
```

Applies the transport map settings to the management Ethernet interface (interface gigabitethernet 0). Persistent Telnet can be applied only to the management Ethernet interface on the router. This step must be taken before applying the transport map to the management Ethernet interface.

Exits transport map configuration mode to re-enter global configuration mode.

Applies the settings defined in the transport map to the management Ethernet interface.

The **transport-map-name** for this command must match the **transport-map-name** defined in the **transport-map type persistent telnet** command.
Examples

In the following example, a transport map that will make all Telnet connections wait for a Cisco IOS XE vty line to become available before connecting to the router, while also allowing the user to interrupt the process and enter diagnostic mode, is configured and applied to the management Ethernet interface (interface gigabitethernet 0).

A diagnostic and a wait banner are also configured.

The transport map is then applied to the interface when the transport type persistent telnet input command is entered to enable persistent Telnet.

```
Router(config)# transport-map type persistent telnet telnethandler
Router(config-tmap)# connection wait allow interruptible
Router(config-tmap)# banner diagnostic X
  --Welcome to diagnostic mode--
  X
Router(config-tmap)# banner wait X
  Enter TEXT message. End with the character 'X'.
  Waiting for IOS IOS Process--
  X
Router(config-tmap)# transport interface gigabitethernet 0
Router(config-tmap)# exit
Router(config)# transport type persistent telnet input telnethandler
```

Configuring Persistent SSH

This task describes how to configure persistent SSH on the router.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. transport-map type persistent ssh transport-map-name
4. connection wait [allow [interruptible] | none [disconnect]]
5. rsa keypair-name rsa-keypair-name
6. (Optional) authentication-retries number-of-retries
7. (Optional) banner [diagnostic | wait] banner-message
8. (Optional) time-out timeout-interval
9. transport interface gigabitethernet 0
10. exit
11. transport type persistent ssh input transport-map-name

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 configure terminal</td>
<td>Creates and names a transport map for handling persistent SSH connections, and enters transport map configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 transport-map type persistent ssh transport-map-name</td>
<td>Specifies how a persistent SSH connection will be handled using this transport map:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4 connection wait [allow [interruptible]</td>
<td>none [disconnect]]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5 rsa keypair-name rsa-keypair-name</td>
<td>Names the RSA keypair to be used for persistent SSH connections. For persistent SSH connections, the RSA keypair name must be defined using this command in transport map configuration mode. The RSA keypair definitions defined elsewhere on the router, such as through the use of the <code>ip ssh rsa keypair-name</code> command, do not apply to persistent SSH connections. No <code>rsa-keypair-name</code> is defined by default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Step 6 | (Optional) `authentication-retries number-of-retries`  
**Example:**  
Router(config-tmap)# `authentication-retries 4`  
(Optional) Specifies the number of authentication retries before dropping the connection.  
The default `number-of-retries` is 3. |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Step 7 | (Optional) `banner [diagnostic | wait] banner-message`  
**Example:**  
Router(config-tmap)# `banner diagnostic X`  
Enter TEXT message. End with the character 'X'.  
`--Welcome to Diagnostic Mode-- X`  
Router(config-tmap)#  
(Optional) Creates a banner message that will be seen by users entering diagnostic mode or waiting for the VTY line because of the persistent SSH configuration.  
  - **diagnostic**—Creates a banner message seen by users directed to diagnostic mode because of the persistent SSH configuration.  
  - **wait**—Creates a banner message seen by users waiting for the VTY line to become available.  
  - **banner-message**—The banner message, which begins and ends with the same delimiting character. |
| Step 8 | (Optional) `time-out timeout-interval`  
**Example:**  
Router(config-tmap)# `time-out 30`  
(Optional) Specifies the SSH time-out interval, in seconds.  
The default `timeout-interval` is 120 seconds. |
| Step 9 | `transport interface gigabitethernet 0`  
**Example:**  
Router(config-tmap)# `transport interface gigabitethernet 0`  
Applies the transport map settings to the Ethernet management interface (interface gigabitethernet 0).  
Persistent SSH can be applied only to the Ethernet management interface on the router. |
| Step 10 | `exit`  
**Example:**  
Router(config-tmap)# `exit`  
Exits transport map configuration mode to re-enter global configuration mode. |
| Step 11 | `transport type persistent ssh input transport-map-name`  
**Example:**  
Router(config)# `transport type persistent ssh input sshhandler`  
Applies the settings defined in the transport map to the Ethernet management interface.  
The `transport-map-name` for this command must match the `transport-map-name` defined in the `transport-map type persistent ssh` command. |

**Examples**

The following example shows a transport map that will make all SSH connections wait for the VTY line to become active before connecting to the router being configured and applied to the Ethernet management interface (interface gigabitethernet 0). The RSA keypair is named `sshkeys`.  
This example only uses the commands required to configure persistent SSH.
In the following example, a transport map is configured and will apply the following settings to users attempting to access the Ethernet management port via SSH:

- SSH users will wait for the VTY line to become active, but will enter diagnostic mode if the attempt to access the Cisco IOS software through the VTY line is interrupted.
- The RSA keypair name is sshkeys.
- The connection allows one authentication retry.
- The banner "Welcome to Diagnostic Mode" will appear if diagnostic mode is entered as a result of SSH handling through this transport map.
- The banner "Waiting for vty line" will appear if the connection is waiting for the VTY line to become active.
- The transport map is then applied to the interface when the transport type persistent ssh input command is entered to enable persistent SSH:

```bash
Router(config)# transport-map type persistent ssh sshhandler
Router(config-tmap)# connection wait allow interruptible
Router(config-tmap)# rsa keypair-name sshkeys
Router(config-tmap)# authentication-retries 1
Router(config-tmap)# banner diagnostic X
Enter TEXT message. End with the character 'X'.
--Welcome to diagnostic mode--
X
Router(config-tmap)# banner wait X
Enter TEXT message. End with the character 'X'.
--Waiting for vty line--
X
Router(config-tmap)# transport interface gigabitethernet 0
Router(config-tmap)# exit
Router(config)# transport type persistent ssh input sshhandler
```

**Viewing Console Port, SSH, and Telnet Handling Configurations**

Use the following commands to view console port, SSH, and Telnet handling configurations:

- `show transport-map`
- `show platform software configuration access policy`
Use the `show transport-map` command to view transport map configurations.

```
show transport-map [all | name transport-map-name | type [console | persistent [ssh | telnet]]]
```

This command can be used either in user EXEC mode or privileged EXEC mode.

**Example**

The following example shows transport maps that are configured on the router: a console port (consolehandler), persistent SSH (sshandler), and persistent Telnet transport (telnethandler):

```
Router# show transport-map all
Transport Map:
Name: consolehandler
Type: Console Transport

Connection:
Wait option: Wait Allow Interruptable
Wait banner:
Waiting for the IOS CLI
bshell banner:
Welcome to Diagnostic Mode

Transport Map:
Name: sshhandler
Type: Persistent SSH Transport

Interface:
GigabitEthernet0

Connection:
Wait option: Wait Allow Interruptable
Wait banner:
Waiting for IOS prompt
Bshell banner:
Welcome to Diagnostic Mode

SSH:
Timeout: 120
Authentication retries: 5
RSA keypair: sshkeys

Transport Map:
Name: telnethandler
Type: Persistent Telnet Transport

Interface:
GigabitEthernet0

Connection:
Wait option: Wait Allow Interruptable
Wait banner:
Waiting for IOS process
Bshell banner:
```
Welcome to Diagnostic Mode

Transport Map:
Name: telnetHandling1
Type: Persistent Telnet Transport

Connection:
Wait option: Wait Allow

Router# show transport-map type console
Transport Map:
Name: consoleHandler
Type: Console Transport

Connection:
Wait option: Wait Allow Interruptable
Wait banner:
Waiting for the IOS CLI
Bshell banner:
Welcome to Diagnostic Mode

Router# show transport-map type persistent ssh
Transport Map:
Name: sshHandler
Type: Persistent SSH Transport

Interface:
GigabitEthernet0

Connection:
Wait option: Wait Allow Interruptable
Wait banner:
Waiting for IOS prompt
Bshell banner:
Welcome to Diagnostic Mode

SSH:
Timeout: 120
Authentication retries: 5
RSA keypair: sshkeys

Router# show transport-map type persistent telnet
Transport Map:
Name: telnetHandler
Type: Persistent Telnet Transport

Interface:
GigabitEthernet0

Connection:
Wait option: Wait Allow Interruptable
Wait banner:
Waiting for IOS process
Bshell banner:
Welcome to Diagnostic Mode

Transport Map:
Name: telnethandling1
Type: Persistent Telnet Transport

Connection:
Wait option: Wait Allow

Router# show transport-map name telnethandler
Transport Map:
Name: telnethandler
Type: Persistent Telnet Transport

Interface:
GigabitEthernet0

Connection:
Wait option: Wait Allow Interruptable
Wait banner:
Waiting for IOS process
Bshell banner:
Welcome to Diagnostic Mode

Router# show transport-map name consolehandler
Transport Map:
Name: consolehandler
Type: Console Transport

Connection:
Wait option: Wait Allow Interruptable
Wait banner:
Waiting for the IOS CLI
Bshell banner:
Welcome to Diagnostic Mode

Router# show transport-map name sshhandler
Transport Map:
Name: sshhandler
Type: Persistent SSH Transport

Interface:
GigabitEthernet0

Connection:
Wait option: Wait Allow Interruptable
Wait banner:
Waiting for IOS prompt
Bshell banner:
Welcome to Diagnostic Mode

SSH:
Timeout: 120
Authentication retries: 5
RSA keypair: sshkeys
Router#

Use the `show platform software configuration access policy` command to view the current configurations for handling the incoming console port, SSH, and Telnet connections. The output of this command provides the current wait policy for each type of connection (Telnet, SSH, and console), as well as information on the currently configured banners.

Unlike the `show transport-map` command, the `show platform software configuration access policy` command is available in diagnostic mode so that it can be entered in scenarios where you need transport map configuration information, but cannot access the Cisco IOS CLI.

Example

Router# `show platform software configuration access policy`
The current access-policies

Method : telnet
Rule : wait
Shell banner:
Wait banner :

Method : ssh
Rule : wait
Shell banner:
Wait banner :

Method : console
Rule : wait with interrupt
Shell banner:
Wait banner :

Example

The following example shows the `show platform software configuration access policy` command being issued both before and after a new transport map for SSH are configured. During the configuration, the connection policy and banners are set for a persistent SSH transport map, and the transport map for SSH is enabled.

Router# `show platform software configuration access policy`
The current access-policies

Method : telnet
Rule : wait with interrupt
Shell banner:
Welcome to Diagnostic Mode
Wait banner :
Waiting for IOS Process
Method : ssh
Rule : wait
Shell banner:
Wait banner :

Method : console
Rule : wait with interrupt
Shell banner:
Wait banner :

Router# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Router(config)# transport-map type persistent ssh sshhandler
Router(config-tmap)# connection wait allow interruptible
Router(config-tmap)# banner diagnostic X
Enter TEXT message. End with the character 'X'.
Welcome to Diag Mode X
Router(config-tmap)# banner wait X
Enter TEXT message. End with the character 'X'.
Waiting for IOS X
Router(config-tmap)# rsa keypair-name sshkeys
Router(config-tmap)# transport interface gigabitethernet 0
Router(config-tmap)# exit
Router(config)# transport type persistent ssh input sshhandler
Router(config)# exit

Router# show platform software configuration access policy
The current access-policies

Method : telnet
Rule : wait with interrupt
Shell banner:
Welcome to Diagnostic Mode
Wait banner :
Waiting for IOS process

Method : ssh
Rule : wait with interrupt
Shell banner:
Welcome to Diag Mode
Wait banner :
Waiting for IOS

Method : console
Rule : wait with interrupt
Shell banner:
Wait banner :

Configuring Auxiliary Port for Modem Connection

Cisco 4000 Series ISR supports connecting a modem to the router auxiliary port for EXEC dial in connectivity. When a modem is connected to the auxiliary port, a remote user can dial in to the router and configure it. To configure a modem on the auxiliary port, perform these steps:
**Step 1**  Connect the RJ-45 end of the adapter cable to the black AUX port on the router.

**Step 2**  Use the `show line` command to determine the async interface of the AUX port:

```
Router# show line

Tty Typ Tx/Rx A Modem Roty AccO AccI Uses Noise Overruns Int
  * 0 CTY - - - - - 0 0 0/0 -
  1 AUX 9600/9600 - - - - 0 0 0/0 -
  2 VTY - - - - - 0 0 0/0 -
  3 VTY - - - - - 0 0 0/0 -
  4 VTY - - - - - 0 0 0/0 -
  5 VTY - - - - - 0 0 0/0 -
  6 VTY - - - - - 0 0 0/0 -
```

**Step 3**  Use the following commands to configure the router AUX line:

```
Router(config)# line 1

Router(config-line)# modem inOut
Router(config-line)# modem autoconfigure type usr_sportster
Router(config-line)# speed 115200 [Speed to be set according to the modem manual]
Router(config-line)# stopbits 1 [Stopbits to be set according to the modem manual]
Router(config-line)# transport input all
Router(config-line)# flowcontrol hardware [flowcontrol to be set according to the modem manual]
Router(config-line)# password cisco
Router(config-line)# login
Router(config-line)# end
Router(config)# enable password lab
```

**Step 4**  Use the reverse telnet method on the modem to verify the modem connectivity and configuration string:

```
Router(config)# int loopback 0
Router(config-if)# ip add 1.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
Router(config-if)# end
Router# telnet 1.1.1.1 2001
Trying 1.1.1.1, 2001 ... Open

User Access Verification

Password: <enter the password given under line configuration>

at <<<== Modem command
OK <<<== This OK indicates that the modem is connected successfully to the AUX port.
```

**Step 5**  Use an analog phone to verify that the phone line is active and functions properly. Then, connect the analog phone line to the modem.

**Step 6**  Initialize an EXEC modem call to the router from another device (PC) to test the modem connection.

**Step 7**  When the connection is established, the dial in client is prompted for a password. Enter the correct password.

**Note:** This password should match the one that is configured on the auxiliary port line.
Installing the Software

This chapter includes the following sections:

- Overview, on page 91
- ROMMON Images, on page 91
- Provisioning Files, on page 92
- File Systems, on page 92
- Autogenerated File Directories and Files, on page 93
- Flash Storage, on page 94
- Configuring the Configuration Register for Autoboot, on page 94
- Licensing, on page 95

Overview

Installing software on the router involves installing a consolidated package (bootable image). This consists of a bundle of subpackages (modular software units), with each subpackage controlling a different set of functions.

These are the two main methods to install the software:

- Managing and Configuring a Router to Run Using a Consolidated Package, on page 104—This method allows for individual upgrade of subpackages and generally has reduced boot times compared to the method below. Use this method if you want to individually upgrade a module's software.

- Managing and Configuring a Router to Run Using Individual Packages, on page 109—This a simple method that is similar to a typical Cisco router image installation and management that is supported across Cisco routers.

It is better to upgrade software in a planned period of maintenance when an interruption in service is acceptable. The router needs to be rebooted for a software upgrade to take effect.

ROMMON Images

A ROMMON image is a software package used by ROM Monitor (ROMMON) software on a router. The software package is separate from the consolidated package normally used to boot the router. For more information on ROMMON, see the "ROM Monitor Overview and Basic Procedures" section in the Upgrading Field-Programmable Hardware Devices for Cisco 4000 Series ISRs guide.
An independent ROMMON image (software package) may occasionally be released and the router can be upgraded with the new ROMMON software. For detailed instructions, see the documentation that accompanies the ROMMON image.

---

**Note**
A new version of the ROMMON image is not necessarily released at the same time as a consolidated package for a router.

---

**Provisioning Files**

This section provides background information about the files and processes used in Managing and Configuring a Router to Run Using Individual Packages, on page 109.

The consolidated package on a router consists of a collection of subpackages and a provisioning file titled `packages.conf`. To run the software, the usual method used is to boot the consolidated package, which is copied into memory, expanded, mounted, and run within memory. The provisioning file's name can be renamed but subpackage file's names cannot be renamed. The provisioning file and subpackage files must be kept in the same directory. The provisioning file does not work properly if any individual subpackage file is contained within a different directory.

---

**Note**
An exception to this is that if a new or upgraded module firmware package is subsequently installed, it need not be in the same directory as the provisioning file.

Configuring a router to boot, using the provisioning file `packages.conf`, is beneficial because no changes have to be made to the boot statement after the Cisco IOS XE software is upgraded.

Alternatively, for an example of booting using subpackages, see Configuring the Router to Boot Using Subpackages, on page 365.

---

**File Systems**

The following table provides a list of file systems that can be seen on the Cisco 4000 series routers.

### Table 8: Router File Systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File System</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bootflash:</td>
<td>Boot flash memory file system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flash:</td>
<td>Alias to the boot flash memory file system above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harddisk:</td>
<td>Hard disk file system (if NIM-SSD, NIM-HDD, or internal mSATA flash device is present in the router). <strong>Note</strong> The internal mSATA flash device is supported only on Cisco ISR4300 Series routers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
File System  | Description
---|---
cns:  | Cisco Networking Services file directory.
nvram:  | Router NVRAM. You can copy the startup configuration to NVRAM or from NVRAM.
obfl:  | File system for Onboard Failure Logging (OBFL) files.
system:  | System memory file system, which includes the running configuration.
tar:  | Archive file system.
tmpsys:  | Temporary system files file system.
usb0:  | The Universal Serial Bus (USB) flash drive file systems.
usb1:  | **Note** The USB flash drive file system is visible only if a USB drive is installed in usb0: or usb1: ports.

Use the `?` help option, or use the `copy` command in command reference guides, if you find a file system that is not listed in the table above.

### Autogenerated File Directories and Files

This section discusses the autogenerated files and directories that can be created, and how the files in these directories can be managed.

**Table 9: Autogenerated Files**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File or Directory</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
crashinfo files  | Crashinfo files may appear in the bootflash: file system. These files provide descriptive information of a crash and may be useful for tuning or troubleshooting purposes. However, the files are not part of router operations, and can be erased without impacting the functioning of the router. |
core directory  | The storage area for .core files. If this directory is erased, it will automatically regenerate itself at bootup. The .core files in this directory can be erased without impacting any router functionality, but the directory itself should not be erased. |
lost+found directory  | This directory is created on bootup if a system check is performed. Its appearance is completely normal and does not indicate any issues with the router. |
### Flash Storage

Subpackages are installed to local media storage, such as flash. For flash storage, use the `dir bootflash:` command to list the file names.

**Note**

Flash storage is required for successful operation of a router.

### Configuring the Configuration Register for Autoboot

The configuration register can be used to change router behavior. This includes controlling how the router boots. Set the configuration register to 0x0 to boot into ROM, by using one of the following commands:

- In Cisco IOS configuration mode, use the `config-reg 0x0` command.
- From the ROMMON prompt, use the `confreg 0x0` command.

For more information about the configuration register, see Use of the Configuration Register on All Cisco Routers and Configuring a Router to Boot the Consolidated Package via TFTP Using the boot Command: Example, on page 106.
Setting the configuration register to 0x2102 will set the router to autoboote the Cisco IOS XE software.

Note

The console baud rate is set to 9600 after changing the confreg to 0x2102 or 0x0. If you cannot establish a console session after setting confreg, or garbage output appears, change the setting on your terminal emulation software to 9600.

Licensing

- Cisco Software Licensing, on page 95
- Consolidated Packages, on page 95
- Technology Packages, on page 96
- Feature Licenses, on page 97
- Unlicensed Feature: Example, on page 103

Cisco Software Licensing

Cisco software licensing consists of processes and components to activate Cisco IOS software feature sets by obtaining and validating Cisco software licenses.

You can enable licensed features and store license files in the bootflash of your router. Licenses pertain to consolidated packages, technology packages, or individual features.

An evaluation license is automatically converted to a Right to Use model after 60 days and this license is valid permanently. The conversion to a permanent license applies only to evaluation licenses. For other features supported on your router, you must purchase a permanent license.

See the "Configuring the Cisco IOS Software Activation Feature" chapter of the Software Activation Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Release 3S.

Consolidated Packages

One of the following two consolidated packages (images) is preinstalled on the router:

- **universalk9**—Contains the ipbasek9 base package and the securityk9, uck9, and appxk9 technology packages.

- **universalk9_npe**—Contains the ipbasek9 base package and the securityk9_npe, uck9, and appxk9 technology packages. This image has limited crypto functionality.

Note

The term npe stands for No Payload Encryption.
The terms super package and image also refer to a consolidated package.

To obtain software images for the router, go to http://software.cisco.com/download/navigator.html.

An image-based license is used to help bring up all the subsystems that correspond to a license. This license is enforced only at boot time.

Apart from the universalk9 and universalk9_npe images, a Boot ROMMON image is available. For more information, see ROMMON Images section.

For more information about identifying digitally signed Cisco software and how to show the digital signature information of an image file, see the "Digitally Signed Cisco Software" section in the Loading and Managing System Images Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Release 3S.

The following examples show how to obtain software authenticity information and internal details of a package:

- Displaying Digitally Signed Cisco Software Signature Information section
- Obtaining the Description of a Module or Consolidated Package section

Many features within the consolidated package are contained in the ipbasek9 base package. The license key for the ipbasek9 package is activated by default.

Technology Packages

Technology packages contain software features within a consolidated package. To use different sets of features, enable the licenses of selected technology packages. You can enable the licenses for any combination of technology packages.

Each technology package has an evaluation license that converts to a Right to Use (RTU) license after 60 days and is then valid permanently.

The following is a list of technology packages:

- securityk9, on page 96
- uck9, on page 97
- appxk9, on page 97

Note
In Cisco 4000 Series ISR, although L2TPv2 sessions comes up without appxk9, you need the appxk9 license for the traffic to go through the sessions. You also need the appxk9 license to apply the QoS policies to the L2TPv2 sessions.

securityk9

The securityk9 technology package includes all crypto features, including IPsec, SSL/SSH, Firewall, and Secure VPN.

The securityk9_npe package (npe = No Payload Encryption) includes all the features in the securityk9 technology package without the payload-encryption functionality. This is to fulfill export restriction
requirements. The `securityk9_npe` package is available only in the `universalk9_npe` image. The difference in features between the `securityk9` package and the `securityk9_npe` package is therefore the set of payload-encryption-enabling features such as IPsec and Secure VPN.

**uc99**

The `uc99` technology package includes the following Cisco Unified Communications features:

- CUBE
- CME-SRST
- SBC

**appxk9**


There are many features in the `appxk9` package, including MPLS, PfR, L2/L3 VPN, Broadband, and AVC.

### Feature Licenses

To use each of the following features, enable a corresponding feature license, as explained in the following sections:

- HSECK9, on page 97
- CME-SRST, on page 102

**HSECK9**

The `HSECK9` license is required for a feature to have full crypto functionality. Without the `HSECK9` license, only 225 secure tunnels and 85 Mbps of crypto bandwidth would be available. The `HSECK9` license allows features in the `securityk9` technology package to use the maximum number of secure tunnels and crypto bandwidth. To enable the `HSECK9` license, purchase the FL-44-HSEC-K9 license from Cisco.com and install it using the `license install license-files` command. For further information on obtaining and installing feature licenses, see Configuring the Cisco IOS Software Activation Feature.

---

**Note**

The `HSECK9` feature does not have an evaluation license that converts to an RTU license after 60 days; a feature license must be obtained.

To enable the license for the `HSECK9` feature, the `securityk9` technology package is also required. For more information about the `securityk9` technology package, see `securityk9`, on page 96.
Performance

The performance feature, which allows for increased throughput, is enabled by the performance license. This feature is part of the ipbasek9 technology package. To enable the feature, order the performance license (part number FL-44-PERF-K9). The license is displayed as the throughput license.

You can upgrade the throughput of the ESP from 2.5 Gbps to 5 Gbps by activating the right-to-use license and then reloading the router. For more information on the right-to-use license activation, see Configuring Cisco Right-To-Use License Configuration Guide. If you want to determine the current throughput level of the ESP, run the show platform hardware throughput level command. The following example shows the output of this command before the performance upgrade license is applied:

To configure the throughput level, perform the following steps and to upgrade the throughput level use the platform hardware throughput level \{ 2500000 | 5000000 \} command.

1. In the user EXEC configuration mode, enter the enable command.
2. Enter configure terminal command to enter the global configuration mode.
3. To upgrade the throughput level, enter the platform hardware throughput level \{ 2500000 | 5000000 \} command.
4. To exit global configuration mode, enter exit.
5. To save the configuration, enter the copy running-config startup-config command.
6. To reload the router enter reload. A reload is required to activate the throughput level.

show platform hardware throughput level
The current throughput level is 2500000 kb/s

To configure the throughput level, perform the following steps and to upgrade the throughput level use the platform hardware throughput level \{ 2500000 | 5000000 \} command.

1. In the user EXEC configuration mode, enter the enable command.
2. Enter configure terminal command to enter the global configuration mode.
3. To upgrade the throughput level, enter the platform hardware throughput level \{ 2500000 | 5000000 \} command.
4. To exit global configuration mode, enter exit.
5. To save the configuration, enter the copy running-config startup-config command.
6. To reload the router enter reload. A reload is required to activate the throughput level.

The following example shows how to upgrade the throughput level:

Router>enable
Router#configure terminal
Router(config)#platform hardware throughput level 5000000
% The config will take effect on next reboot
Router(config)#exit
Router(config)#copy running-config startup-config
Router#reload
Boost Performance Licenses

Cisco Boost performance license allows you to increase the throughput bandwidth. You can enable Boost performance license in the following modes:

---

**Note**

To use the Boost performance license, the device must be running the Cisco IOS XE software version 16.07.01 or later.

---

**Note**

When you enable boost license on Cisco 4000 Series ISRs, you cannot configure the virtual-service container for Snort IPS and ISR-WAAS.

Activating Boost Performance License in CSL Mode

To activate the Boost performance license in Cisco Software License (CSL) mode, perform the following steps:

1. Configure the device with the `license install bootflash:xxx` command as shown in this example.

   ```
   Device#license install bootflash:FDO203520HU_2018040902344356.lic
   Installing licenses from "bootflash:FDO203520HU_2018040902344356.lic"
   Installing... Feature:booster_performance... Successful:Supported
   1/1 licenses were successfully installed
   0/1 licenses were existing licenses
   0/1 licenses were failed to install
   Building configuration...
   (OK)
   % Throughput boost is configured, it will take effect after reload
   ```

2. The following message will be displayed in the logs.

   ```
   *Apr 9 07:40:11.674: %LICENSE-6-INSTALL: Feature booster_performance 1.0 was installed in this device.
   UDI=ISR4331/K9:FDO203520HU; StoreIndex=2:Primary License Storage
   ```

3. Use the `show license feature` command to verify if the boost performance license is activated. The "booster_performance" will appear in the output of "show license feature". Note that it is not enabled until the reload.

   ```
   Device#show license feature
   Feature name Enforcement Evaluation Subscription Enabled RightToUse
   appxk9 yes yes no no yes
   uck9 yes yes no no yes
   securityk9 yes yes no no yes
   ipbasek9 no no no no no
   FoundationSuiteK9 yes yes no no yes
   AdvUCSuiteK9 yes yes no no yes
   cme-srst yes yes no no yes
   hseck9 yes yes no no no
   throughput yes yes no no yes
   internal_service yes no no no no
   booster_performance yes no no no
   Device#show license
   <output omitted>
   ```
4. The **platform hardware throughput level boost** is automatically added to the configuration.

```
Device# show running-config | include throughput
platform hardware throughput level boost
```

5. Save the configuration and reload the device to enable Boost performance license. After the reload, the Boost Performance is activated as shown in this example.

```
Device# show platform hardware throughput level
The current throughput level is unthrottled

Device# show license feature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature name</th>
<th>Enforcement</th>
<th>Evaluation</th>
<th>Subscription</th>
<th>Enabled</th>
<th>RightToUse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>appxk9</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uck9</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>securityk9</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ipbasek9</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FoundationSuiteK9</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AdvUCSuiteK9</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cme-arst</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hseeck9</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throughput</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>internal_service</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>booster_performance</strong></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Device# show license

<output omitted>
```

Index 11 Feature: booster_performance
Period left: Life time
License Type: Permanent
License Count: Non-Counted
License Priority: Medium

6. To exit global configuration mode, enter **exit**.

7. To save the configuration, enter the `copy running-config startup-config` command.

---

**Boost Performance License in Smart License Mode**

This section describes the processes to activate and deactivate the Boost performance license from the device with two use-cases.

**Enable the boost performance license:**

- Boot the device in Smart License mode. The boost performance command is not visible without registering in the Smart Portal.
- After successfully registering to the Smart Portal, check the availability of the boost performance licenses in the smart account.
• Use the `platform hardware throughput level boost` command to enable the feature. You need to save the configuration. If a valid license is still available in the smart account, the Boost Performance feature is enabled after the device is reloaded.

• To check for the platform hardware throughput level, use the `show platform hardware throughput level boost` command. If there are not enough licenses, it shows an Out of Compliance (OOC) message, and the throughput level change does not take effect even after the device is reloaded.

**Return of license:**

• The device is in the smart license mode with `boost performance` command configured.

• Use `show running-config` and the `show license summary` commands to display the boost performance information from the smart account.

• Use the `no platform hardware throughput level boost` command to disable the functionality.

---

**Note**

The command is removed from the configuration, but the license is released only after the device is reloaded. The throughput level does not take effect until the device is reloaded. The license visibility is available till the device is reloaded.

One count of boost performance license is reduced from the usage pool, and one license is returned to its original pool.

---

**Cisco Software License to Smart Licensing**

This section describe a use-case when the device is moving from Cisco Software License(CSL) to Smart License when `boost performance license` is on CSL. The boost performance behavior is determined by the availability of the license in its Smart Account with Boost Performance activated in CSL:

To configure the throughput level, perform the following steps and to upgrade the throughput level use the

1. Configure the device with the `platform hardware throughput level boost` command and then use `show running-config` to check if the boost performance license is activated.

2. Use `show license` to verify if boost performance is in use and in a permanent license mode.

3. Enable smart license by `license smart enable` command. After registration in success, the license request is sent to the smart portal for validation. Boost performance is valid if successful, no reload is required. Otherwise the `platform hardware throughput level boost` is unattached from configuration. Boost performance functionality is disabled after reload.

4. During the transition but before the registration, we have to maintain the Evaluation mode for the license if the is existing to avoid an extra reload later.

5. To exit global configuration mode, enter exit.

6. To save the configuration, enter the `copy running-config startup-config` command.

7. To reload the router enter reload. A reload is required to activate the throughput level.
Smart Licensing to Cisco Software Licensing

This section includes these two use-cases that describe what happens during the transition from Smart License to Cisco Software License.

When boost performance is in use:

• Device # `platform hardware throughput level boost`
• Device# `show license` to ensure that Smart License and Boost performance licenses are enabled.
• Check the Smart License Account if the boost performance license is consumed from the corresponding device.
• Remove Smart License
• Device# `no license smart enable`
• Check the availability of the boost performance license, you may decide to retain the boost command.
• No extra reload is required.

When boost performance is not in use:

• Use `no platform hardware throughput level boost` in the show running-configuration.
• Device # `show license` to check if smart license is enabled, but boost performance license is not in the list.
• Check the Smart License Account, the boost performance license is not used from the corresponding device.
• To remove Smart License, use `no license smart enable`
• Check the availability of the `boost permanent license` to add the `boost` keyword.
• Boost Performance is activated and is in-use after reload

---

**Note**

If there is no permanent license available, then `no boost performance` command and functionality is likely to change.

CME-SRST

The CME-SRST feature requires the `uck9` technology package. To activate the CME-SRST feature license, see Activating the CME-SRST Feature License, on page 102.

Activating the CME-SRST Feature License

**Before you begin**

Ensure the following:

• License for `uck9` technology package is available.
• The CME-SRST feature is configured.
SUMMARY STEPS

1. show license detail cme-srst
2. configure terminal
3. license accept end user agreement
4. exit
5. show license detail cme-srst
6. write memory

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> show license detail cme-srst</td>
<td>Displays the available CME-SRST license.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Note: The EULA should be in NOT ACCEPTED state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# show license detail cme-srst</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> license accept end user agreement</td>
<td>Configures a one-time acceptance of the EULA for the CME-SRST license.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Accept the EULA by typing YES.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# license accept end user agreement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> exit</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> show license detail cme-srst</td>
<td>Displays the available CME-SRST license.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Note: The EULA should be in ACCEPTED state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# show license detail cme-srst</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> write memory</td>
<td>Saves configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# write memory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unlicensed Feature: Example

If you try to use a feature that is part of a package that is not enabled, an error message is displayed.

In the following example, the `crypto map` command is called during configuration and an error message is displayed. This is because, the feature associated with `crypto map` is part of the `securityk9` package and the `securityk9` package is not enabled.

```
Router# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Router(config)# crypto map
```
Use the **show license feature** command to view the license features that are enabled. In the following example, the **securityk9** and the **uck9** packages are not enabled.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature name</th>
<th>Enforcement</th>
<th>Evaluation</th>
<th>Subscription</th>
<th>Enabled</th>
<th>RightToUse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>appxk9</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uck9</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>securityk9</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ipbasek9</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ipbasek9** is provided by default.

---

**LED Indicators**

For information on LEDs on the router, see "LED Indicators" in the "Overview" section of the **Hardware Installation Guide for the Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers**.

For information on LEDs on the SSD Carrier Card NIM, see "Overview of the SSD Carrier Card NIM (NIM-SSD)" in the "Installing and Upgrading Internal Modules and FRUs" section of the **Hardware Installation Guide for the Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers**.

---

**Related Documentation**

For further information on software licenses, see **Software Activation on Cisco Integrated Services Routers and Cisco Integrated Service Routers G2**.

For further information on obtaining and installing feature licenses, see **Configuring the Cisco IOS Software Activation Feature**.

---

**How to Install and Upgrade the Software**

To install or upgrade the software, use one of the following methods to use the software from a consolidated package or an individual package. Also see the overview section.

- Managing and Configuring a Router to Run Using a Consolidated Package, on page 104
- Managing and Configuring a Router to Run Using Individual Packages, on page 109

---

**Managing and Configuring a Router to Run Using a Consolidated Package**

Do not use these procedures if you also need to install any optional subpackages or plan to upgrade individual subpackages. See Managing and Configuring a Router to Run Using Individual Packages, on page 109.

- Managing and Configuring a Consolidated Package Using copy and boot Commands, on page 105
Managing and Configuring a Consolidated Package Using copy and boot Commands

To upgrade a consolidated package, copy the consolidated package to the `bootflash:` directory on the router using the `copy` command. After making this copy of the consolidated package, configure the router to boot using the consolidated package file.

The following example shows the consolidated package file being copied to the `bootflash:` file system via TFTP. The config register is then set to boot using `boot system` commands, and the `boot system` commands instruct the router to boot using the consolidated package stored in the `bootflash:` file system. The new configuration is then saved using the `copy running-config startup-config` command, and the system is then reloaded to complete the process.

```
Router# dir bootflash:
Directory of bootflash:/
11 drwx 16384 Dec 4 2007 04:32:46 -08:00 lost+found
86401 drwx 4096 Dec 4 2007 06:06:24 -08:00 .ssh
14401 drwx 4096 Dec 4 2007 06:06:36 -08:00 .rollback_timer
28801 drwx 4096 Mar 18 2008 17:31:17 -07:00 .prst_sync
43201 drwx 4096 Dec 4 2007 04:34:45 -08:00 .installer
928862208 bytes total (712273920 bytes free)

Router# copy tftp: bootflash:
Address or name of remote host [?] 172.17.16.81
Source filename [?] /auto/tftp-users/user/isr4400-universalk9.03.10.00.S.153-3.S-ext.SPA.bin
Destination filename [isr4400-universalk9.03.10.00.S.153-3.S-ext.SPA.bin]?
Accessing tftp://172.17.16.81/auto/tftp-users/user/isr4400-universalk9.03.10.00.S.153-3.S-ext.SPA.bin ...
Loading /auto/tftp-users/user/isr4400-universalk9.03.10.00.S.153-3.S-ext.SPA.bin from 172.17.16.81 (via GigabitEthernet0):
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!
[OK - 208904396 bytes]
208904396 bytes copied in 330.453 secs (632176 bytes/sec)

Router# dir bootflash:
Directory of bootflash:/
11 drwx 16384 Dec 4 2007 04:32:46 -08:00 lost+found
86401 drwx 4096 Dec 4 2007 06:06:24 -08:00 .ssh
14401 drwx 4096 Dec 4 2007 06:06:36 -08:00 .rollback_timer
28801 drwx 4096 Mar 18 2008 17:31:17 -07:00 .prst_sync
43201 drwx 4096 Dec 4 2007 04:34:45 -08:00 .installer
12 -rw- 208904396 May 28 2008 16:17:34 -07:00
928862208 bytes total (503156736 bytes free)

Router# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Router(config)# boot system flash bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.03.10.00.S.153-3.S-ext.SPA.bin
Router(config)# config-reg 0x2102
Router(config)# exit
Router# show run | include boot
boot-start-marker
boot system flash bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.03.10.00.S.153-3.S-ext.SPA.bin
boot-end-marker
Router# copy run start
Destination filename [startup-config]?
```
Configuring a Router to Boot the Consolidated Package via TFTP Using the boot Command: Example

Router# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.

Router(config)# boot system tftp://10.81.116.4/rtp-isr4400-54/isr4400.bin
Router(config)# config-register 0x2102
Router(config)# exit
Router# show run | include boot

boot-start-marker
boot system tftp://10.81.116.4/rtp-isr4400-54/isr4400.bin
boot-end-marker
license boot level adventerprise

Router# copy running-config startup-config
Destination filename [startup-config]?
Building configuration...
[OK]
Router# reload
Proceed with reload? [confirm]

Building configuration...
[OK]
Router# reload
Proceed with reload? [confirm]

Sep 13 17:42:54.445 R0/0: %PMAN-5-EXITACTION: Process manager is exiting: process exit with

reload chassis code

Initializing Hardware ...

System integrity status: c0000600
Failures detected:
Boot FPGA corrupt

Key Sectors:(Primary,GOOD), (Backup,GOOD), (Revocation,GOOD)
Size of Primary = 2288 Backup = 2288 Revocation = 300

ROM:RSA Self Test Passed
ROM:Sha512 Self Test Passed
Self Tests Latency: 50 msec

System Bootstrap, Version 12.2(20120618:163328) [username=ESGROM_20120618_GAMMA 101], DEVELOPMENT SOFTWARE
Copyright (c) 1994-2014 by cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Mon 05/27/2014 12:39:32.05 by username

Current image running: Boot ROM0

Last reset cause: LocalSoft

Cisco ISR 4400 platform with 4194304 Kbytes of main memory

IP_ADDRESS: 172.18.42.119
IP_SUBNET_MASK: 255.255.255.0
DEFAULT_GATEWAY: 172.18.42.1
TFTP_SERVER: 10.81.116.4
TFTP_FILE: rtp-isr4400-54/isr4400.bin
TFTP_MACADDR: 84:4c:11:9d:ad:97
TFTP_VERBOSE: Progress
TFTP_RETRY_COUNT: 18
TFTP_TIMEOUT: 7200
TFTP_CHECKSUM: Yes
ETHER_PORT: 0
ETHER_SPEED_MODE: Auto Detect
link up...
Receiving rtp-isr4400-54/isr4400.bin from 10.81.116.4
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!
File reception completed.
Boot image size = 424317088 (0x194a90a0) bytes

ROM:RSA Self Test Passed
ROM:Sha512 Self Test Passed
Self Tests Latency: 58 msec

Package header rev 1 structure detected
Calculating SHA-1 hash...done
validate_package: SHA-1 hash:
calculated 7294dffc:892a6c35:a7a133df:18c032fc:0670b303
generated 7294dffc:892a6c35:a7a133df:18c032fc:0670b303
Signed Header Version Based Image Detected

Using FLASH based Keys of type = PRIMARY KEY STORAGE
Using FLASH based Keys of type = ROLLOVER KEY STORAGE
RSA Signed DEVELOPMENT Image Signature Verification Successful.
Package Load Test Latency : 5116 msec
Image validated

%IOSXEBOOT-4-BOOT_ACTIVITY_LONG_TIME: (local/local): load_modules took: 2 seconds,
expected max time 2 seconds

Restricted Rights Legend

Use, duplication, or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c) of the Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights clause at FAR sec. 52.227-19 and subparagraph (c) (1) (ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS sec. 252.227-7013.

cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, California 95134-1706

Cisco IOS Software, ISR Software (X86_64_LINUX_IOSD-UNIVERSALK9-M), Experimental Version 15.4(20140527:095327)
[v154_3_s_xe313_throttle-BLD-BLD_V154_3_S_XE313_THROTTLE_LATEST_20140527_070027-ios 156]
Compiled Tue 27-May-14 21:28 by mcpre

Cisco IOS-XE software, Copyright (c) 2005-2014 by cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved. Certain components of Cisco IOS-XE software are licensed under the GNU General Public License ("GPL") Version 2.0. The software code licensed under GPL Version 2.0 is free software that comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY. You can redistribute and/or modify such GPL code under the terms of GPL Version 2.0. For more details, see the documentation or "License Notice" file accompanying the IOS-XE software, or the applicable URL provided on the flyer accompanying the IOS-XE software.

This product contains cryptographic features and is subject to United
States and local country laws governing import, export, transfer and use. Delivery of Cisco cryptographic products does not imply third-party authority to import, export, distribute or use encryption. Importers, exporters, distributors and users are responsible for compliance with U.S. and local country laws. By using this product you agree to comply with applicable laws and regulations. If you are unable to comply with U.S. and local laws, return this product immediately.

A summary of U.S. laws governing Cisco cryptographic products may be found at: http://www.cisco.com/wwl/export/crypto/tool/stqrgh.html

If you require further assistance please contact us by sending email to export@cisco.com.

Warning: the compile-time code checksum does not appear to be present.
cisco ISR4451/K9 (2RU) processor with 1133585K/6147K bytes of memory.
4 Gigabit Ethernet interfaces
32768K bytes of non-volatile configuration memory.
4194304K bytes of physical memory.
7393215K bytes of Compact flash at bootflash:
7816688K bytes of USB flash at usb0:

Press RETURN to get started!

Router>
Router>
Router>enable
Router# show version
Cisco IOS XE Software, Version BLD_V154_3_S_XE313_THROTTLE_LATEST_20140527_070027-ext
Cisco IOS Software, ISR Software (X86_64_LINUX_IOSD-UNIVERSALK9-M), Experimental Version
15.4(20140527:095327)
v154_3_s_xe313_throttle-BLD-BLD_V154_3_S_XE313_THROTTLE_LATEST_20140527_070027-ios 156]

IOS XE Version: BLD_V154_3_S_XE313_THROTTLE_LATEST

Cisco IOS-XE software, Copyright (c) 2005-2014 by cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved. Certain components of Cisco IOS-XE software are licensed under the GNU General Public License ("GPL") Version 2.0. The software code licensed under GPL Version 2.0 is free software that comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY. You can redistribute and/or modify such GPL code under the terms of GPL Version 2.0. For more details, see the documentation or "License Notice" file accompanying the IOS-XE software, or the applicable URL provided on the flyer accompanying the IOS-XE software.

ROM: IOS-XE ROMMON

Router uptime is 0 minutes
Uptime for this control processor is 3 minutes
System returned to ROM by reload
System image file is "tftp://10.81.116.4/rtp-isr4400-54/isr4400.bin"
Last reload reason: Reload Command

This product contains cryptographic features and is subject to United States and local country laws governing import, export, transfer and use. Delivery of Cisco cryptographic products does not imply third-party authority to import, export, distribute or use encryption.
Managing and Configuring a Router to Run Using Individual Packages

To choose between running individual packages or a consolidated package, see Installing the Software - Overview section.

The following topics are included in this section:

- Installing Subpackages from a Consolidated Package, on page 109
- Installing a Firmware Subpackage, on page 121
- Installing Subpackages from a Consolidated Package on a Flash Drive, on page 115

Installing Subpackages from a Consolidated Package

Perform the following procedure to obtain the consolidated package from a TFTP server.

Another variation of this procedure obtains the consolidated package from a USB flash drive. This is described in Installing Subpackages from a Consolidated Package on a Flash Drive.

Before you begin

Copy the consolidated package to the TFTP server.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. show version
2. dir bootflash:
3. show platform
4. mkdir bootflash: URL-to-directory-name
5. request platform software package expand file URL-to-consolidated-package to URL-to-directory-name
### Installing Subpackages from a Consolidated Package

6. **reload**
   
7. **boot** `URL-to-directory-name/packages.conf`
   
8. **show** `version` `installed`

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><strong>show</strong> <code>version</code></td>
<td>Shows the version of software running on the router. This can later be compared with the version of software to be installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Router# show version</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><strong>dir</strong> <code>bootflash:</code></td>
<td>Displays the previous version of software and that a package is present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Router# dir bootflash:</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td><strong>show</strong> <code>platform</code></td>
<td>Displays the inventory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Router# show platform</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chassis type: ISR4451/K9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td><strong>mkdir</strong> <code>bootflash:</code> <code>URL-to-directory-name</code></td>
<td>Creates a directory to save the expanded software image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Router# mkdir bootflash:mydir</code></td>
<td>You can use the same name as the image to name the directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td><strong>request</strong> <strong>platform</strong> <strong>software</strong> <strong>package expand file</strong> <code>URL-to-consolidated-package</code> <code>to</code> <code>URL-to-directory-name</code></td>
<td>Expands the software image from the TFTP server (<code>URL-to-consolidated-package</code>) into the directory used to save the image (<code>URL-to-directory-name</code>), which was created in Step 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Router# request platform software package expand file</code> <code>bootflash:isr4400-universalk9-NIM.bin</code> <code>to</code> <code>bootflash:mydir</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td><strong>reload</strong></td>
<td>Enables ROMMON mode, which allows the software in the consolidated file to be activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Router# reload</code> <code>rommon &gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td><strong>boot</strong> <code>URL-to-directory-name/packages.conf</code></td>
<td>Boots the consolidated package, by specifying the path and name of the provisioning file: packages.conf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>rommon 1 &gt; boot bootflash:mydir/packages.conf</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> show version installed</td>
<td>Displays the version of the newly installed software.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
Router# show version installed
Package: Provisioning File, version: n/a, status: active
```

**Examples**

The initial part of the example shows the consolidated package, `isr4400-universalk9.164422SSA.bin`, being copied to the TFTP server. This is a prerequisite step. The remaining part of the example shows the consolidated file, `packages.conf`, being booted.

```
Router# copy tftp:/isr4400/isr4400-universalk9.164422SSA.bin bootflash:
Address or name of remote host []? 1.1.1.1
Destination filename [isr4400-universalk9.164422SSA.bin]?
Accessing tftp://1.1.1.1/isr4400/isr4400-universalk9.164422SSA.bin...
Loading isr4400/isr4400-universalk9.164422SSA.bin from 1.1.1.1 (via GigabitEthernet0):
!!!!!!!!!
[OK - 410506248 bytes]
410506248 bytes copied in 338.556 secs (1212521 bytes/sec)
```

```
Router# show version
Cisco IOS Software, IOS-XE Software (X86_64_LINUX_IOSD-UNIVERSALK9-M), Experimental Version
15.3(20120627:221639) [build_151722 111]
Copyright (c) 1986-2012 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Thu 28-Jun-12 15:17 by mcpre
IOS XE Version: 2012-06-28_15.31_mcpre

Cisco IOS-XE software, Copyright (c) 2005-2012 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
All rights reserved. Certain components of Cisco IOS-XE software are licensed under the GNU General Public License ("GPL") Version 2.0. The software code licensed under GPL Version 2.0 is free software that comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY. You can redistribute and/or modify such GPL code under the terms of GPL Version 2.0. For more details, see the documentation or "License Notice" file accompanying the IOS-XE software, or the applicable URL provided on the flyer accompanying the IOS-XE software.

ROM: IOS-XE ROMMON

Router uptime is 0 minutes
Uptime for this control processor is 3 minutes
System returned to ROM by reload
System image file is "tftp:/isr4400/isr4400.bin"
Last reload reason: Reload Command

This product contains cryptographic features and is subject to United States and local country laws governing import, export, transfer and use. Delivery of Cisco cryptographic products does not imply third-party authority to import, export, distribute or use encryption. Importers, exporters, distributors and users are responsible for compliance with U.S. and local country laws. By using this product you agree to comply with applicable laws and regulations. If you are unable
to comply with U.S. and local laws, return this product immediately.

A summary of U.S. laws governing Cisco cryptographic products may be found at:

If you require further assistance please contact us by sending email to
export@cisco.com.

License Level: adventerprise
License Type: EvalRightToUse
Next reload license Level: adventerprise
cisco ISR4451/K9 (2RU) processor with 1136676K/6147K bytes of memory.
Processor board ID FGL161611AB
4 Gigabit Ethernet interfaces
32768K bytes of non-volatile configuration memory.
4194304K bytes of physical memory.
7393215K bytes of Compact flash at bootflash:

Configuration register is 0x8000

Router# dir bootflash:
Directory of bootflash:/
 11 drwx 16384 May 3 2012 19:58:37 +00:00 lost+found
178465 drwx 4096 Jun 6 2012 15:20:20 +00:00 core
584065 drwx 4096 Jul 13 2012 19:19:00 +00:00 .prst_sync
405601 drwx 4096 May 3 2012 19:59:30 +00:00 .rollback_timer
113569 drwx 4096 Jul 13 2012 19:19:32 +00:00 tracelogs
64897 drwx 4096 May 3 2012 19:59:42 +00:00 .installer
13 -rw- 1305 May 7 2012 17:43:42 +00:00 startup-config
14 -rw- 1305 May 7 2012 17:43:55 +00:00 running-config
15 --r-- 1541 Jun 4 2012 18:32:41 +00:00 debug.conf
16 -rw- 1252 May 22 2012 19:58:39 +00:00 running-config-20120522
519169 drwx 4096 Jun 4 2012 15:29:01 +00:00 vman_fdb

7451738112 bytes total (7067635712 bytes free)

Router# show platform
Chassis type: ISR4451/K9

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slot</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Insert time (ago)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>ISR4451/K9</td>
<td>ok</td>
<td>15:57:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>ISR4451-6X1GE</td>
<td>ok</td>
<td>15:55:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ISR4451/K9</td>
<td>ok</td>
<td>15:57:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/0</td>
<td>SM-1T3/E3</td>
<td>ok</td>
<td>15:55:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ISR4451/K9</td>
<td>ok</td>
<td>15:57:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/0</td>
<td>SM-1T3/E3</td>
<td>ok</td>
<td>15:55:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R0</td>
<td>ISR4451/K9</td>
<td>ok, active</td>
<td>15:57:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F0</td>
<td>ISR4451-FP</td>
<td>ok, active</td>
<td>15:57:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F0</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>ps, fail</td>
<td>never</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1</td>
<td>XXX-XXXX-XX</td>
<td>ok</td>
<td>15:56:58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F2</td>
<td>ACS-4450-FANASSY</td>
<td>ok</td>
<td>15:56:58</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slot</th>
<th>CPLD Version</th>
<th>Firmware Version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>12090323</td>
<td>15.3 (01r)S [ciscouser-ISRRO...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>12090323</td>
<td>15.3 (01r)S [ciscouser-ISRRO...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>12090323</td>
<td>15.3 (01r)S [ciscouser-ISRRO...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R0</td>
<td>12090323</td>
<td>15.3 (01r)S [ciscouser-ISRRO...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F0</td>
<td>12090323</td>
<td>15.3 (01r)S [ciscouser-ISRRO...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cisco 4000 Series ISRs Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.x
Router# mkdir bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1
Create directory filename [isr4400-universalk9.dir1]?
Created dir bootflash:/isr4400-universalk9.dir1
Router# request platform software package expand file bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.NIM.bin
to bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1
Verifying parameters
Validating package type
Copying package files
SUCCESS: Finished expanding all-in-one software package.

Router# reload
Proceed with reload? [confirm]

rommon 1 > boot bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/packages.conf

File size is 0x00002836
Located isr4400-universalk9.dir1/packages.conf
Image size 10294 inode num 324484, bks cnt 3 blk size 8*512
# File is comprised of 1 fragments (33%)

is_valid_sha1hash: SHA-1 hash:
calculated 62f6235a:fc98eb3a:85ce183e:834f1cb3:8a1f71d1
expected 62f6235a:fc98eb3a:85ce183e:834f1cb3:8a1f71d1
File size is 0x04b3dc00
Located isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-mono-universalk9-build_164422SSA.pkg
Image size 78896128 inode num 324491, bks cnt 19262 blk size 8*512
# File is comprised of 21 fragments (0%)

Router# show version installed
Package: Provisioning File, version: n/a, status: active
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/packages.conf, on: RP0
Built: n/a, by: n/a
File SHA1 checksum: ad09affd3f8820f4844f27ac1add502e0b8f459

Package: rpbase, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpree, status: active
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 5e95c9cb4eaf5a4a5a1ac846ee2d0f41d1a026b

Package: firmware_attributes, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpree, status: active
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-firmware_attributes_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/0
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 71614f2d9cbe7f96d3c6e99b67d514bd108c6c99

Package: firmware_dsp_sp2700, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpree, status: active
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-firmware_dsp_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/0
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 833456edf7843fe246783bd5c6ed933d96d79e

Package: firmware_fpge, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpree, status: active
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-firmware_fpge_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/0
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: eb72900ab32c1c50652888ff486cf370ac901dd7
Installing Subpackages from a Consolidated Package

Package: firmware_sm_1t3e3, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpre, status: active
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-firmware_sm_1t3e3_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/0
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 803005f15d8ea71ab088647e2766727ac2269871

Package: rpcontrol, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpre, status: active
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-monouniversalk9_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/0
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 980f5d58fe581e9346c44417b451d1c09eb640c2

Package: rpios-universalk9, version: dir1, status: active
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-monouniversalk9_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/0
Built: 2012-07-10_16.23, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 27084f7e30a1d69d45a33e05d1b00345040799fb

Package: rpaccess, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpre, status: active
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-monouniversalk9_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/0
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 0119802d62da91c38473c47a998fb3ed423448

Package: firmware_attributes, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpre, status: n/a
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-firmware_attributes_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/1
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 71614f2d9cbe7f96d3c6e99b67d514bd108c6c99

Package: firmware_fpge, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpre, status: n/a
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-firmware_fpge-BLD-BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120710_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/1
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: eb72900ab323c50652888ff486cf370ac901d7

Package: firmware_sm_1t3e3, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpre, status: n/a
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-firmware_sm_1t3e3-BLD-BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120710_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/1
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 8334565edf7843fe246783b15c6ed933d96d79e

Package: rpcontrol, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpre, status: n/a
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-rpcontrol-BLD-BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120710_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/1
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 980f5d58fe581e9346c44417b451d1c09eb640c2

Package: rpios-universalk9, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpre, status: n/a
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-rpios-universalk9-BLD-BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120710_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/1
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 0119802d62da91c38473c47a998fb3ed423448

Package: rpaccess, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpre, status: n/a
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-rpaccess-BLD-BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120710_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/1
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 0119802d62da91c38473c47a998fb3ed423448

Package: rpbase, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpre, status: n/a
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 980f5d58fe581e9346c44417b451d1c09eb6640c2
Installing Subpackages from a Consolidated Package on a Flash Drive

The steps for installing subpackages from a consolidated package on a USB flash drive are similar to those described in Installing Subpackages from a Consolidated Package section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>show version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>dir usb:/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>show platform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>mkdir bootflash:URL-to-directory-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>request platform software package expand fileusbn: package-name to URL-to-directory-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>reload</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td>boot URL-to-directory-name/packages.conf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 8</td>
<td>show version installed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How to Install and Upgrade the Software for Cisco IOS XE Denali Release 16.3

To install or upgrade the software, use one of the following methods to use the software from a consolidated package or an individual package. Also see Overview section.

- Managing and Configuring a Router to Run Using a Consolidated Package section
- Managing and Configuring a Router to Run Using Individual Packages section
- Configuring a Router to Boot the Consolidated Package via TFTP Using the boot Command: Example section
- Upgrading to Cisco IOS XE Denali Release 16.3 section

Upgrading to Cisco IOS XE Denali Release 16.3

Upgrading the device to Cisco IOS XE Denali Release 16.3 for the first time uses the same procedures as specified in the earlier section. In addition, Cisco IOS XE Denali Release 16.3 requires a minimum ROMMON version. When the device boots up with Cisco IOS XE Denali image for the first time, the device checks the installed version of the ROMMON, and upgrades if the system is running an older version. During the upgrade,
do not power cycle the device. The system automatically power cycles the device after the new ROMMON
is installed. After the installation, the system will boot up with the Cisco IOS XE image as normal.

**Note**

When the device boots up for first time and if the device requires an upgrade, the entire boot process may
take several minutes. This process will be longer than a normal boot due to the ROMMON upgrade.

The following example illustrates the boot process of a consolidated package:

```plaintext
Router# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Router(config)#boot system tftp://10.81.116.4/rtp-isr4400-54/isr4400.bin
Router(config)#config-register 0x2102
Router(config)#exit
Router# show run | include boot
boot-start-marker
boot system tftp://10.81.116.4/rtp-isr4400-54/isr4400.bin
boot-end-marker
license boot level adventerprise
Router# copy running-config startup-config
Destination filename [startup-config]? [OK]
Router# reload
Proceed with reload? [confirm]
Sep 13 17:42:54.445 R0/0: %PMAN-5-EXITACTION: Process manager is exiting: process exit with
reload chassis code

Initializing Hardware ...

System integrity status: c0000600

Key Sectors: (Primary,GOOD), (Backup,GOOD), (Revocation,GOOD)
Size of Primary = 2288 Backup = 2288 Revocation = 300

ROM:RSA Self Test Passed
ROM:Sha512 Self Test Passed
Self Tests Latency: 58 msec

System Bootstrap, Version 12.2(20120618:163328) [username-ESGROM_20120618_GAMMA 101],
DEVELOPMENT SOFTWARE
Copyright (c) 1994-2014 by cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Mon 05/27/2014 12:39:32.05 by username

Current image running: Boot ROM0

Last reset cause: LocalSoft

Cisco ISR 4400 platform with 4194304 Kbytes of main memory

IP_ADDRESS: 172.18.42.119
IP_SUBNET_MASK: 255.255.255.0
DEFAULT_GATEWAY: 172.18.42.1
TFTP_SERVER: 10.81.116.4
TFTP_FILE: rtp-isr4400-54/isr4400.bin
TFTP_MACADDR: a4:4c:11:9d:ad:97
TFTP_VERBOSE: Progress
```
Installing the Software

Upgrading to Cisco IOS XE Denali Release 16.3

TFTP_RETRY_COUNT: 18
TFTP_TIMEOUT: 7200
TFTP_CHECKSUM: Yes
ETHER_PORT: 0
ETHER_SPEED_MODE: Auto Detect

link up...
Receiving rtp-isr4400-54/isr4400.bin from 10.81.116.4
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!
File reception completed.
Boot image size = 504063931 (0x1e0b67bb) bytes

ROM:RSA Self Test Passed
ROM:Sha512 Self Test Passed
Self Tests Latency: 58 msec

Package header rev 1 structure detected
Calculating SHA-1 hash...done
validate_package: SHA-1 hash:
calculated 7294dffc:892a6c35:a7a133df:18c032fc:0670b303
expected 7294dffc:892a6c35:a7a133df:18c032fc:0670b303
Signed Header Version Based Image Detected

Using FLASH based Keys of type = PRIMARY KEY STORAGE
Using FLASH based Keys of type = ROLLOVER KEY STORAGE
RSA Signed DEVELOPMENT Image Signature Verification Successful.
Package Load Test Latency : 5116 msec
Image validated

Detected old ROMMON version 12.2(20150910:184432), upgrade required
Upgrading to newer ROMMON version required by this version of IOS-XE, do not power cycle the system. A reboot will automatically occur for the new ROMMON to take effect.
selected : 1
Booted : 1
Reset Reason: 1

Info: Upgrading entire flash from the rommon package
Switching to ROM 0
Upgrade image MD5 signature is b702a0a59a46a20a4924f9b17b8f0887
Upgrade image MD5 signature verification is b702a0a59a46a20a4924f9b17b8f0887
Switching back to ROM 1
ROMMON upgrade complete.

To make the new ROMMON permanent, you must restart the RP.
ROMMON upgrade successful. Rebooting for upgrade to take effect.

Initializing Hardware ...

System integrity status: 00300610
Key Sectors:(Primary,GOOD), (Backup,GOOD), (Revocation,GOOD)
Size of Primary = 2288 Backup = 2288 Revocation = 300

ROM:RSA Self Test Passed

Expected hash:
ddaf35a193617abacc417349ae204131
12e6fa4e89a97ea20a9eeeee64b55d39a
2192992a274fca1a36ba3c23a3f6ebbd
454d423643ce80e2a9ac94fa54ca49f

Obtained hash:
ddaf35a193617abacc417349ae204131
Sha512 Self Test Passed
Self Tests Latency: 418 msec
Rom image verified correctly

System Bootstrap, Version 12.2(20120618:163328) [username-ESGROM_20120618_GAMMA 101],
DEVELOPMENT SOFTWARE
Copyright (c) 1994-2014 by cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Mon 05/27/2014 12:39:32.05 by username

CPLD Version: 33 (MM/DD/YY): 06/23/14 Cisco ISR4351/K9 Slot:0

Current image running: Boot ROM1
Last reset cause: ResetRequest
Reading confreg 0x2102
Reading monitor variables from NVRAM
Enabling interrupts...done
Checking for PCIe device presence...done
Cisco ISR4351/K9 platform with 16777216 Kbytes of main memory
autoboot entry: NVRAM VALUES: bootconf: 0x0, autobootstate: 0
autobootcount: 0, autobootsptr: 0x0
Rommon upgrade requested
Flash upgrade reset 0 in progress
.........
Initializing Hardware ...

Checking for PCIe device presence...done
Reading confreg 2102
System integrity status: 0x300610
Key Sectors:(Primary, GOOD),(Backup,GOOD),(Revocation,GOOD)
Size of Primary = 2288 Backup = 2288 Revocation = 288
RSA Self Test Passed

Expected hash:
DDAF35A193617ABACC417349AE204131
12E6FA4E89A97EA20A9EEEEE64B55D39A
2192992A274FC1A836BA3C23A3FEEBBB
454D4423643CE80E2A9AC94FA54CA49F

Obtained hash:
DDAF35A193617ABACC417349AE204131
12E6FA4E89A97EA20A9EEEEE64B55D39A
2192992A274FC1A836BA3C23A3FEEBBB
454D4423643CE80E2A9AC94FA54CA49F
Sha512 Self Test Passed
Rom image verified correctly

System Bootstrap, Version 16.2(1r), RELEASE SOFTWARE
Copyright (c) 1994-2016 by cisco Systems, Inc.

Current image running: *Upgrade in progress* Boot ROM0
Last reset cause: BootRomUpgrade
ISR4351/K9 platform with 16777216 Kbytes of main memory
Cisco ISR 4400 platform with 4194304 Kbytes of main memory

IP_ADDRESS: 172.18.42.119
IP_SUBNET_MASK: 255.255.255.0
DEFAULT_GATEWAY: 172.18.42.1
TFTP_SERVER: 10.81.116.4
TFTP_FILE: rtp-isr4400-54/isr4400.bin
TFTP_MACADDR: a4:4c:11:9d:ad:97
TFTP_VERBOSE: Progress
TFTP_RETRY_COUNT: 18
TFTP_TIMEOUT: 7200
TFTP_CHECKSUM: Yes
ETHER_PORT: 0
ETHER_SPEED_MODE: Auto Detect

link up...
Receiving rtp-isr4400-54/isr4400.bin from 10.81.116.4
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!
File reception completed.
Boot image size = 504063931 (0x1e0b67bb) bytes
Image Base is: 0x56834018
Image Size is: 0x1E089706
Package header rev 1 structure detected
Package type:30000, flags:0x0
IsoSize = 503874534
Parsing package TLV info:
000: 000000090000000010D4B45595F544C565F - KEY_TLV_
010: 50414344147455F434F4154444942 - PACKAGE_COMPATIBILITY
020: 494C495549000000000000000000B - ILITTY
030: 4652555F5250555F545950450000000009 - FRU_RP_TYPE
040: 00000018B45595F544C565F5041434B - KEY_TLV_PACK
050: 414755F424F4515243A480000000009 - AGE_BOOTARCH
060: 0000000E415243485F693638365F5459 - ARCH_i686_TYPE
070: 504550000000000000000144B45595F - PE KEY_
080: 544C565F424F41524445F434F5041434B - TLV_BOARD_COMPAT
090: 000000090000000012424F41524445F6973 - BOARD_isr4300_TYPE
0A0: 72343330305F5459504500000000000009 - r4300_TYPE
0B0: 00000018B45595F544C565F5041434B - KEY_TLV_CRYPT
0C0: 544F4B455953545249444700000009 - TO_KEYSTRING

TLV: T=9, L=29, V=KEY_TLV_PACKAGE_COMPATIBILITY
TLV: T=9, L=11, V=FRU_RP_TYPE
TLV: T=9, L=24, V=KEY_TLV_PACKAGE_BOOTARCH
TLV: T=9, L=14, V=ARCH_i686_TYPE
TLV: T=9, L=20, V=KEY_TLV_BOARD_COMPAT
TLV: T=9, L=18, V=BOARD_isr4300_TYPE
TLV: T=9, L=24, V=KEY_TLV_CRYPTO_KEYSTRING
TLV: T=9, L=10, V=EnCrypt1On
TLV: T=9, L=11, V=CW-BEGIN=##
TLV: T=9, L=19, V=CW_FAMILY=6isr4300$-
TLV: T=9, L=53, V=CW_IMAGE=6isr4300-universalk9.2016-06-29_23.31_paj.SSA.bin
TLV: T=9, L=19, V=CW_VERSION=16.3.1$-
TLV: T=9, L=52, V=CW_DESCRIPTION=6Cisco IOS Software, IOS-XE Software$-
TLV: T=9, L=9, V=CW-END=##
Found DIGISIGN TLV type 12 length = 392
RSA Self Test Passed

Expected hash:
DDAF35A193617ABACC417349AE204131
12E6FA4E89A97EA209EEE6E6B55D19A
2192992A74F1A836BA3C23A3FEEBBD
 Obtained hash: 
 DDAF35A193617ABACC417349AE204131 
 12E6FA4E89A97EA20A9EEEE64B55D39A 
 2192992A274FC1A836BA3C23A3FEEBBB 
 454D4423643CE80E2A9AC94FA54CA49F 
 Sha512 Self Test Passed 
 Found package arch type ARCH_i686_TYPE 
 Found package FRU type FRU_RP_TYPE 
 Calculating SHA-1 hash...Validate package: SHA-1 hash: 
 calculated 8B082C48:35C23C9E:8A091441:D6FACEE6:B5111533 
 expected 8B082C48:35C23C9E:8A091441:D6FACEE6:B5111533 
 Image validated 

Restricted Rights Legend

Use, duplication, or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c) of the Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights clause at FAR sec. 52.227-19 and subparagraph (c) (1) (ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS sec. 252.227-7013.

cisco Systems, Inc. 
170 West Tasman Drive 
San Jose, California 95134-1706

Cisco IOS Software, ISR Software (X86_64_LINUX_IOSD-UNIVERSALK9-M), Experimental Version 16.3 (20160527:095327) 
[v163_throttle] 
Copyright (c) 1986-2016 by Cisco Systems, Inc. 
Compiled Tue 27-May-16 21:128 by mcppre

Cisco IOS-XE software, Copyright (c) 2005-2016 by cisco Systems, Inc. 
All rights reserved. Certain components of Cisco IOS-XE software are licensed under the GNU General Public License ("GPL") Version 2.0. The software code licensed under GPL Version 2.0 is free software that comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY. You can redistribute and/or modify such GPL code under the terms of GPL Version 2.0. For more details, see the documentation or "License Notice" file accompanying the IOS-XE software, or the applicable URL provided on the flyer accompanying the IOS-XE software.

This product contains cryptographic features and is subject to United States and local country laws governing import, export, transfer and use. Delivery of Cisco cryptographic products does not imply third-party authority to import, export, distribute or use encryption. Importers, exporters, distributors and users are responsible for compliance with U.S. and local country laws. By using this product you agree to comply with applicable laws and regulations. If you are unable to comply with U.S. and local laws, return this product immediately.

A summary of U.S. laws governing Cisco cryptographic products may be found at: http://www.cisco.com/wwl/export/crypto/tool/stqrq.html

If you require further assistance please contact us by sending email to export@cisco.com.
Warning: the compile-time code checksum does not appear to be present.
cisco ISR4451/K9 (2RU) processor with 1133585K/6147K bytes of memory.
Processor board ID FGL1619100P
4 Gigabit Ethernet interfaces
32768K bytes of non-volatile configuration memory.
4194304K bytes of physical memory.
7393215K bytes of Compact flash at bootflash:.
7816888K bytes of USB flash at usb0:.

Press RETURN to get started!

### Installing a Firmware Subpackage

#### Before you begin

Obtain a consolidated package that contains your required firmware package and expand the package. (See Managing and Configuring a Router to Run Using Individual Packages, on page 109.) Make a note of the location and name of the firmware package and use this information in the steps below for `URL-to-package-name`.

You can install a firmware subpackage if the router has been configured using, for example, Managing and Configuring a Router to Run Using Individual Packages, on page 109.

Firmware subpackages are not released individually. You can select a firmware package from within a consolidated package after expanding the consolidated package. The firmware package can then be installed as shown in the procedure below.

#### Note

Read the Release Notes document pertaining to the consolidated package to verify that the firmware within the consolidated package is compatible with the version of Cisco IOS XE software that is currently installed on a router.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `show version`
2. `dir bootflash:`
3. `show platform`
4. `mkdir bootflash: URL-to-directory-name`
5. `request platform software package expand file URL-to-consolidated-package to URL-to-directory-name`
6. `reload`
7. `boot URL-to-directory-name /packages.conf`
8. `show version installed`
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><strong>show version</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Router# show version Cisco IOS Software, IOS-XE Software (X86_64_LINUX_IOSD-UNIVERSALK9-M), Experimental Version 15.3(20120627:221639) [build_151722 111] Copyright (c) 1986-2012 by Cisco Systems, Inc. Compiled Thu 28-Jun-12 15:17 by mcpre. . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><strong>dir bootflash:</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Router# dir bootflash:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><strong>show platform</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Router# show platform Chassis type: ISR4451/K9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><strong>mkdir bootflash:</strong> <em>URL-to-directory-name</em>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Router# mkdir bootflash:mydir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td><strong>request platform software package expand file</strong> <em>URL-to-consolidated-package to URL-to-directory-name</em>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Router# request platform software package expand file bootflash:isr4400-universalk9-NIM.bin to bootflash:mydir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td><strong>reload</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Router# reload rommon &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td><strong>boot</strong> <em>URL-to-directory-name</em> /packages.conf&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;rommon 1 &gt; boot bootflash:mydir/packages.conf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong></td>
<td><strong>show version installed</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Router# show version installed Package: Provisioning File, version: n/a, status: active</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples

The initial part of the following example shows the consolidated package, `isr4400-universalk9.164422SSA.bin`, being copied to the TFTP server. This is a prerequisite step. The remaining part of the example shows the consolidated file, `packages.conf`, being booted.

```plaintext
Router# tftp:isr4400/isr4400-universalk9.164422SSA.bin bootflash:
Address or name of remote host []? 1.1.1.1
Destination filename [isr4400-universalk9.164422SSA.bin]? 
Accessing tftp://1.1.1.1/isr4400/isr4400-universalk9.164422SSA.bin...
Loading isr4400/isr4400-universalk9.164422SSA.bin from 1.1.1.1 (via GigabitEthernet0):
[OK - 410506248 bytes]
410506248 bytes copied in 338.556 secs (1212521 bytes/sec)

Router# show version
Cisco IOS Software, IOS-XE Software (X86_64_LINUX_IOSD-UNIVERSALK9-M), Experimental Version
15.3(20120627:221639) [build_151722 111]
Copyright (c) 1986-2012 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Thu 28-Jun-12 15:17 by mcpre
IOS XE Version: 2012-06-28_15.31_mcpre
Cisco IOS-XE software, Copyright (c) 2005-2012 by cisco Systems, Inc.
All rights reserved. Certain components of Cisco IOS-XE software are licensed under the GNU General Public License ("GPL") Version 2.0. The software code licensed under GPL Version 2.0 is free software that comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY. You can redistribute and/or modify such GPL code under the terms of GPL Version 2.0. For more details, see the documentation or "License Notice" file accompanying the IOS-XE software, or the applicable URL provided on the flyer accompanying the IOS-XE software.

ROM: IOS-XE ROMMON

Router uptime is 0 minutes
Uptime for this control processor is 3 minutes
System returned to ROM by reload
System image file is "tftp:isr4400/isr4400.bin"
Last reload reason: Reload Command

This product contains cryptographic features and is subject to United States and local country laws governing import, export, transfer and use. Delivery of Cisco cryptographic products does not imply third-party authority to import, export, distribute or use encryption. Importers, exporters, distributors and users are responsible for compliance with U.S. and local country laws. By using this product you agree to comply with applicable laws and regulations. If you are unable to comply with U.S. and local laws, return this product immediately.

A summary of U.S. laws governing Cisco cryptographic products may be found at: http://www.cisco.com/wwl/export/crypto/tool/stqrg.html

If you require further assistance please contact us by sending email to export@cisco.com.

License Level: adenterprise
License Type: EvalRightToUse
Next reload license Level: adventerprise
cisco ISR4451/K9 (2RU) processor with 1136676K/6147K bytes of memory.
Processor board ID FGL161611AB
4 Gigabit Ethernet interfaces
32768K bytes of non-volatile configuration memory.
4194304K bytes of physical memory.
7393215K bytes of Compact flash at bootflash:

Configuration register is 0x8000

Router# dir bootflash:
Directory of bootflash:/
11 drwx 16384 May 3 2012 19:58:37 +00:00 lost+found
178465 drwx 4096 Jun 6 2012 15:20:20 +00:00 core
584065 drwx 4096 Jul 13 2012 19:19:00 +00:00 .prst_sync
405601 drwx 4096 May 3 2012 19:59:30 +00:00 .rollback_timer
113569 drwx 4096 Jul 13 2012 19:19:32 +00:00 tracelogs
64897 drwx 4096 May 3 2012 19:59:42 +00:00 .installer
13 -rw- 1305 May 7 2012 17:43:42 +00:00 startup-config
14 -rw- 1305 May 7 2012 17:43:55 +00:00 running-config
15 -r-- 1541 Jun 4 2012 18:32:41 +00:00 debug.conf
16 -rw- 1252 May 22 2012 19:58:39 +00:00 running-config-20120522
519169 drwx 4096 Jun 4 2012 15:29:01 +00:00 vman_fdb

745173812 bytes total (7067635712 bytes free)

Router# show platform
Chassis type: ISR4451/K9

Slot Type State Insert time (ago)
--------- ------------------- --------------------- ------------------
0 ISR4451/K9 ok 15:57:33
0/0 ISR4451-6X1GE ok 15:55:24
1 ISR4451/K9 ok 15:57:33
1/0 SM-1T3/E3 ok 15:55:24
2 ISR4451/K9 ok 15:57:33
2/0 SM-1T3/E3 ok 15:55:24
R0 ISR4451/K9 ok, active 15:57:33
F0 ISR4451-FF ok, active 15:57:33
F0 Unknown ps, fail never
P1 XXX-XXXX-XX ok 15:56:58
P2 ACS-4450-FANASSY ok 15:56:58

Slot CPLD Version Firmware Version
--------- ------------------- ---------------------------------------
0 12090323 15.3(01r)S [ciscouser-ISRRO...
1 12090323 15.3(01r)S [ciscouser-ISRRO...
2 12090323 15.3(01r)S [ciscouser-ISRRO...
R0 12090323 15.3(01r)S [ciscouser-ISRRO...
F0 12090323 15.3(01r)S [ciscouser-ISRRO...

Router# mkdir bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1
Create directory filename [isr4400-universalk9.dir1]?
Created dir bootflash:/isr4400-universalk9.dir1
Router# request platform software package expand file bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.NIM.bin
to
bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1
Verifying parameters
Validating package type
Copying package files
SUCCESS: Finished expanding all-in-one software package.
Router# **reload**
Proceed with reload? [confirm]


```
rommon 1 > boot bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/packages.conf
```

File size is 0x00002836
Located isr4400-universalk9.dir1/packages.conf
Image size 10294 inode num 324484, bks cnt 3 blk size 8*512
#
File is comprised of 1 fragments (33%)

is_valid_sha1hash: SHA-1 hash:
calculated 62f6235afcf9eb3a85ce183e834f1cb38af71d1
epected 62f6235afcf9eb3a85ce183e834f1cb38af71d1
File size is 0x04b3dc00
Located isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-mono-universalk9-build_164422SSA.pkg
Image size 78896128 inode num 324491, bks cnt 19262 blk size 8*512

File is comprised of 21 fragments (0%)

Router# **show version installed**
Package: Provisioning File, version: n/a, status: active
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/packages.conf, on: RP0
Built: n/a, by: n/a
File SHA1 checksum: ad09affd3f8820f4844f27ac1add502e0b8f459

Package: rpbase, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpre, status: active
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 5e95c9cb821ec4e5a4a57ac84632d0f41d1a0b2

Package: firmware_attributes, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpre, status: active
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-firmware_attributes_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/0
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 71614f2d9cbe7f96d3c6e99b7d514bd1086c99

Package: firmware_dsp_sp2700, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpre, status: active
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-firmware_dsp_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/0
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 8334565edf7843fe246783b1d5c6ed933d96d79e

Package: firmware_fpge, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpre, status: active
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-firmware_fpge_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/0
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: eb72900ab32c1050652888ff486cf370acc901dd7

Package: firmware_sm_1t3e3, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpre, status: active
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-firmware_sm_1t3e3_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/0
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 803005f15d8ee71ab088647e2766727ac2269871

Package: rpcontrol, version: 2012-07-10_16.22_mcpre, status: active
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-mono-universalk9_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/0
Built: 2012-07-10_16.22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 980fd58fe581e9346c44417b451d1c09ebb640c2
Installing the Software

Installing a Firmware Subpackage

Package: rpios-universalk9, version: dir1, status: active
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-mono-universalk9_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/0
Built: 2012-07-10 16:23, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 27084f7e30a1d69d45a33e05d1b00345040799fb

Package: rpaccess, version: 2012-07-10 16:22, status: active
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-mono-universalk9_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/0
Built: 2012-07-10 16:22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 0119802deda2da91c38473c47a998fb3ed423448

Package: firmware_attributes, version: 2012-07-10 16:22, status: n/a
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-firmware_attributes_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/1
Built: 2012-07-10 16:22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 71614f2d9cbe7f96d3c6e99b67d514bd108c6c99

Package: firmware_dsp_sp2700, version: 2012-07-10 16:22, status: n/a
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-firmware_dsp_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/1
Built: 2012-07-10 16:22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 8334565edf7843fe246783b1d56ed933901d79e

Package: firmware_fpge, version: 2012-07-10 16:22, status: n/a
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-firmware_fnge-BLD-BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120710_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/1
Built: 2012-07-10 16:22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: eb72900ab32c15062880f486cf370ac901d77

Package: firmware_sm_1t3e3, version: 2012-07-10 16:22, status: n/a
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-firmware_sm_1t3e3-BLD-BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120710_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/1
Built: 2012-07-10 16:22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 803005f15d88e74644b451b451d1c9ebbb640c2

Package: rpcontrol, version: 2012-07-10 16:22, status: n/a
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-rpcontrol-BLD-BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120710_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/1
Built: 2012-07-10 16:22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 980f58fe58e3946c44417b451d1c9ebbb640c2

Package: rpios-universalk9, version: 2012-07-10 16:23, status: n/a
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-rpios-universalk9-BLD-BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120710_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/1
Built: 2012-07-10 16:23, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 27084f7e30a1d69d45a33e05d1b00345040799fb

Package: rpaccess, version: 2012-07-10 16:22, status: n/a
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-rpaccess-BLD-BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120710_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/1
Built: 2012-07-10 16:22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 0119802deda2da91c38473c47a998fb3ed423448

Package: rpbase, version: 2012-07-10 16:22, status: n/a
Built: 2012-07-10 16:22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 5e95c9bc4eaf5a4a51ac846ee20f45f1a026b

Package: firmware_attributes, version: 2012-07-10 16:22, status: n/a
Built: 2012-07-10 16:22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 71614f2d9cbe7f96d3c6e99b67d514bd108c6c99

Package: firmware_dsp_sp2700, version: 2012-07-10 16:22, status: n/a
File: bootflash:isr4400-universalk9.dir1/isr4400-firmware_dsp_sp2700-BLD-BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120710_164422SSA.pkg, on: RP0/0
Built: 2012-07-10 16:22, by: mcpre
File SHA1 checksum: 27084f7e30a1d69d45a33e05d1b00345040799fb
Upgrading the Firmware on xDSL NIMs

To upgrade the firmware on a xDSL Network Interface Module (NIM), perform these steps:

**Before you begin**

When you boot the router in packages.conf mode with the Cisco IOS XE image (super package) during the installation period, you can upgrade or downgrade the firmware without reloading the router. You need to follow the steps described in Installing a Firmware Subpackage section before proceeding with the firmware upgrade.

If you do not boot the router in packages.conf mode with the Cisco IOS XE image, you need to follow the below prerequisites before proceeding with the firmware upgrade:

- Copy the firmware subpackage (NIM firmware) into bootflash:/mydir.
- Send a request to the platform software package expand file `boot flash:/mydir/<IOS-XE image>` to expand the super package.
- Reload the hardware module subslot to boot the module with the new firmware.
- Verify that the module is booted up with the new firmware using the `show platform software subslot x/y module firmware` command.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. copy Cisco IOS XE image into bootflash: `mydir`.
2. request platform software package expand file `bootflash:/mydir/<IOS-XE image>` to expand super package.
3. reload.
4. boot `bootflash:/mydir/` packages.conf.
5. copy NIM firmware subpackage to the folder `bootflash:/mydir`.
6. request platform software package install `rp 0 file bootflash:/mydir/<firmware subpackage>`.
7. hw-module subslot x/y reload to boot the module with the new firmware.
8. show platform software subslot 0/2 module firmware to verify that the module is booted up with the new firmware.

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>copy Cisco IOS XE image into bootflash:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>mydir</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# <code>mkdir bootflash:mydir</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 2** | **request platform software package expand file bootflash:/mydir/<IOS-XE image to expand super package.**  
**Example:**  
| **Step 3** | **reload.**  
**Example:**  
Router# reload rommon > | Enables ROMMON mode, which allows the software in the super package file to be activated. |
| **Step 4** | **boot bootflash:/mydir/packages.conf.**  
**Example:**  
rommon 1 > boot bootflash:/mydir/packages.conf | Boots the super package by specifying the path and name of the provisioning file: packages.conf. |
| **Step 5** | **copy NIM firmware subpackage to the folder bootflash:/mydir/.**  
**Example:**  
Router# copy bootflash:/mydir/isr4400-firmware_nim_xdsl_2014-11-17_11.05_39n.SSA.pkg bootflash:/mydir/ | Copies the NIM firmware subpackage into bootflash:/mydir. |
| **Step 6** | **request platform software package install rp 0 file bootflash:/mydir/<firmware subpackage>.**  
**Example:**  
Router# request platform software package install rp 0 file bootflash:/mydir/isr4400-firmware_nim_xdsl_2014-11-17_11.05_39n.SSA.pkg | Installs the software package. |
| **Step 7** | **hw-module subslot x/y reload** to boot the module with the new firmware.  
**Example:**  
Router# hw-module subslot 0/2 reload | Reloads the hardware module subslot and boots the module with the new firmware. |
| **Step 8** | **show platform software subslot 0/2 module firmware** to verify that the module is booted up with the new firmware.  
**Example:**  
Router# show platform software subslot 0/2 module firmware Pe | Displays the version of the newly installed firmware. |
Examples

The following example shows how to perform firmware upgrade in a router module:

Router# mkdir bootflash:mydir
Create directory filename [mydir]?
Created dir bootflash:/mydir

Copy in progress...CCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCC
Installing the Software

Upgrading the Firmware on xDSL NIMs

File size is 0x150ae3cc
Image size 353035212 inode num 356929, bks cnt 86191 blk size 8*512
###################################################################
###################################################################
Boot image size = 353035212 (0x150ae3cc) bytes

Package header rev 1 structure detected
Calculating SHA-1 hash...done
validate_package: SHA-1 hash:
    calculated 8e966678:8afb08f4:8a88bb8f:fe591121:8bddd4b3
    expected 8e966678:8afb08f4:8a88bb8f:fe591121:8bddd4b3

RSA Signed RELEASE Image Signature Verification Successful.
Package Load Test Latency : 3799 msec
Image validated
Dec 12 09:28:50.338 R0/0: %FLASH_CHECK-3-DISK_QUOTA: Flash disk quota exceeded
[free space is 61864 kB] - Please clean up files on bootflash.

Restricted Rights Legend
Use, duplication, or disclosure by the Government is
subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph
(c) of the Commercial Computer Software - Restricted
Rights clause at FAR sec. 52.227-19 and subparagraph
(c) (1) (ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer
Software clause at DFARS sec. 252.227-7013.

cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, California 95134-1706

Cisco IOS Software, ISR Software (X86_64_LINUX_IOSD-UNIVERSALK9-M), Version 15.5(1)S,
RELEASE SOFTWARE (fc5)
Technical Support: http://www.cisco.com/techsupport
Copyright (c) 1986-2014 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Thu 20-Nov-14 18:28 by mcpre

Cisco IOS-XE software, Copyright (c) 2005-2014 by cisco Systems, Inc.
All rights reserved. Certain components of Cisco IOS-XE software are
licensed under the GNU General Public License ("GPL") Version 2.0. The
software code licensed under GPL Version 2.0 is free software that comes
with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY. You can redistribute and/or modify such
GPL code under the terms of GPL Version 2.0. For more details, see the
documentation or "License Notice" file accompanying the IOS-XE software,
or the applicable URL provided on the flyer accompanying the IOS-XE
software.

This product contains cryptographic features and is subject to United
States and local country laws governing import, export, transfer and
use. Delivery of Cisco cryptographic products does not imply
third-party authority to import, export, distribute or use encryption.
Importers, exporters, distributors and users are responsible for
compliance with U.S. and local country laws. By using this product you
agree to comply with applicable laws and regulations. If you are unable
to comply with U.S. and local laws, return this product immediately.

A summary of U.S. laws governing Cisco cryptographic products may be found at:

If you require further assistance please contact us by sending email to export@cisco.com.

cisco ISR4451-X/K9 (2RU) processor with 1681388K/6147K bytes of memory.
Processor board ID FTX1736AJUT
2 Ethernet interfaces
4 Gigabit Ethernet interfaces
2 ATM interfaces
32768K bytes of non-volatile configuration memory.
4194304K bytes of physical memory.
7393215K bytes of flash memory at bootflash:

Press RETURN to get started!

*Dec 12 09:28:58.922: %IOS_LICENSE_IMAGE_APPLICATION-6-LICENSE_LEVEL:
Module name = esg Next reboot level = appxk9 and License = appxk9
*Dec 12 09:28:58.943: %IOS_LICENSE_IMAGE_APPLICATION-6-LICENSE_LEVEL:
Module name = esg Next reboot level = ipbasek9 and License = ipbasek9
*Dec 12 09:28:58.981: %ISR_THROUGHPUT-6-LEVEL: Throughput level has been set to 1000000 kbps
*Dec 12 09:29:13.302: %SPANTREE-5-EXTENDED_SYSID: Extended SysId enabled for type vlan
*Dec 12 09:29:14.142: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface Lsmpi0, changed state to up
*Dec 12 09:29:14.142: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface EOBC0, changed state to up
*Dec 12 09:29:14.142: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface GigabitEthernet0, changed state to down
*Dec 12 09:29:14.142: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface LIIN0, changed state to up
*Dec 12 09:28:51.438: %CMRP-3-PFU_MISSING:cmmd: The platform does not detect a power
supply in slot 1
*Dec 12 09:29:01.256: %CMLIB-6-THROUGHPUT_VALUE:cmmd: Throughput license found, throughput
set to 1000000 kbps
*Dec 12 09:29:03.228: %CPPHA-7-START:cpp_ha: CPP 0 preparing ucode
*Dec 12 09:29:03.238: %CPPHA-7-START:cpp_ha: CPP 0 startup init
*Dec 12 09:29:11.335: %CPPHA-7-START:cpp_ha: CPP 0 running init
*Dec 12 09:29:11.645: %CPPHA-7-README:cpp_ha: CPP 0 loading and initialization complete
*Dec 12 09:29:11.711: %IOSXE-6-PLATFORM:cpp_cp:
Process CPP_FILTER_EA_EVENT_API_CALL_REGISTER
*Dec 12 09:29:16.280: %IOSXE_MGMTVRF-6-CREATE_SUCCESS_INFO:
Management vrf Mgmt-intf created with ID 1, ipv4 table-id 0x1, ipv6 table-id 0x1E000001
*Dec 12 09:29:16.330: %LINEPROTO-5-UPDOWN: Line protocol on Interface Lsmpi0, changed state to up
*Dec 12 09:29:16.330: %LINEPROTO-5-UPDOWN: Line protocol on Interface EOBC0, changed state to up
*Dec 12 09:29:16.330: %LINEPROTO-5-UPDOWN: Line protocol on Interface GigabitEthernet0, changed state to down
*Dec 12 09:29:16.330: %LINEPROTO-5-UPDOWN: Line protocol on Interface LIIN0, changed state to up
*Dec 12 09:29:11.711: %IOSXE_OIR-6-OFFLINECARD: SPA (ISR4451-X-4x1GE) offline in subslot 0/0, interfaces disabled
*Dec 12 09:29:18.870: %IOSXE_OIR-6-REMSPA: SPA removed from subslot 0/0, interfaces disabled
*Dec 12 09:29:18.870: %IOSXE_OIR-6-REMSPA: SPA removed from subslot 0/1, interfaces disabled
*Dec 12 09:29:18.870: %IOSXE_OIR-6-REMSPA: SPA removed from subslot 0/2, interfaces disabled
*Dec 12 09:29:18.870: %SPA_OIR-6-OFFLINECARD: SPA (ISR4451-X-4x1GE) offline in subslot 0/0
*Dec 12 09:29:18.874: %SPA_OIR-6-OFFLINECARD: SPA (NIM-VA-B) offline in subslot 0/1
*Dec 12 09:29:18.874: %SPA_OIR-6-OFFLINECARD: SPA (NIM-VA-B) offline in subslot 0/2
*Dec 12 09:29:18.876: %IOSXE_OIR-6-INSNCARD: Card (fp) inserted in slot F0
*Dec 12 09:29:18.876: %IOSXE_OIR-6-ONLINECARD: Card (fp) online in slot F0
Dec 12 09:29:18.882: %IOSXE_OIR-6-INSSPA: SPA inserted in subslot 0/0
Dec 12 09:29:18.884: %IOSXE_OIR-6-INSSPA: SPA inserted in subslot 0/1
Dec 12 09:29:18.884: %IOSXE_OIR-6-INSSPA: SPA inserted in subslot 0/2
Dec 12 09:29:18.935: %SYS-5-RESTART: System restarted --
Cisco IOS Software, ISR Software (X86_64_LINUX_IOSD-UNIVERSALK9-M), Version 15.5(1)S,
RELEASE SOFTWARE (fc5)
Technical Support: http://www.cisco.com/techsupport
Copyright (c) 1986-2014 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Thu 20-Nov-14 18:28 by mcpre
Dec 12 09:29:19.895: %SPA-3-ENVMON_NOT_MONITORED:iomd: Environmental monitoring
is not enabled for ISR4451-X-4x1GE[0/0]
Dec 12 09:29:19.878: %LINK-5-CHANGED: Interface GigabitEthernet0,
changed state to administratively down
Dec 12 09:29:22.419: %SPA_OIR-6-ONLINECARD: SPA (ISR4451-X-4x1GE) online in subslot 0/0,
changed state to down
Dec 12 09:29:24.354: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0,
changed state to up
Dec 12 09:29:24.415: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface GigabitEthernet0/0/2,
changed state to up
Dec 12 09:29:24.417: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface GigabitEthernet0/0/3,
changed state to up
Dec 12 09:30:31.152: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface GigabitEthernet0/2/0,
changed state to up
Dec 12 09:30:31.152: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface ATM0/1/0,
changed state to up
Dec 12 09:30:31.470: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface ATM0/2/0,
changed state to up
Dec 12 09:31:06.076: %LINEPROTO-5-UPDOWN: Line protocol on Interface Ethernet0/2/0,
changed state to up
Dec 12 09:31:20.188: %LINEPROTO-5-UPDOWN: Line protocol on Interface ATM0/1/0,
changed state to up

Router> en
Password:
Router# show controller vdsl 0/2/0
Controller VDSL 0/2/0 is UP
Daemon Status: UP
XTU-R (DS) XTU-C (US)
Chip Vendor ID: 'BDCM' 'BDCM'
Chip Vendor Specific: 0x0000 0xA41B
Chip Vendor Country: 0xB500 0xB500
Modem Vendor ID: 'CSCO' '
Modem Vendor Specific: 0x4602 0x0000
Modem Vendor Country: 0xB500 0x0000
Serial Number Near: FOC18426Q8 4451-X/K15.5(1)S
Serial Number Far:
Modem Version Near: 15.5(1)S
Modem Version Far: 0xa41b

Modem Status(L1): TC Sync (Showtime!)
DSL Config Mode: VDSL2
Trained Mode(L1): G.993.2 (VDSL2) Profile 30a

TC Mode: PTM
Selftest Result: 0x00
DELT configuration: disabled
DELT state: not running

Failed full inits: 0
Short inits: 0
Failed short inits: 0

Modem FW Version: 4.14L.04
Modem PHY Version: A2pv6F039h.d24o_rc1

Line 1:

XTU-R (DS) XTU-C (US)
Trellis: ON ON
SRA: disabled disabled
SRA count: 0 0
Bit swap: enabled enabled
Bit swap count: 9 0
Profile 30a: enabled
Line Attenuation: 3.5 dB 0.0 dB
Signal Attenuation: 0.0 dB 0.0 dB
Noise Margin: 30.9 dB 12.4 dB
Attainable Rate: 200000 kbits/s 121186 kbits/s
Actual Power: 13.3 dBm 7.2 dBm
Per Band Status: D1 D2 D3 U0 U1 U2 U3
Line Attenuation(db): 0.9 1.5 5.5 N/A 0.1 0.9 3.8
Signal Attenuation(db): 0.8 1.5 5.5 N/A 0.0 0.2 3.2
Noise Margin(db): 31.1 31.0 30.9 N/A 12.3 12.4 12.5
Total FECC: 0 0
Total ES: 0 0
Total SES: 0 0
Total LOSS: 0 0
Total UAS: 51 51
Total LPRS: 0 0
Total LOFS: 0 0
Total LOLS: 0 0

DS Channel1 DS Channel0 US Channel1 US Channel0
Speed (kbps): NA 100014 NA 100014
SRA Previous Speed: NA 0 NA 0
Previous Speed: NA 0 NA 0
Reed-Solomon EC: NA 0 NA 0
CRC Errors: NA 0 NA 0
Header Errors: NA 0 NA 0
Interleave (ms): NA 9.00 NA 0.00
Actual INP: NA 4.00 NA 0.00

Training Log : Stopped
Training Log Filename : flash:vdsllog.bin

Router#
Router#
copy bootflash:isr4400-firmware_nim_xdsl.2014-11-17_11.05_39n.SSA.pkg
bootflash:mydir/
Destination filename [mydir/isr4400-firmware_nim_xdsl.2014-11-17_11.05_39n.SSA.pkg]? 
Copy in progress...CCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCC
Finished analysis of software changes

--- Starting update running software ---
Blocking peer synchronization of operating information
Creating the command set placeholder directory
Finding latest command set
Finding latest command shortlist lookup file
Finding latest command shortlist file
Assembling CLI output libraries
Assembling CLI input libraries
Skipping soft links for firmware upgrade
Skipping soft links for firmware upgrade
Assembling Dynamic configuration files
Applying interim IPC and database definitions
rsync: getaddrinfo: cc2-0 873: Name or service not known rsys error:
error in socket IO (code 10) at /auto/mcpbuilds19/release/03.14.00.S/BLD-V03_14_00_S_FC5/contrib/rsync/clientserver.c(104) [sender=2.6.9]
rsync: getaddrinfo: cc2-0 873: Name or service not known rsys error:
error in socket IO (code 10) at /auto/mcpbuilds19/release/03.14.00.S/BLD-V03_14_00_S_FC5/contrib/rsync/clientserver.c(104) [sender=2.6.9]
rsync: getaddrinfo: cc2-0 873: Name or service not known rsys error:
error in socket IO (code 10) at /auto/mcpbuilds19/release/03.14.00.S/BLD-V03_14_00_S_FC5/contrib/rsync/clientserver.c(104) [sender=2.6.9]
Replacing running software
Replacing CLI software
Restarting software
Applying final IPC and database definitions
rsync: getaddrinfo: cc2-0 873: Name or service not known rsys error:
error in socket IO (code 10) at /auto/mcpbuilds19/release/03.14.00.S/BLD-V03_14_00_S_FC5/contrib/rsync/clientserver.c(104) [sender=2.6.9]
Generating software version information
Notifying running software of updates
Unblocking peer synchronization of operating information
Unmounting old packages
Cleaning temporary installation files
Finished update running software

SUCCESS: Finished installing software.
Router#
Router#show platform software subslot 0/2 module firmware
Avg Load info
-------------------------------------------
1.83 1.78 1.44 3/45 607
Kernel distribution info
-------------------------------------------
Linux version 3.4.11-rt19 (sapanwar@blr-atg-001) (gcc version 4.6.2 (Buildroot 2011.11) ) #3 SMP PREEMPT Fri Nov 7 09:26:19 IST 2014
Module firmware versions
-------------------------------------------
Modem Fw Version: 4.14L.04
Modem Phy Version: A2pv6P039h.d24o_rc1
Boot Loader: Secondry
-------------------------------------------
Version: 1.1
Modem Up time
-------------------------------------------
0D 0H 25M 38S
Router#
Router# hw-module subslot 0/2 reload
Proceed with reload of module? [confirm]

*Dec 12 09:55:59.645: %IOSXE_OIR-6-SOFT_RELOADSPA: SPA(NIM-VAB-A) reloaded on subslot 0/2
*Dec 12 09:55:59.646: %SPA_OIR-6-OFFLINECARD: SPA (NIM-VAB-A) offline in subslot 0/2
*Dec 12 09:57:22.514: %IOSXE_OIR-6-SOFT_RELOADSPA: SPA(NIM-VAB-A) reloaded on subslot 0/2
*Dec 12 09:57:22.515: %SPA_OIR-6-OFFLINECARD: SPA (NIM-VAB-A) offline in subslot 0/2

Router#

*Dec 12 09:58:35.471: %SPA_OIR-6-ONLINECARD: SPA (NIM-VAB-A) online in subslot 0/2
*Dec 12 09:58:37.470: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface Ethernet0/2/0, changed state to down
*Dec 12 09:58:37.470: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface ATM0/2/0, changed state to down

Router#

Router#

Router#

Router# show platform software subslot 0/2 module firmware
Avg Load info
-------------------------------------------
0.84 0.23 0.08 1/45 598

Kernel distribution info
-------------------------------------------
Linux version 3.4.11-rt19 (sapanwar@blr-atg-001) (gcc version 4.6.2 (Buildroot 2011.11) )
#6 SMP PREEMPT Mon Nov 17 10:51:41 IST 2014

Module firmware versions
-------------------------------------------
Modem Fw Version: 4.14L.04
Modem Phy Version: A2pv6F039n.d24o_rc1

Boot Loader: Secondry
-------------------------------------------
Version: 1.1

Modem Up time
-------------------------------------------
0D 0H 0M 42S

Router#
CHAPTER 10

Slot and Subslot Configuration

This chapter contains information on slots and subslots. Slots specify the chassis slot number in your router and subslots specify the slot where the service modules are installed.

For further information on the slots and subslots, see the “About Slots and Interfaces” section in the Hardware Installation Guide for the Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers.

The following section is included in this chapter:

• Configuring the Interfaces, on page 137

Configuring the Interfaces

The following sections describe how to configure Gigabit interfaces and also provide examples of configuring the router interfaces:

• Configuring Gigabit Ethernet Interfaces, on page 137
• Configuring the Interfaces: Example, on page 139
• Viewing a List of All Interfaces: Example, on page 139
• Viewing Information About an Interface: Example, on page 139

Configuring Gigabit Ethernet Interfaces

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. interface GigabitEthernet slot/subslot/port
4. ip address ip-address mask [secondary] dhcp pool
5. negotiation auto
6. end
# DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Router&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>interface GigabitEthernet slot/subslot/port</td>
<td>Configures a GigabitEthernet interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Router(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• GigabitEthernet—Type of interface.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• slot—Chassis slot number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• /subslot—Secondary slot number. The slash (/) is required.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• /port—Port or interface number. The slash (/) is required.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>ip address ip-address mask [secondary] dhcp pool</td>
<td>Assigns an IP address to the GigabitEthernet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Router(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.1 255.255.255.0 dhcp pool</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ip address—IP address for the interface.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• mask—Mask for the associated IP subnet.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• secondary (optional)— Specifies that the configured address is a secondary IP address. If this keyword is omitted, the configured address is the primary IP address.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• dhcp—IP address negotiated via DHCP.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• pool—IP address autoconfigured from a local DHCP pool.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>negotiation auto</td>
<td>Selects the negotiation mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Router(config-if)# negotiation auto</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• auto—Performs link autonegotiation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Ends the current configuration session and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Router(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring the Interfaces: Example

The following example shows the `interface gigabitEthernet` command being used to add the interface and set the IP address. 0/0/0 is the slot/subslot/port. The ports are numbered 0 to 3.

```plaintext
Router# show running-config interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0
Building configuration...
Current configuration : 71 bytes
!
interface gigabitEthernet0/0/0
no ip address
negotiation auto
end

Router# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Router(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0
```

Viewing a List of All Interfaces: Example

In this example, the `show platform software interface summary` and `show interfaces summary` commands are used to display all the interfaces:

```plaintext
Router# show platform software interface summary
Interface IHQ IQD OHQ OQD RXBS RXPS TXBS TXPS TRTL
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
* GigabitEthernet0/0/0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
* GigabitEthernet0/0/1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
* GigabitEthernet0/0/2 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
* GigabitEthernet0/0/3 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
* GigabitEthernet 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
```

```plaintext
Router# show interfaces summary
*: interface is up
IHQ: pkts in input hold queue   IQD: pkts dropped from input queue
OHQ: pkts in output hold queue  OQD: pkts dropped from output queue
RXBS: rx rate (bits/sec)       RXPS: rx rate (pkts/sec)
TXBS: tx rate (bits/sec)       TXPS: tx rate (pkts/sec)
TRTL: throttle count

Interface IHQ IQD OHQ OQD RXBS RXPS TXBS TXPS TRTL
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
* GigabitEthernet0/0/0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
* GigabitEthernet0/0/1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
* GigabitEthernet0/0/2 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
* GigabitEthernet0/0/3 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
* GigabitEthernet 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
```

Viewing Information About an Interface: Example

The following example shows how to display a brief summary of an interface's IP information and status, including the virtual interface bundle information, by using the `show ip interface brief` command:

```plaintext
Router# show ip interface brief
Interface       IP-Address     OK? Method Status       Protocol
GigabitEthernet0/0/0 10.0.0.1   YES manual down          down
GigabitEthernet0/0/1 unassigned YES NVRAM administratively down down
```
### Viewing Information About an Interface: Example

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>IP Address</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Speed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/2</td>
<td>10.10.10.1</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/3</td>
<td>8.8.8.1</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0</td>
<td>172.18.42.33</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 11

Process Health Monitoring

This chapter describes how to manage and monitor the health of various components of your router. It contains the following sections:

- Monitoring Control Plane Resources, on page 141
- Monitoring Hardware Using Alarms, on page 144

Monitoring Control Plane Resources

The following sections explain the memory and CPU monitoring from the perspective of the Cisco IOS process and the overall control plane:

- Avoiding Problems Through Regular Monitoring, on page 141
- Cisco IOS Process Resources, on page 142
- Overall Control Plane Resources, on page 142

Avoiding Problems Through Regular Monitoring

Processes should provide monitoring and notification of their status/health to ensure correct operation. When a process fails, a syslog error message is displayed and either the process is restarted or the router is rebooted. A syslog error message is displayed when a monitor detects that a process is stuck or has crashed. If the process can be restarted, it is restarted; else, the router is restarted.

Monitoring system resources enables you to detect potential problems before they occur, thus avoiding outages. The following are the advantages of regular monitoring:

- Lack of memory on line cards that are in operation for a few years can lead to major outages. Monitoring memory usage helps to identify memory issues in the line cards and enables you to prevent an outage.

- Regular monitoring establishes a baseline for a normal system load. You can use this information as a basis for comparison when you upgrade hardware or software—to see if the upgrade has affected resource usage.
Cisco IOS Process Resources

You can view CPU utilization statistics on active processes and see the amount of memory being used in these processes using the `show memory` command and the `show process cpu` command. These commands provide a representation of memory and CPU utilization from the perspective of only the Cisco IOS process; they do not include information for resources on the entire platform. For example, when the `show memory` command is used in a system with 8 GB RAM running a single Cisco IOS process, the following memory usage is displayed:

```
Router# show memory
Head Total(b) Used(b) Free(b) Lowest(b) Largest(b)
Processor 2ABEA4316010 4489061884 314474916 4174586968 3580216380 3512323496
lsmpi_io 2ABFAFF471A8 6295128 6294212 916 916 916
Critical 2ABEB7C72EB0 1024004 92 1023912 1023912 1023912
```

The `show process cpu` command displays Cisco IOS CPU utilization average:

```
Router# show process cpu
CPU utilization for five seconds: 0%/0%; one minute: 0%; five minutes: 0%

   PID Runtime(ms) Invoked uSecs  5Sec 1Min 5Min TTY Process
   1     583      48054 12 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0 Chunk Manager
   2     991      176805 5 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0 Load Meter
   3       0        2   0 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0 IFCOM Msg Hdr
   4       0       11   0 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0 Retransmission o
   5       0        3   0 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0 IPC ISSU Dispatc
   6     230385   119697 1924 0.00% 0.01% 0.00% 0 Check heaps
   7      49        28 1750 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0 Pool Manager
   8       0        2   0 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0 Timers
   9     17268     644656 26 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0 ARP Input
  10      197     922201 0 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0 ARP Background
  11       0        2   0 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0 ATM Idle Timer
  12       0        1   0 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0 ATM ASYNC PROC
  13       0        1   0 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0 AAA_SERVER_DEADT
  14       0        1   0 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0 Policy Manager
  15       0        2   0 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0 DDR Timers
  16       1        15   66 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0 Entity MIB API
  17      13      1195  10 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0 EEM ED Syslog
  18      93        46 2021 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0 PrstVbl
  19       0        1   0 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0 RO Notify Timers
```

Overall Control Plane Resources

Control plane memory and CPU utilization on each control processor allows you to keep a tab on the overall control plane resources. You can use the `show platform software status control-processor brief` command (summary view) or the `show platform software status control-processor` command (detailed view) to view control plane memory and CPU utilization information.

All control processors should show status, Healthy. Other possible status values are Warning and Critical. Warning indicates that the router is operational, but that the operating level should be reviewed. Critical implies that the router is nearing failure.

If you see a Warning or Critical status, take the following actions:

- Reduce the static and dynamic loads on the system by reducing the number of elements in the configuration or by limiting the capacity for dynamic services.
- Reduce the number of routes and adjacencies, limit the number of ACLs and other rules, reduce the number of VLANs, and so on.
The following sections describe the fields in the show platform software status control-processor command output.

**Load Average**

Load average represents the process queue or process contention for CPU resources. For example, on a single-core processor, an instantaneous load of 7 would mean that seven processes are ready to run, one of which is currently running. On a dual-core processor, a load of 7 would mean that seven processes are ready to run, two of which are currently running.

**Memory Utilization**

Memory utilization is represented by the following fields:
- Total—Total line card memory
- Used—Consumed memory
- Free—Available memory
- Committed—Virtual memory committed to processes

**CPU Utilization**

CPU utilization is an indication of the percentage of time the CPU is busy, and is represented by the following fields:
- CPU—Allocated processor
- User—Non-Linux kernel processes
- System—Linux kernel process
- Nice—Low-priority processes
- Idle—Percentage of time the CPU was inactive
- IRQ—Interrupts
- SIRQ—System Interrupts
- IOwait—Percentage of time CPU was waiting for I/O

**Example: show platform software status control-processor Command**

The following are some examples of using the show platform software status control-processor command:

```
Router# show platform software status control-processor
RP0: online, statistics updated 5 seconds ago
Load Average: healthy
  1-Min: 0.07, status: healthy, under 5.00
  5-Min: 0.11, status: healthy, under 5.00
  15-Min: 0.09, status: healthy, under 5.00
Memory (kb): healthy
  Total: 3971216
  Used: 3415976 (86%)
  Free: 555240 (14%)
```
Committed: 2594412 (65%), status: healthy, under 90%

Per-core Statistics

CPU0: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 1.40, System: 1.20, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 97.39
IRQ: 0.00, SIRQ: 0.00, IOWait: 0.00

CPU1: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 0.89, System: 0.79, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 98.30
IRQ: 0.00, SIRQ: 0.00, IOWait: 0.00

CPU2: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 0.80, System: 2.50, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 96.70
IRQ: 0.00, SIRQ: 0.00, IOWait: 0.00

CPU3: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 3.09, System: 6.19, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 90.60
IRQ: 0.00, SIRQ: 0.09, IOWait: 0.00

CPU4: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 0.10, System: 0.30, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 99.60
IRQ: 0.00, SIRQ: 0.00, IOWait: 0.00

CPU5: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 0.89, System: 1.59, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 97.50
IRQ: 0.00, SIRQ: 0.00, IOWait: 0.00

CPU6: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 0.80, System: 1.10, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 98.10
IRQ: 0.00, SIRQ: 0.00, IOWait: 0.00

CPU7: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 0.20, System: 3.40, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 96.40
IRQ: 0.00, SIRQ: 0.00, IOWait: 0.00

Router# show platform software status control-processor brief
Load Average
Slot Status 1-Min 5-Min 15-Min
RP0 Healthy 0.09 0.10 0.09

Memory (kB)
Slot Status Total Used (Pct) Free (Pct) Committed (Pct)
RP0 Healthy 3971216 3426452 (86%) 544764 (14%) 2595212 (65%)

CPU Utilization
Slot CPU User System Nice Idle IRQ SIRQ IOWait
RP0 0 1.60 0.90 0.00 97.30 0.10 0.10 0.00
1 0.09 1.29 0.00 98.60 0.00 0.00 0.00
2 0.10 0.10 0.00 99.79 0.00 0.00 0.00
3 0.00 0.00 0.00 100.00 0.00 0.00 0.00
4 0.60 4.90 0.00 94.50 0.00 0.00 0.00
5 0.70 1.30 0.00 98.00 0.00 0.00 0.00
6 0.10 0.00 0.00 99.90 0.00 0.00 0.00
7 1.39 0.49 0.00 98.10 0.00 0.00 0.00

Monitoring Hardware Using Alarms

- Router Design and Monitoring Hardware, on page 145
- BootFlash Disk Monitoring, on page 145
- Approaches for Monitoring Hardware Alarms, on page 145
Router Design and Monitoring Hardware

The router sends alarm notifications when problems are detected, allowing you to monitor the network remotely. You do not need to use `show` commands to poll devices on a routine basis; however, you can perform onsite monitoring if you choose.

BootFlash Disk Monitoring

The bootflash disk must have enough free space to store two core dumps. This condition is monitored, and if the bootflash disk is too small to store two core dumps, a syslog alarm is generated, as shown in the following example:

Aug 22 13:40:41.038 R0/0: %FLASH_CHECK-3-DISK_QUOTA: Flash disk quota exceeded [free space is 7084440 kB] - Please clean up files on bootflash.

The size of the bootflash disk must be at least of the same size as that of the physical memory installed on the router. If this condition is not met, a syslog alarm is generated as shown in the following example:

%IOSXEBOOT-2-FLASH_SIZE_CHECK: (rp/0): Flash capacity (8 GB) is insufficient for fault analysis based on installed memory of RP (16 GB)
%IOSXEBOOT-2-FLASH_SIZE_CHECK: (rp/0): Please increase the size of installed flash to at least 16 GB (same as physical memory size)

Approaches for Monitoring Hardware Alarms

- Onsite Network Administrator Responds to Audible or Visual Alarms, on page 145
- Viewing the Console or Syslog for Alarm Messages, on page 146
- Network Management System Alerts a Network Administrator when an Alarm is Reported Through SNMP, on page 148

Onsite Network Administrator Responds to Audible or Visual Alarms

- About Audible and Visual Alarms, on page 145
- Clearing an Audible Alarm, on page 145
- Clearing a Visual Alarm, on page 146

About Audible and Visual Alarms

An external element can be connected to a power supply using the DB-25 alarm connector on the power supply. The external element is a DC light bulb for a visual alarm and a bell for an audible alarm.

If an alarm illuminates the CRIT, MIN, or MAJ LED on the faceplate of the router, and a visual or audible alarm is wired, the alarm also activates an alarm relay in the power supply DB-25 connector, and either the bell rings or the light bulb flashes.

Clearing an Audible Alarm

To clear an audible alarm, perform one of the following tasks:
Clearing a Visual Alarm

To clear a visual alarm, you must resolve the alarm condition. The clear facility-alarm command does not clear an alarm LED on the faceplate or turn off the DC light bulb. For example, if a critical alarm LED is illuminated because an active module was removed without a graceful deactivation, the only way to resolve that alarm is to replace the module.

Viewing the Console or Syslog for Alarm Messages

The network administrator can monitor alarm messages by reviewing alarm messages sent to the system console or to a system message log (syslog).

- Enabling the logging alarm Command, on page 146
- Examples of Alarm Messages, on page 146
- Reviewing and Analyzing Alarm Messages, on page 148

Enabling the logging alarm Command

The logging alarm command must be enabled for the system to send alarm messages to a logging device, such as the console or a syslog. This command is not enabled by default.

You can specify the severity level of the alarms to be logged. All the alarms at and above the specified threshold generate alarm messages. For example, the following command sends only critical alarm messages to logging devices:

```
Router(config)# logging alarm critical
```

If alarm severity is not specified, alarm messages for all severity levels are sent to logging devices.

Examples of Alarm Messages

The following are examples of alarm messages that are sent to the console when a module is removed before performing a graceful deactivation. The alarm is cleared when the module is reinserted.

Module Removed

*Aug 22 13:27:33.774: %ISR4451-X_OIR-6-REMSPA: Module removed from subslot 1/1, interfaces disabled
*Aug 22 13:27:33.775: %SPA_OIR-6-OFFLINECARD: Module (SPA-4XT-SERIAL) offline in subslot 1/1

Module Reinserted

*Aug 22 13:32:29.447: %ISR4451-X_OIR-6-INSSPA: Module inserted in subslot 1/1
*Aug 22 13:32:34.916: %SPA_OIR-6-ONLINECARD: Module (SPA-4XT-SERIAL) online in subslot 1/1
*Aug 22 13:32:35.523: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: SIP1/1: Interface EOBC1/1, changed state to up

Alarms

To view alarms, use the show facility-alarm status command. The following example shows a critical alarm for the power supply:
Router# `show facility-alarm status`

System Totals Critical: 5 Major: 0 Minor: 0

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Severity</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>[Index]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Power Supply Bay 0</td>
<td>CRITICAL</td>
<td>Power Supply/FAN Module Missing</td>
<td>[0]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/0</td>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>Physical Port Link Down</td>
<td>[1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/1</td>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>Physical Port Link Down</td>
<td>[1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/2</td>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>Physical Port Link Down</td>
<td>[1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/3</td>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>Physical Port Link Down</td>
<td>[1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xcvr container 0/0/0</td>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>Transceiver Missing</td>
<td>[0]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xcvr container 0/0/1</td>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>Transceiver Missing</td>
<td>[0]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xcvr container 0/0/2</td>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>Transceiver Missing</td>
<td>[0]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xcvr container 0/0/3</td>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>Transceiver Missing</td>
<td>[0]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To view critical alarms, use the `show facility-alarm status critical` command, as shown in the following example:

Router# `show facility-alarm status critical`

System Totals Critical: 5 Major: 0 Minor: 0

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Severity</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>[Index]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Power Supply Bay 0</td>
<td>CRITICAL</td>
<td>Power Supply/FAN Module Missing</td>
<td>[0]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/0</td>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>Physical Port Link Down</td>
<td>[1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/1</td>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>Physical Port Link Down</td>
<td>[1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/2</td>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>Physical Port Link Down</td>
<td>[1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/3</td>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>Physical Port Link Down</td>
<td>[1]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To view the operational state of the major hardware components on the router, use the `show platform diag` command. This example shows that power supply P0 has failed:

Router# `show platform diag`

Chassis type: ISR4451/K9

```
Slot: 0, ISR4451-NGSM
  Running state : ok
  Internal state : online
  Internal operational state : ok
  Physical insert detect time : 00:01:09 (1w0d ago)
  Software declared up time : 00:01:44 (1w0d ago)
  CPLD version : 12061320
  Firmware version : 12.2(20120618:163328)[ciscouser-ESGROM_20120618_GAMMA 101]

Sub-slot: 0/0, ISR4451-4X1GE
  Operational status : ok
  Internal state : inserted
  Physical insert detect time : 00:02:48 (1w0d ago)
  Logical insert detect time : 00:02:48 (1w0d ago)
```

```
Slot: 1, ISR4451-NGSM
  Running state : ok
  Internal state : online
  Internal operational state : ok
  Physical insert detect time : 00:01:09 (1w0d ago)
  Software declared up time : 00:01:43 (1w0d ago)
  CPLD version : 12061320
  Firmware version : 12.2(20120618:163328)[ciscouser-ESGROM_20120618_GAMMA 101]
```

```
Slot: 2, ISR4451-NGSM
  Running state : ok
  Internal state : online
  Internal operational state : ok
```
Reviewing and Analyzing Alarm Messages

To facilitate the review of alarm messages, you can write scripts to analyze alarm messages sent to the console or syslog. Scripts can provide reports on events such as alarms, security alerts, and interface status.

Syslog messages can also be accessed through Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) using the history table defined in the CISCO-SYSLOG-MIB.

Network Management System Alerts a Network Administrator when an Alarm is Reported Through SNMP

The SNMP is an application-layer protocol that provides a standardized framework and a common language used for monitoring and managing devices in a network. Of all the approaches to monitor alarms, SNMP is the best approach to monitor more than one router in an enterprise and service provider setup.

SNMP provides notification of faults, alarms, and conditions that might affect services. It allows a network administrator to access router information through a network management system (NMS) instead of reviewing logs, polling devices, or reviewing log reports.

To use SNMP to get alarm notification, use the following MIBs:

- ENTITY-MIB, RFC 4133 (required for the CISCO-ENTITY-ALARM-MIB and CISCO-ENTITY-SENSOR-MIB to work)
- CISCO-ENTITY-ALARM-MIB
- CISCO-ENTITY-SENSOR-MIB (for transceiver environmental alarm information, which is not provided through the CISCO-ENTITY-ALARM-MIB)
Process Health Monitoring

Network Management System Alerts a Network Administrator when an Alarm is Reported Through SNMP
System Messages

System messages are saved in a log file or directed to other devices from the software running on a router. These messages are also known as syslog messages. System messages provide you with logging information for monitoring and troubleshooting purposes.

The following sections are included in this chapter:

- Information About Process Management, on page 151
- How to Find Error Message Details, on page 151

Information About Process Management

You can access system messages by logging in to the console through Telnet protocol and monitoring your system components remotely from any workstation that supports the Telnet protocol.

Starting and monitoring software is referred to as process management. The process management infrastructure for a router is platform independent, and error messages are consistent across platforms running on Cisco IOS XE. You do not have to be directly involved in process management, but we recommend that you read the system messages that refer to process failures and other issues.

How to Find Error Message Details

To show further details about a process management or a syslog error message, enter the error message into the Error Message Decoder tool at: https://www.cisco.com/cgi-bin/Support/Errordecoder/index.cgi.

For example, enter the message %PMAN-0-PROCESS_NOTIFICATION into the tool to view an explanation of the error message and the recommended action to be taken.

The following are examples of the description and the recommended action displayed by the Error Message Decoder tool for some of the error messages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Recommended Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%PMAN-0-PROCESS_NOTIFICATION : The process lifecycle notification component failed because [chars]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Recommended Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
The process lifecycle notification component failed, preventing proper detection of a process start and stop. This problem is likely the result of a software defect in the software subpackage.

**Error Message:** `%PMAN-0-PROCFAILCRIT` A critical process [chars] has failed (rc [dec])

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Recommended Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A process important to the functioning of the router has failed.</td>
<td>Note the time of the message and investigate the kernel error message logs to learn more about the problem and see if it is correctable. If the problem cannot be corrected or the logs are not helpful, copy the error message exactly as it appears on the console along with the output of the <code>show tech-support</code> command and provide the gathered information to a Cisco technical support representative.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A process important to the functioning of the router has failed.

**Error Message:** `%PMAN-3-PROCFAILOPT` An optional process [chars] has failed (rc [dec])

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Recommended Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>An optional process has failed.</td>
<td>Note the time of the message and investigate the error message logs to learn more about the problem. If the problem persists, copy the message exactly as it appears on the console or in the system log. Research and attempt to resolve the issue using the tools and utilities provided at: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/tac">http://www.cisco.com/tac</a>. With some messages, these tools and utilities will supply clarifying information. Search for resolved software issues using the Bug Search Tool at: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/psn/bssprt/bss">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/psn/bssprt/bss</a>. If you still require assistance, open a case with the Technical Assistance Center at: <a href="http://tools.cisco.com/ServiceRequestTool/create/">http://tools.cisco.com/ServiceRequestTool/create/</a>, or contact your Cisco technical support representative and provide the representative with the information you have gathered. Attach the following information to your case in nonzipped, plain-text (.txt) format: the output of the <code>show logging</code> and <code>show tech-support</code> commands and your pertinent troubleshooting logs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A process that does not affect the forwarding of traffic has failed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Recommended Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%PMAN-3-PROCFAIL The process [chars] has failed (rc [dec])</td>
<td>The process has failed as the result of an error.</td>
<td>This message will appear with other messages related to the process. Check the other messages to determine the reason for the failures and see if corrective action can be taken. If the problem persists, copy the message exactly as it appears on the console or in the system log. Research and attempt to resolve the issue using the tools and utilities provided at: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/tac">http://www.cisco.com/tac</a>. With some messages, these tools and utilities will supply clarifying information. Search for resolved software issues using the Bug Search Tool at: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/psn/bssprt/bss">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/psn/bssprt/bss</a>. If you still require assistance, open a case with the Technical Assistance Center at: <a href="http://tools.cisco.com/ServiceRequestTool/create/">http://tools.cisco.com/ServiceRequestTool/create/</a>, or contact your Cisco technical support representative and provide the representative with the information you have gathered. Attach the following information to your case in nonzipped, plain-text (.txt) format: the output of the show logging and show tech-support commands and your pertinent troubleshooting logs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Error Message: %PMAN-3-PROCFAIL_IGNORE [chars] process exits and failures are being ignored due to debug settings. Normal router functionality will be affected. Critical router functions like RP switchover, router reload, FRU resets, etc. may not function properly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Recommended Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A process failure is being ignored due to the user-configured debug settings.</td>
<td>If this behavior is desired and the debug settings are set according to a user's preference, no action is needed. If the appearance of this message is viewed as a problem, change the debug settings. The router is not expected to behave normally with this debug setting. Functionalities such as SSO switchover, router reloads, FRU resets, and so on will be affected. This setting should only be used in a debug scenario. It is not normal to run the router with this setting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Error Message: %PMAN-3-PROCHOLDDOWN The process [chars] has been held down (rc [dec])

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Recommended Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The process was restarted too many times with repeated failures and has been placed in the hold-down state.</td>
<td>This message will appear with other messages related to the process. Check the other messages to determine the reason for the failures and see if corrective action can be taken. If the problem persists, copy the message exactly as it appears on the console or in the system log. Research and attempt to resolve the issue using the tools and utilities provided at: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/tac">http://www.cisco.com/tac</a>. With some messages, these tools and utilities will supply clarifying information. Search for resolved software issues using the Bug Search Tool at: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/psn/bssprrt/bss">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/psn/bssprrt/bss</a>. If you still require assistance, open a case with the Technical Assistance Center at: <a href="http://tools.cisco.com/ServiceRequestTool/create/">http://tools.cisco.com/ServiceRequestTool/create/</a>, or contact your Cisco technical support representative and provide the representative with the information you have gathered. Attach the following information to your case in nonzipped, plain-text (.txt) format: the output of the show logging and show tech-support commands and your pertinent troubleshooting logs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Error Message: %PMAN-3-RELOAD_RP_SB_NOT_READY : Reloading: [chars]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Recommended Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The route processor is being reloaded because there is no ready standby instance.</td>
<td>Ensure that the reload is not due to an error condition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Error Message: %PMAN-3-RELOAD_RP : Reloading: [chars]
The RP is being reloaded.

**Error Message**: `%PMAN-3-RELOAD_SYSTEM : Reloading: [chars]`

**Explanation**: The system is being reloaded.

**Recommended Action**: Ensure that the reload is not due to an error condition. If it is due to an error condition, collect information requested by the other log messages.

---

**Error Message**: `%PMAN-3-PROC_BAD_EXECUTABLE : Bad executable or permission problem with process [chars]`

**Explanation**: The executable file used for the process is bad or has permission problem.

**Recommended Action**: Ensure that the named executable is replaced with the correct executable.

---

**Error Message**: `%PMAN-3-PROC_BAD_COMMAND:Non-existent executable or bad library used for process <process name>`

**Explanation**: The executable file used for the process is missing, or a dependent library is bad.

**Recommended Action**: Ensure that the named executable is present and the dependent libraries are good.

---

**Error Message**: `%PMAN-3-PROC_EMPTY_EXEC_FILE : Empty executable used for process [chars]`

**Explanation**: The executable file used for the process is empty.

**Recommended Action**: Ensure that the named executable is non-zero in size.

---

**Error Message**: `%PMAN-5-EXITACTION : Process manager is exiting: [chars]`

**Explanation**: The process manager is exiting.

**Recommended Action**: Ensure that the process manager is not exiting due to an error condition. If it is due to an error condition, collect information requested by the other log messages.

---

**Error Message**: `%PMAN-6-PROCSHUT : The process [chars] has shutdown`

**Explanation**: The process has gracefully shut down.

**Recommended Action**: No user action is necessary. This message is provided for informational purposes only.

---

**Error Message**: `%PMAN-6-PROCSTART : The process [chars] has started`
The process has launched and is operating properly.

Error Message: `%PMAN-6-PROCSTATELESS` : The process [chars] is restarting stateless

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Recommended Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The process has requested a stateless restart.</td>
<td>No user action is necessary. This message is provided for informational purposes only.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Trace Management

The following sections are included in this chapter:

- Tracing Overview, on page 157
- How Tracing Works, on page 157
- Tracing Levels, on page 158
- Viewing a Tracing Level, on page 159
- Setting a Tracing Level, on page 161
- Viewing the Content of the Trace Buffer, on page 161

Tracing Overview

Tracing is a function that logs internal events. Trace files containing trace messages are automatically created and saved to the tracelogs directory on the hard disk: file system on the router, which stores tracing files in bootflash.

The contents of trace files are useful for the following purposes:

- Troubleshooting—Helps to locate and solve an issue with a router. The trace files can be accessed in diagnostic mode even if other system issues are occurring simultaneously.
- Debugging—Helps to obtain a detailed view of system actions and operations.

How Tracing Works

Tracing logs the contents of internal events on a router. Trace files containing all the trace output pertaining to a module are periodically created and updated and stored in the tracelog directory. Trace files can be erased from this directory to recover space on the file system without impacting system performance. The files can be copied to other destinations using file transfer functions (such as FTP and TFTP) and opened using a plain text editor.

Note

Tracing cannot be disabled on a router.

Use the following commands to view trace information and set tracing levels:
• **show platform software trace message**—Shows the most recent trace information for a specific module. This command can be used in privileged EXEC and diagnostic modes. When used in diagnostic mode, this command can gather trace log information during a Cisco IOS XE failure.

• **set platform software trace**—Sets a tracing level that determines the types of messages that are stored in the output. For more information on tracing levels, see Tracing Levels, on page 158.

## Tracing Levels

Tracing levels determine how much information should be stored about a module in the trace buffer or file. The following table shows all the tracing levels that are available and provides descriptions of what types of messages are displayed with each tracing level.

### Table 10: Tracing Levels and Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tracing Level</th>
<th>Level Number</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Emergency</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>The message is regarding an issue that makes the system unusable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alert</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>The message is regarding an action that must be taken immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>The message is regarding a critical condition. This is the default setting for every module on the router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>The message is regarding a system error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>The message is regarding a system warning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>The message is regarding a significant issue, but the router is still working normally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Informational</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>The message is useful for informational purposes only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debug</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>The message provides debug-level output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbose</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>All possible tracing messages are sent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tracing Level</td>
<td>Level Number</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>All possible trace messages pertaining to a module are logged. The noise level is always equal to the highest possible tracing level. Even if a future enhancement to tracing introduces a higher tracing level than verbose level, the noise level will become equal to the level of the newly introduced tracing level.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If a tracing level is set, messages are collected from both lower tracing levels and from its own level.

For example, setting the tracing level to 3 (error) means that the trace file will contain output messages for levels: 0 (emergencies), 1 (alerts), 2 (critical), and 3 (error).

If you set the trace level to 4 (warning), it results in output messages for levels: 0 (emergencies), 1 (alerts), 2 (critical), 3 (error), and 4 (warning).

The default tracing level for every module on the router is 5 (notice).

A tracing level is not set in a configuration mode, which results in tracing-level settings being returned to default values after the router reloads.

⚠️ **Caution**

Setting the tracing level of a module to debug level or higher can have a negative impact on the performance.

⚠️ **Caution**

Setting high tracing levels on a large number of modules can severely degrade performance. If a high tracing level is required in a specific context, it is almost always preferable to set the tracing level of a single module to a higher level rather than setting multiple modules to high levels.

---

## Viewing a Tracing Level

By default, all the modules on a router are set to 5 (notice). This setting is maintained unless changed by a user.

To see the tracing level for a module on a router, enter the `show platform software trace level` command in privileged EXEC mode or diagnostic mode.

The following example shows how the `show platform software trace level` command is used to view the tracing levels of the forwarding manager processes on an active RP:

```
Router# show platform software trace level forwarding-manager rp active
Module Name       Trace Level
-------------------------------------
acl               Notice
binos             Notice
binos/brand       Notice
bipc              Notice
```
Viewing a Tracing Level

This section explains how to:

- View a tracing level
- View the level of detail and the number of messages generated by the different modules of the Cisco 4000 Series ISRs Software Configuration Guide.
Setting a Tracing Level

To set a tracing level for a module on a router, or for all the modules within a process on a router, enter the `set platform software trace` command in the privileged EXEC mode or diagnostic mode.

The following example shows the tracing level for the ACL module in the Forwarding Manager of the ESP processor in slot 0 set to `info`:

```
set platform software trace forwarding-manager F0 acl info
```

Viewing the Content of the Trace Buffer

To view the trace messages in the trace buffer or file, enter the `show platform software trace message` command in privileged EXEC or diagnostic mode. In the following example, the trace messages for the Host Manager process in Route Processor slot 0 are viewed using the `show platform software trace message` command:

```
Router# show platform software trace message host-manager R0
08/23 12:09:14.408 [uipeer]: (info): Looking for a ui_req msg
08/23 12:09:14.408 [uipeer]: (info): Start of request handling for con 0x100a61c8
08/23 12:09:14.399 [uipeer]: (info): Accepted connection for 14 as 0x100a61c8
08/23 12:09:14.399 [uipeer]: (info): Received new connection 0x100a61c8 on descriptor 14
08/23 12:09:14.398 [uipeer]: (info): Accepting command connection on listen fd 7
08/23 11:53:57.440 [uipeer]: (info): Going to send a status update to the shell manager in slot 0
08/23 11:53:57.417 [uipeer]: (info): Going to send a status update to the shell manager in slot 0
```
CHAPTER 14

Environmental Monitoring and PoE Management

The Cisco 4000 series Integrated Services routers have hardware and software features that periodically monitor the router's environment. For more information, see the Hardware Installation Guide for the Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers.

This chapter provides information on the environmental monitoring features on your router that allow you to monitor critical events and generate statistical reports on the status of various router components and, includes the following sections:

• Environmental Monitoring, on page 163
• Environmental Monitoring and Reporting Functions, on page 164
• Configuring Power Supply Mode, on page 178
• Managing PoE, on page 183
• Additional References, on page 188

Environmental Monitoring

The router provides a robust environment-monitoring system with several sensors that monitor the system temperatures. Microprocessors generate interrupts to the HOST CPU for critical events and generate a periodic status and statistics report. The following are some of the key functions of the environmental monitoring system:

• Monitoring temperature of CPUs, motherboard, and midplane
• Monitoring fan speed
• Recording abnormal events and generating notifications
• Monitoring Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) traps
• Generating and collecting Onboard Failure Logging (OBFL) data
• Sending call home event notifications
• Logging system error messages
• Displaying present settings and status
Environmental Monitoring and Reporting Functions

Monitoring and reporting functions allow you to maintain normal system operation by identifying and resolving adverse conditions prior to loss of operation.

- Environmental Monitoring Functions, on page 164
- Environmental Reporting Functions, on page 166

Environmental Monitoring Functions

Environmental monitoring functions use sensors to monitor the temperature of the cooling air as it moves through the chassis.

The local power supplies provide the ability to monitor:

- Input and output current
- Output voltage
- Input and output power
- Temperature
- Fan speed

The router is expected to meet the following environmental operating conditions:

- Operating Temperature Nominal—32°F to 104°F (0°C to 40°C)
- Operating Humidity Nominal—10% to 85% RH noncondensing
- Operating Humidity Short Term—10% to 85% RH noncondensing
- Operating Altitude—Sea level 0 ft to 10,000 ft (0 to 3000 m)
- AC Input Range—85 to 264 VAC

In addition, each power supply monitors its internal temperature and voltage. A power supply is either within tolerance (normal) or out of tolerance (critical). If an internal power supply's temperature or voltage reaches a critical level, the power supply shuts down without any interaction with the system processor.

The following table displays the levels of status conditions used by the environmental monitoring system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status Level</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>All monitored parameters are within normal tolerance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>The system has exceeded a specified threshold. The system continues to operate, but operator action is recommended to bring the system back to a normal state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status Level</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical</td>
<td>An out-of-tolerance temperature or voltage condition exists. Although the system continues to operate, it is approaching shutdown. Immediate operator action is required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The environmental monitoring system sends system messages to the console, for example, when the conditions described here are met:

**Fan Failure**

When the system power is on, all the fans should be operational. Although the system continues to operate if a fan fails, the system displays the following message:

%IOSXE_PEM-3-FANFAIL: The fan in slot 2/0 is encountering a failure condition

**Sensors Out of Range**

When sensors are out of range, the system displays the following message:

%ENVIRONMENTAL-1-ALERT: V: 1.0v PCH, Location: R0, State: Warning, Reading: 1102 mV
%ENVIRONMENTAL-1-ALERT: V: PEM Out, Location: P1, State: Warning, Reading: 0 mV
%ENVIRONMENTAL-1-ALERT: Temp: Temp 3, Location R0, State: Warning, Reading: 90C

**Fan Tray (Slot P2) Removed**

When the fan tray for slot P2 is removed, the system displays the following message:

%IOSXE_PEM-6-REMPEM_FM: PEM/FM slot P2 removed

**Fan Tray (Slot P2) Reinserted**

When the fan tray for slot P2 is reinserted, the system displays the following message:

%IOSXE_PEM-6-INSPEM_FM: PEM/FM slot P2 inserted

**Fan Tray (Slot 2) is Working Properly**

When the fan tray for slot 2 is functioning properly, the system displays the following message:

%IOSXE_PEM-6-PEMOK: The PEM in slot P2 is functioning properly

**Fan 0 in Slot 2 (Fan Tray) is Not Working**

When Fan 0 in the fan tray of slot 2 is not functioning properly, the system displays the following message:

%IOSXE_PEM-3-FANFAIL: The fan in slot 2/0 is encountering a failure condition

**Fan 0 in Slot 2 (Fan Tray) is Working Properly**

When Fan 0 in the fan tray of slot 2 is functioning properly, the system displays the following message:

%IOSXE_PEM-6-FANOK: The fan in slot 2/0 is functioning properly

**Main Power Supply in Slot 1 is Powered Off**

When the main power supply in slot 1 is powered off, the system displays the following message:
Main Power Supply is Inserted in Slot 1

When the main power supply is inserted in slot 1, the system displays the following messages:

%IOSXE_PEM-6-INSPEM_FM: PEM/FM slot P1 inserted
%IOSXE_PEM-6-PEMOK: The PEM in slot 1 is functioning properly

Temperature and Voltage Exceed Max/Min Thresholds

The following examples show the warning messages indicating the maximum and minimum thresholds of the temperature or voltage:

Warnings :
--------
For all the temperature sensors (name starting with "Temp:"), above,
the critical warning threshold is 100C (100C and higher)
the warning threshold is 80C (range from 80C to 99C)
the low warning threshold is 1C (range from -inf to 1C).

For all voltage sensors (names starting with "V:"),
the high warning threshold starts at that voltage +10%. (voltage + 10% is warning)
the low warning threshold starts at the voltage -10%. (voltage - 10% is warning)

Environmental Reporting Functions

You can retrieve and display environmental status reports using the following commands:

- debug environment
- debug platform software cman env monitor polling
- debug ilpower
- debug power [inline main]
- show diag all eeprom
- show diag slot R0 eeprom detail
- show environment
- show environment all
- show inventory
- show platform all
- show platform diag
- show platform software status control-processor
- show version
- show power
- show power inline

These commands show the current values of parameters such as temperature and voltage.
The environmental monitoring system updates the values of these parameters every 60 seconds. Brief examples of these commands are shown below:

**debug environment: Example**

```
Router# debug environment location P0
Environmental sensor Temp: Temp 1 P0 debugging is on
Environmental sensor Temp: Temp 2 P0 debugging is on
Environmental sensor Temp: Temp 3 P0 debugging is on
Environmental sensor V: PEM Out P0 debugging is on
Environmental sensor I: PEM In P0 debugging is on
Environmental sensor I: PEM Out P0 debugging is on
Environmental sensor W: In pwr P0 debugging is on
Environmental sensor W: Out pwr P0 debugging is on
Environmental sensor RPM: fan0 P0 debugging is on

*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Sensor: Temp: Temp 1 P0, In queue 1
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: State=Normal Reading=29
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Rotation count=0 Poll period=60000
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Sensor: Temp: Temp 1 P0 State=Normal Reading=29
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Inserting into queue 1 on spoke 173.
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Rotation count=60 Displacement=0
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Sensor: Temp: Temp 2 P0, In queue 1
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: State=Normal Reading=33
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Rotation count=0 Poll period=60000
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Sensor: Temp: Temp 2 P0 State=Normal Reading=34
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Inserting into queue 1 on spoke 173.
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Rotation count=60 Displacement=0
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Sensor: Temp: Temp 3 P0, In queue 1
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: State=Normal Reading=35
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Rotation count=0 Poll period=60000
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Sensor: Temp: Temp 3 P0 State=Normal Reading=35
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Inserting into queue 1 on spoke 173.
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Rotation count=60 Displacement=0
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Sensor: V: PEM Out P0, In queue 1
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: State=Normal Reading=12709
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Rotation count=0 Poll period=60000
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Sensor: V: PEM Out P0 State=Normal Reading=12724
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Inserting into queue 1 on spoke 173.
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Rotation count=60 Displacement=0
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Sensor: I: PEM In P0, In queue 1
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: State=Normal Reading=1
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Rotation count=0 Poll period=60000
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Sensor: I: PEM Out P0 State=Normal Reading=1
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Inserting into queue 1 on spoke 173.
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Rotation count=60 Displacement=0
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Sensor: W: In pwr P0, In queue 1
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: State=Normal Reading=92
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Rotation count=0 Poll period=60000
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Sensor: W: In pwr P0 State=Normal Reading=92
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Inserting into queue 1 on spoke 173.
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Rotation count=60 Displacement=0
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Sensor: W: Out pwr P0, In queue 1
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: State=Normal Reading=46
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Rotation count=0 Poll period=60000
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Sensor: W: Out pwr P0 State=Normal Reading=46
*Sep 12 00:45:13.956: Inserting into queue 1 on spoke 173.
```
Environmental Monitoring and PoE Management

Cisco 4000 Series ISRs Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.x
debug ilpower: Example

Router# debug ilpower ?
cdp ILPOWER CDP messages
controller ILPOWER controller
event ILPOWER event
ha ILPOWER High-Availability
port ILPOWER port management
powerman ILPOWER powerman
registries ILPOWER registries
scp ILPOWER SCP messages

debug power [inline|main]: Example

In this example, there is one 1000W power supply and one 450W power supply. Inline and main power output is shown.

Router# debug power ?
inline ILPM inline power related
main Main power related
<cr>
Router# debug power
POWER all debug debugging is on

Router# show debugging | include POWER
POWER:
POWER main debugging is on
POWER inline debugging is on

Router#
.. 
*Jan 21 01:29:40.786: %ENVIRONMENTAL-6-NOTICE: V: PEM Out, Location: P1, State: Warning, Reading: 0 mV
*Jan 21 01:29:43.968: %IOSXE_PEM-6-PEMOK: The PEM in slot P1 is functioning properly
*Jan 21 01:29:43.968: %PLATFORM_POWER-6-MODEMATCH: Main power is in Boost mode
*Jan 21 01:29:43.968: Power M: Received Msg for 12V/Main, total power 1450, Run same as cfg Yes
*Jan 21 01:29:43.968: Power M: Received Msg for POE/ILPM, total power 500, Run same as cfg No
*Jan 21 01:29:43.968: Power I: Updating pool power is 500 watts
*Jan 21 01:29:43.968: Power I: Intimating modules of total power 500 watts
*Jan 21 01:29:46.488: Power M: Received Msg for 12V/Main, total power 1450, Run same as cfg Yes
*Jan 21 01:29:46.488: Power M: Received Msg for POE/ILPM, total power 500, Run same as cfg No
*Jan 21 01:29:46.488: Power I: Updating pool power is 500 watts
*Jan 21 01:29:46.488: Power I: Intimating modules of total power 500 watts

Router#

show diag all eeprom: Example

Router# show diag all eeprom
MIDPLANE EEPROM data:

Product Identifier (PID) : ISR4451/K9
Version Identifier (VID) : V01
PCB Serial Number : FOC15507S9K
Hardware Revision : 1.0
Asset ID : PIB-R2C-CP1.0
CLEI Code : TDBTDBTDBT
Power/Fan Module P0 EEPROM data:

Product Identifier (PID) : XXX-XXXX-XX
Version Identifier (VID) : XXX
PCB Serial Number : DCA1547X047
CLEI Code : 0000000000

Power/Fan Module P1 EEPROM data:

Product Identifier (PID) : XXX-XXXX-XX
Version Identifier (VID) : XXX
PCB Serial Number : DCA1533X022
CLEI Code : 0000000000

Power/Fan Module P2 EEPROM data is not initialized

Internal PoE is not present

Slot R0 EEPROM data:

Product Identifier (PID) : ISR4451/K9
Version Identifier (VID) : V01
PCB Serial Number : FOC15507S9K
Hardware Revision : 1.0
CLEI Code : TDBTDBTDBT

Slot F0 EEPROM data:

Product Identifier (PID) : ISR4451-FF
Version Identifier (VID) : V00
PCB Serial Number : FP123456789
Hardware Revision : 4.1

Slot 0 EEPROM data:

Product Identifier (PID) : ISR4451/K9
Version Identifier (VID) : V01
PCB Serial Number : FOC15507S9K
Hardware Revision : 1.0
CLEI Code : TDBTDBTDBT

Slot 1 EEPROM data:

Product Identifier (PID) : ISR4451/K9
Version Identifier (VID) : V01
PCB Serial Number : FOC15507S9K
Hardware Revision : 1.0
CLEI Code : TDBTDBTDBT

Slot 2 EEPROM data:

Product Identifier (PID) : ISR4451/K9
Version Identifier (VID) : V01
PCB Serial Number : FOC15507S9K
Hardware Revision : 1.0
CLEI Code : TDBTDBTDBT

SPA EEPROM data for subslot 0/0:

Product Identifier (PID) : ISR441-4X1GE
Version Identifier (VID) : V01
PCB Serial Number : JAB092709EL
Top Assy. Part Number : 68-2236-01
Top Assy. Revision : A0
Hardware Revision : 2.2
CLEI Code : CNUIAHSSAAA
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 0/0 is not available

SPA EEPROM data for subslot 0/1 is not available

SPA EEPROM data for subslot 0/2 is not available

SPA EEPROM data for subslot 0/3 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 0/4 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 1/0 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 1/1 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 1/2 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 1/3 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 1/4 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 2/0 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 2/1 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 2/2 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 2/3 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 2/4 is not available

**show environment: Example**

In this example, note the output for the slots POE0 and POE1. Cisco IOS XE 3.10 and higher supports an external PoE module.

Router# `show environment`

Number of Critical alarms: 0
Number of Major alarms: 0
Number of Minor alarms: 0

Slot Sensor Current State Reading
--- ------ ------------- -------
P0 Temp: Temp 1 Normal 28 Celsius  
P0 Temp: Temp 2 Normal 43 Celsius  
P0 Temp: Temp 3 Normal 44 Celsius  
P0 V: PEM Out Normal 12404 mV  
P0 I: PEM In Normal 1 A    
P0 I: PEM Out Normal 7 A    
P0 P: In pwr Normal 106 Watts  
P0 P: Out pwr Normal 87 Watts  
P0 RPM: fan0 Normal 2952 RPM  
P2 RPM: fan0 Normal 4421 RPM  
P2 RPM: fan1 Normal 4394 RPM  
P2 RPM: fan2 Normal 4433 RPM  
P2 RPM: fan3 Normal 4410 RPM  
P2 P: pwr Normal 6 Watts  
POE0 Temp: Temp 1 Normal 44 Celsius  
POE0 I: 12v In Normal 2 A  
POE0 V: 12v In Normal 12473 mV  
POE0 P: In pwr Normal 25 Watts  
POE1 Temp: Temp 1 Normal 40 Celsius  
POE1 I: 12v In Normal 2 mA  
POE1 V: 12v In Normal 12473 mV  
POE1 P: In pwr Normal 20 Watts  
R0 Temp: Inlet 1 Normal 24 Celsius  
R0 Temp: Inlet 2 Normal 26 Celsius  
R0 Temp: Outlet 1 Normal 33 Celsius  
R0 Temp: Outlet 2 Normal 32 Celsius  
R0 Temp: core-B Normal 43 Celsius
show environment all: Example

Router# show environment all
Sensor List: Environmental Monitoring
Sensor Location State Reading
Temp: Temp 1 P0 Normal 29 Celsius
Temp: Temp 2 P0 Normal 43 Celsius
Temp: Temp 3 P0 Normal 44 Celsius
V: PEM Out P0 Normal 12404 mV
I: PEM In P0 Normal 1 A
I: PEM Out P0 Normal 8 A
P: In pwr P0 Normal 111 Watts
P: Out pwr P0 Normal 91 Watts
RPM: fan0 P0 Normal 2940 RPM
RPM: fan1 P2 Normal 4419 RPM
RPM: fan2 P2 Normal 4395 RPM
RPM: fan3 P2 Normal 4426 RPM
P: pwr P2 Normal 6 Watts
Temp: Temp 1 POE0 Normal 44 Celsius
I: 12v In POE0 Normal 2 A
V: 12v In POE0 Normal 12473 mV
P: In pwr POE0 Normal 25 Watts
Temp: Temp 1 POE1 Normal 40 Celsius
I: 12v In POE1 Normal 2 mA
V: 12v In POE1 Normal 12473 mV
show inventory: Example

Router# show inventory
NAME: "Chassis", DESCR: "Cisco ISR4451 Chassis"
PID: ISR4451/K9 , VID: V01, SN: FGL160110QZ
NAME: "Power Supply Module 0", DESCR: "450W AC Power Supply for Cisco ISR4450"
PID: XXX-XXXX-XX , VID: XXX, SN: DCA1547X047
NAME: "Power Supply Module 1", DESCR: "450W AC Power Supply for Cisco ISR4450"
PID: XXX-XXXX-XX , VID: XXX, SN: DCA1614Y022
NAME: "Fan Tray", DESCR: "Cisco ISR4450 Fan Assembly"
PID: ACS-4450-FANASSY , VID: , SN:
NAME: "POE Module 0", DESCR: "Single POE for Cisco ISR4451"
PID: PWR-POE-4400 , VID: , SN: FHH1638P00E
NAME: "POE Module 1", DESCR: "Single POE for Cisco ISR4451"
PID: PWR-POE-4400 , VID: , SN: FHH1638P00G
show platform: Example

Router# show platform
Chassis type: ISR4451/K9

Slot Type  State  Insert time (ago)
---------  -------------  ---------------------  -----------------
0  ISR4451/K9  ok  3d11h
0/0  ISR4451-X-4x1GE  ok  3d11h
0/2  NIM-4MFT-T1/E1  ok  3d11h
0/3  NIM-SSD  ok  3d11h
1  ISR4451/K9  ok  3d11h
1/0  SM-X-1T3/E3  ok  3d11h
2  ISR4451/K9  ok  3d11h
2/0  SM-ES3X-24-P  ok  3d11h
R0  ISR4451/K9  ok, active 3d11h
F0  ISR4451/K9  ok, active 3d11h
P0  XXX-XXXX-XX  ok  3d11h
P1  XXX-XXXX-XX  ok  3d11h
P2  ACS-4450-FANASSY  ok  3d11h
POE0  PWR-POE-4400  ok  3d11h
POE1  PWR-POE-4400  ok  3d11h
GE-POE  800G2-POE-2  ok  3d11h
show platform diag: Example

Router# show platform diag
Chassis type: ISR4451/K9

Slot: 0, ISR4451/K9
Running state : ok
Internal state : online
Internal operational state : ok
Physical insert detect time : 00:01:04 (3d10h ago)
Software declared up time : 00:01:43 (3d10h ago)
CPLD version : 12121625
Firmware version : 15.3(1r)S

Sub-slot: 0/0, ISR4451-X-4x1GE
Operational status : ok
Internal state : inserted
Physical insert detect time : 00:03:03 (3d10h ago)
Logical insert detect time : 00:03:03 (3d10h ago)

Sub-slot: 0/2, NIM-4MFT-T1/E1
Operational status : ok
Internal state : inserted
Physical insert detect time : 00:03:03 (3d10h ago)
Logical insert detect time : 00:03:03 (3d10h ago)

Sub-slot: 0/3, NIM-SSD
Operational status : ok
Internal state : inserted
Physical insert detect time : 00:03:03 (3d10h ago)
Logical insert detect time : 00:03:03 (3d10h ago)

Slot: 1, ISR4451/K9
Running state : ok
Internal state : online
Internal operational state : ok
Physical insert detect time : 00:01:04 (3d10h ago)
Software declared up time : 00:01:44 (3d10h ago)
CPLD version : 12121625
Firmware version : 15.3(1r)S

Sub-slot: 1/0, SM-X-1T3/E3
Operational status : ok
Internal state : inserted
Physical insert detect time : 00:03:03 (3d10h ago)
Logical insert detect time : 00:03:03 (3d10h ago)

Slot: 2, ISR4451/K9
Running state : ok
Internal state : online
Internal operational state : ok
Physical insert detect time : 00:01:04 (3d10h ago)
Software declared up time : 00:01:45 (3d10h ago)
CPLD version : 12121625
Firmware version : 15.3(1r)S

Sub-slot: 2/0, SM-ES3X-24-P
Operational status : ok
Internal state : inserted
Physical insert detect time : 00:03:03 (3d10h ago)
Logical insert detect time : 00:03:03 (3d10h ago)

Slot: R0, ISR4451/K9
Running state: ok, active
Internal state: online
Internal operational state: ok
Physical insert detect time: 00:01:04 (3d10h ago)
Software declared up time: 00:01:04 (3d10h ago)
CPLD version: 12121625
Firmware version: 15.3(1r)S

Slot: F0, ISR4451/K9
Running state: ok, active
Internal state: online
Internal operational state: ok
Physical insert detect time: 00:01:04 (3d10h ago)
Software declared up time: 00:02:39 (3d10h ago)
Hardware ready signal time: 00:00:00 (never ago)
Packet ready signal time: 00:02:48 (3d10h ago)
CPLD version: 12121625
Firmware version: 15.3(1r)S

Slot: P0, XXX-XXXX-XX
State: ok
Physical insert detect time: 00:01:29 (3d10h ago)

Slot: P1, XXX-XXXX-XX
State: ok
Physical insert detect time: 00:01:29 (3d10h ago)

Slot: P2, ACS-4450-FANASSY
State: ok
Physical insert detect time: 00:01:29 (3d10h ago)

Slot: POE0, PWR-POE-4451
State: ok
Physical insert detect time: 00:01:29 (3d10h ago)

Slot: POE1, PWR-POE-4451
State: ok
Physical insert detect time: 00:01:29 (3d10h ago)

Slot: GE-POE, 800G2-POE-2
State: ok
Physical insert detect time: 00:01:29 (3d10h ago)

show platform software status control-processor: Example

Router# show platform software status control-processor
RP0: online, statistics updated 2 seconds ago
Load Average: health unknown
1-Min: 0.13, status: health unknown, under
5-Min: 0.07, status: health unknown, under
15-Min: 0.06, status: health unknown, under
Memory (kb): healthy
Total: 3971244
Used: 2965856 (75%)
Free: 1005388 (25%)
Committed: 2460492 (62%), status: health unknown, under 0%
Per-core Statistics
CPU0: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 1.00, System: 2.90, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 96.00
IRQ: 0.10, SIRQ: 0.00, IDelay: 0.00
CPU1: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)

Cisco 4000 Series ISRs Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.x
User: 10.71, System: 29.22, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 60.06
IRQ: 0.00, SIRQ: 0.00, IOwait: 0.00
CPU2: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 0.80, System: 1.30, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 97.90
IRQ: 0.00, SIRQ: 0.00, IOwait: 0.00
CPU3: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 10.61, System: 34.03, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 55.25
IRQ: 0.00, SIRQ: 0.10, IOwait: 0.00
CPU4: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 0.60, System: 1.20, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 98.20
IRQ: 0.00, SIRQ: 0.00, IOwait: 0.00
CPU5: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 13.18, System: 35.46, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 51.24
IRQ: 0.00, SIRQ: 0.09, IOwait: 0.00
CPU6: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 0.80, System: 2.40, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 96.80
IRQ: 0.00, SIRQ: 0.00, IOwait: 0.00
CPU7: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 10.41, System: 33.63, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 55.85
IRQ: 0.00, SIRQ: 0.10, IOwait: 0.00

show diag slot R0 eeprom detail: Example

Router# show diag slot R0 eeprom detail
Slot R0 EEPROM data:
EEPROM version : 4
Compatible Type : 0xFF
PCB Serial Number : FHH153900AU
Controller Type : 1902
Hardware Revision : 0.0
PCB Part Number : 73-13854-01
Top Assy. Part Number : 800-36894-01
Board Revision : 01
Deviation Number : 122081
Fab Version : 01
Product Identifier (PID) : CISCO------
Version Identifier (VID) : V01
Chassis Serial Number : FHH1539P00Q
Chassis MAC Address : 0000.0000.0000
MAC Address block size : 96
Asset ID : REV1B
Asset ID :

show version: Example

Router# show version
Cisco IOS XE Software, Version 03.13.00.S - Standard Support Release
Cisco IOS Software, ISR Software (X86_64_LINUX_IOSD-UNIVERSALK9-M), Version 15.4(3)S, RELEASE SOFTWARE (fc2)
Technical Support: http://www.cisco.com/techsupport
Copyright (c) 1986-2014 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Tue 27-May-14 05:36 by mcppre

Cisco IOS-XE software, Copyright (c) 2005-2014 by cisco Systems, Inc.
All rights reserved. Certain components of Cisco IOS-XE software are licensed under the GNU General Public License ("GPL") Version 2.0. The software code licensed under GPL Version 2.0 is free software that comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY. You can redistribute and/or modify such GPL code under the terms of GPL Version 2.0. For more details, see the
documentation or "License Notice" file accompanying the IOS-XE software, or the applicable URL provided on the flyer accompanying the IOS-XE software.

ROM: IOS-XE ROMMON
Router uptime is 2 hours, 19 minutes
Uptime for this control processor is 2 hours, 22 minutes
System returned to ROM by reload
System image file is "tftp: isr4400-universalk9.03.13.00.S.154-3.S-std.SPA.bin"
Last reload reason: Reload Command

This product contains cryptographic features and is subject to United States and local country laws governing import, export, transfer and use. Delivery of Cisco cryptographic products does not imply third-party authority to import, export, distribute or use encryption. Importers, exporters, distributors and users are responsible for compliance with U.S. and local country laws. By using this product you agree to comply with applicable laws and regulations. If you are unable to comply with U.S. and local laws, return this product immediately.

A summary of U.S. laws governing Cisco cryptographic products may be found at: http://www.cisco.com/wwl/export/crypto/tool/stqrg.html

If you require further assistance please contact us by sending email to export@cisco.com.

Technology Package License Information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technology</th>
<th>Technology-package</th>
<th>Current</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Next reboot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>appx</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uc</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>security</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ipbase</td>
<td>ipbasek9</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>ipbasek9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

cisco 4451 ISR processor with 1213154K/6147K bytes of memory.
Processor board ID FHH1539P00Q
4 Gigabit Ethernet interfaces
32768K bytes of non-volatile configuration memory.
4194304K bytes of physical memory.
3391455K bytes of Compact flash at bootflash:

Configuration register is 0x0"

---

Configuring Power Supply Mode

You can configure the power supplies of both the router and a connected Power over Ethernet (PoE) module.

- Configuring the Router Power Supply Mode, on page 179
- Configuring the External PoE Service Module Power Supply Mode, on page 179
- Examples for Configuring Power Supply Mode, on page 179
Configuring the Router Power Supply Mode

Configure the main power supply on the router using the **power main redundant** command:

- **power main redundant**—Sets the main power supply in redundant mode.
- **no power main redundant**—Sets the main power supply in boost mode.

**Note**
The default mode for the router power supply is redundant mode.

Configuring the External PoE Service Module Power Supply Mode

Configure the power supply of an external PoE service module using the **power inline redundant** command:

- **power inline redundant**—Sets the external PoE service module power supply in redundant mode.
- **no power inline redundant**—Sets the external PoE service module power supply in boost mode.

**Note**
The default mode for the external PoE service module power supply is redundant mode.

The **show power** command shows whether boost or redundant mode is configured and whether this mode is currently running on the system.

Examples for Configuring Power Supply Mode

**Example—Configured Mode of Boost for Main PSU and PoE Module**

In this example, the **show power** command shows the configured mode as **Boost**, which is also the current runtime state. The **Main PSU** shows information about the main power supply. The **POE Module** shows information about the inline/PoE power. In this example, the current run-time state for the main power supply is the same as the configured state (**Boost** mode).

```
Router# show power
Main PSU:
  Configured Mode : Boost
  Current runtime state same : Yes
  Total power available : 2000 Watts
POE Module:
  Configured Mode : Boost
  Current runtime state same : Yes
  Total power available : 1000 Watts
Router#
```
Example—Configured Mode of Boost for Main PSU and PoE Module

In this example, the `show power` command shows the power supplies that are present in the device. The Main PSU and PoE Module are configured to the Boost mode, which differs from the current runtime state. The current runtime state is the Redundant mode. A likely explanation for this is that there is only one main power supply present in the router. See mode example 4 in the table titled "Modes of Operation" in Available PoE Power, on page 181.

You can enter the `show platform` command to show the power supplies that are present in the device.

```
Router# show power
Main PSU :
  Configured Mode : Boost
  Current runtime state same : No
  Total power available : 1000 Watts
POE Module :
  Configured Mode : Boost
  Current runtime state same : No
  Total power available : 500 Watts
Router#
```

Example—Configured Mode of Redundant for Main PSU and PoE Module

In this example, the `show power` command shows the configured mode is Redundant for both the main and inline power. The system has one 450 W and one 100 W power supply.

```
Router# show power
Main PSU :
  Configured Mode : Redundant
  Current runtime state same : Yes
  Total power available : 450 Watts
POE Module :
  Configured Mode : Redundant
  Current runtime state same : No
  Total power available : 0 Watts
Router#
```

Example—Configured Mode of Boost for Main Power

In this example, the main power is configured to be in boost mode by using the no form of the `power main redundant` command. This sets the main power to boost mode with 1450 W and inline power to redundant mode with 500 W.

```
Router# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Router(config)# no power main redundant
Router(config)#
*Jan 31 03:35:22.284: %PLATFORM_POWER-6-MODEMATCH: Inline power is in Redundant mode
Router(config)#
Router(config)# exit
Router#
*Jan 31 03:36:13.111: %SYS-5-CONFIG_I: Configured from console by console
Router# show power
Main PSU :
  Configured Mode : Boost
  Current runtime state same : Yes
  Total power available : 1450 Watts
POE Module :
```
Example—Configured Mode of Boost for PoE Power

In this example, an attempt is made to configure the inline power in boost mode by using the `no` form of the `power inline redundant` command. The inline power mode is not changed to boost mode because that would require a total power available in redundant mode of 1000 W. The inline power mode is redundant and is shown by the following values for the PoE Module:

- Configured Mode : Boost
- Current runtime state same : No

Router# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Router(config)# no power inline redundant
Router(config)#
*Jan 31 03:42:40.947: %PLATFORM_POWER-6-MODEMISMATCH: Inline power not in Boost mode
Router(config)#
Router(config)# exit
Router#
*Jan 31 03:36:13.111: %SYS-5-CONFIG_I: Configured from console by console
Router# show power
Main PSU :
Configured Mode : Boost
Current runtime state same : Yes
Total power available : 1450 Watts
POE Module :
Configured Mode : Boost
Current runtime state same : No
Total power available : 500 Watts
Router#

Available PoE Power

For the PoE feature to be available on the external PoE module, the total power from the power supplies must be 500 W or higher.

Note
To ensure the PoE feature is functional on the external PoE module, verify the availability of PoE power on your router using the `show platform` and `show power` commands.

To determine there is enough PoE power for use by an external PoE service module, use the `show platform` and `show power` commands to calculate the available PoE power based on the wattage values of the main power supplies and PoE inverters.

Take the values of your main P0 and P1 power supplies to give the Total Power (for main power supplies.) Then take the values of your PoE1 and PoE2 power inverters to calculate the Total PoE Power.

The following table shows example modes of operation, which may be similar to your configuration.
The Total PoE Power value, in the final column of the table needs to be 500 W or higher for the PoE feature to be functional on a connected PoE service module.

**Note**

Add power inverters to the router before inserting an external PoE module. Otherwise, even if the Total PoE Power is sufficient, the PoE power will not be used by the external PoE module and the module will need to be re-booted for the PoE feature to be functional.

Configuring a power mode of boost or redundant on the main power supplies, or PoE inverters, may affect the value for Total PoE Power.

The following table shows all power values in Watts. The wattage ratings of the main power supplies are shown in columns Main P0 and Main P1. The wattage ratings of the PoE inverters are shown in columns PoE0 and PoE1.

**Table 12: Modes of Operation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode Example</th>
<th>Main P0</th>
<th>Main P1</th>
<th>Config Mode</th>
<th>Total Power (Main)</th>
<th>PoE0</th>
<th>PoE1</th>
<th>Config Mode</th>
<th>Total PoE Power</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Redundant or Boost</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>Redundant or Boost</td>
<td>0 (None)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>Boost</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>Redundant or Boost</td>
<td>0 (None)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>Redundant</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Redundant or Boost</td>
<td>0 (None)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Redundant or Boost</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Redundant or Boost</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>Redundant</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>Redundant or Boost</td>
<td>0 (None)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>Boost</td>
<td>1450</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>Boost</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Redundant</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>Boost</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Boost</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>Boost</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

In the table above, for 500 W or higher Total PoE Power to be available, the "Total Power" (of the main power supplies) must be 1000 W or higher.

For 1000 W Total PoE Power (see Mode Example 8 above), there must be two 1000 W main power supplies (in Boost mode) and two PoE inverters (also in Boost mode).
Caution

Care should be taken while removing the power supplies and power inverters (especially in Boost mode of operation). If the total power consumption is higher than can be supported by one power supply alone and in this condition a power supply is removed, the hardware can be damaged. This may then result in the system being unstable or unusable.

Similarly, in the case where there is only one PoE inverter providing PoE power to a service module, and in this condition the PoE inverter is removed, the hardware may be damaged, and may result in the system being unstable or unusable.

Managing PoE

The Power over Ethernet (PoE) feature allows you to manage power on the FPGE ports. By using PoE, you do not need to supply connected PoE-enabled devices with wall power. This eliminates the cost for additional electrical cabling that would otherwise be necessary for connected devices. The router supports PoE (802.3af) and PoE+ (802.3at). PoE provides up to 15.4 W of power, and PoE+ provides up to 30 W of power.

- PoE Support for FPGE Ports, on page 183
- Monitoring Your Power Supply, on page 183
- Enabling Cisco Discovery Protocol, on page 36
- Configuring PoE for FPGE Ports, on page 186

PoE Support for FPGE Ports

A PoE module supports PoE on the front panel gigabit ethernet ports (FPGE) such as gig0/0/0 and gig0/0/1. You can configure the PoE service module for the FPGE using the power inline command, which allows you to turn on or turn off the power to a connected device such as an IEEE phone or device. For more information, see Configuring PoE for FPGE Ports, on page 186.

Monitoring Your Power Supply

You can monitor the total available power budget on your router using the show power inline [GigabitEthernet detail] command in privileged EXEC mode.

This command allows you to check the availability of sufficient power for the powered device type before it is connected to the router.

Example—Inline power where there is no PoE module

In this example, there is no module present that supports PoE. Power is being supplied to an IP phone and a switch.

Router# show power inline
Available:31.0(w) Used:30.3(w) Remaining:0.7(w)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Admin</th>
<th>Oper</th>
<th>Power</th>
<th>Device</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Max</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Environmental Monitoring and PoE Management
In this example, the command includes the following information:

- **Available:** 31.0(w) — Available PoE power
- **Used:** 30.3(w) — PoE power used by all the router's ports
- **Oper:** PoE power state of each connected powered device (on/off)
- **Power:** PoE power used by each connected powered device
- **Class:** PoE power classification

**Example — Inline power for one PoE module**

In this example, one module that supports PoE is present. Cisco IOS XE 3.10 and higher supports an external PoE module.

```
Router# show power inline
Available: 31.0(w) Used: 30.3(w) Remaining: 0.7(w)
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Admin</th>
<th>Oper</th>
<th>Power (Watts)</th>
<th>Device</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Max</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gi0/0/0</td>
<td>auto</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>14.9</td>
<td>IP Phone 7971</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>30.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gi0/0/1</td>
<td>auto</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>WS-C2960CPD-8PT-L</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>30.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```
Available: 500.0(w) Used: 11.7(w) Remaining: 488.3(w)
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Admin</th>
<th>Oper</th>
<th>Power (Watts)</th>
<th>Device</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Max</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Et2/0/0</td>
<td>auto</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>11.7</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>750.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example — Inline power to connected IP phones**

```
Router# show power inline
Available: 31.0(w) Used: 30.8(w) Remaining: 0.2(w)
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Admin</th>
<th>Oper</th>
<th>Power (Watts)</th>
<th>Device</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Max</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gi0/0/0</td>
<td>auto</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>Ieee PD</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>30.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gi0/0/1</td>
<td>auto</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>Ieee PD</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>30.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example — Inline power to one Gigabit Ethernet port**

```
Router# show power inline gigabitEthernet 0/0/0
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Admin</th>
<th>Oper</th>
<th>Power (Watts)</th>
<th>Device</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Max</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gi0/0/0</td>
<td>auto</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>Ieee PD</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>30.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example—Inline power to one Gigabit Ethernet port-detail

Router# show power inline gigabitEthernet 0/0/0 detail
Interface: Gi0/0/0
  Inline Power Mode: auto
  Operational status: on
  Device Detected: yes
  Device Type: Ieee PD
  IEEE Class: 4
  Discovery mechanism used/configured: Ieee
  Police: off

  Power Allocated
  Admin Value: 30.0
  Power drawn from the source: 15.4
  Power available to the device: 15.4

  Absent Counter: 0
  Over Current Counter: 0
  Short Current Counter: 0
  Invalid Signature Counter: 0
  Power Denied Counter: 0

Example—Inline power to an external PoE service module

In this example, after the output lines for Gi0/0/0, and Gi0/0/1, there are output lines for the external PoE service module. Cisco IOS XE 3.10 and higher supports an external PoE module. Et1/0/0 indicates the internal port (slot 1/0) for the first PoE service module. Et2/0/0 indicates the internal port (slot 2/0) in a second PoE service module.

Although both slots are capable of drawing 750 W of PoE power, in this device only 500 W of PoE power is available. Slot 2/0 (Et2/0/0) has been allocated 369.6 W of PoE power.

Router# show power inline
Available:31.0(w) Used:15.4(w) Remaining:15.6(w)
Interface Admin Oper Power Device Class Max
--------- ---- -------- ----- ----------------- --- ---
Gi0/0/0 auto on 15.4 Ieee PD 4 30.0
Gi0/0/1 auto off 0.0 n/a n/a 30.0

Available:500.0(w) Used:369.6(w) Remaining:500.0(w)
Interface Admin Oper Power Device Class Max
--------- ---- -------- ----- ----------------- --- ---
Et1/0/0 auto off 0.0 n/a n/a 750.
Et2/0/0 auto off 369.6 n/a n/a 750.

Enabling Cisco Discovery Protocol

Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) is enabled by default on the router.

Note

CDP is not enabled by default on Cisco Aggregation Services Routers or on the Cisco CSR 1000v.
For more information on using CDP, see Cisco Discovery Protocol Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Release 3S.

Configuring PoE for FPGE Ports

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. cdp run
4. interface gigabitethernet slot/subslot/port
5. cdp enable
6. power inline {auto | auto [max milli-watts] | never}
7. exit

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
* Enter your password if prompted. |
| Example: | |
| Router> enable | |
| **Step 2** configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| Example: | |
| Router# configure terminal | |
| **Step 3** cdp run | Enables Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) on your router. |
| Example: | |
| Router(config)# cdp run | |
| **Step 4** interface gigabitethernet slot/subslot/port | Allows to configure PoE on ports 0 and 1.  
* PoE can be configured on ports 0 and 1. |
| Example: | |
| Router(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0 | |
| **Step 5** cdp enable | Enables CDP in the interface configuration mode. |
| Example: | |
| Router(config-if)# cdp enable | |
| **Step 6** power inline {auto | auto [max milli-watts] | never} | Allows you to set the power inline options for FPGE ports.  
* auto—The auto keyword automatically detects the power inline devices and supplies power to such devices. |
| Example: | |
| Router(config-if)# power inline auto | |
### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>max milli-watts</strong></td>
<td>The <strong>max</strong> keyword sets the maximum power allowed on the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>never</strong></td>
<td>The <strong>never</strong> keyword disables the detection and ceases the application of inline power.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 7

**exit**

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# exit
```

### Verifying if PoE Is Enabled on FPGE Port

**show platform:** Example

**show diag chassis eeprom:** Example

You can verify whether the PoE is enabled on the FPGE port by looking at the external LED for this port. The external LED for the FPGE port is labelled as GE POE. The GE POE emits a green light when the internal PoE module is plugged in and functioning properly. The GE POE LED is yellow when the internal PoE is plugged in but not functioning properly. The GE POE LED is off when there are no PoE modules plugged in. For more information on LEDs, see the Hardware Installation Guide for the Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers.

You can also detect PoE using the `show platform` and `show diag` commands.

For more information, see the following examples.

```
Router# show platform
Chassis type: ISR4451/K9

Chassis type: ISR4451/K9

Slot  Type     State                  Insert time (ago)
------- ------- ----------------- ---------------------
0      ISR4451/K9 ok               3d11h
0/0    ISR4451-X-4x1GE ok           3d11h
0/2    NIM-4MFT-T1/E1 ok            3d11h
0/3    NIM-SSD ok                   3d11h
1      ISR4451/K9 ok               3d11h
1/0    SM-X-1T3/E3 ok               3d11h
2      ISR4451/K9 ok               3d11h
2/0    SM-ES3X-24-P ok              3d11h
R0     ISR4451/K9 ok, active       3d11h
F0     ISR4451/K9 ok, active        3d11h
F0     XXX-XXXX-XX ok               3d11h
P1     XXX-XXXX-XX ok               3d11h
P2     ACS-4451-FANTRAY ok           3d11h
POE0   FWR-POE-4451-X ok            3d11h
POE1   FWR-POE-4451-X ok            3d11h
GE-POE  800G2-POE-2 ok              3d11h

Slot  CPLD Version  Firmware Version
------- ----------------- --------------------------
0      12090323        15.3(01r)S [ciscouser-ISRRO...
```
### Additional References

The following sections provide references related to the power efficiency management feature.

#### MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIBs</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CISCO-ENTITY-FRU-CONTROL-MIB</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases, and feature sets, use the Cisco MIB Locator at: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a>. Also see MIB Specifications Guide for the Cisco 4451-X Integrated Services Router.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 15

Configuring High Availability

The Cisco High Availability (HA) technology enable network-wide protection by providing quick recovery from disruptions that may occur in any part of a network. A network's hardware and software work together with Cisco High Availability technology, which besides enabling quick recovery from disruptions, ensures fault transparency to users and network applications.

The following sections describe how to configure Cisco High Availability features on your router:

- About Cisco High Availability, on page 191
- Interchassis High Availability, on page 191
- Bidirectional Forwarding Detection, on page 192
- Configuring Cisco High Availability, on page 193
- Additional References, on page 204

About Cisco High Availability

The unique hardware and software architecture of your router is designed to maximize router uptime during any network event, and thereby provide maximum uptime and resilience within any network scenario.

This section covers some aspects of Cisco High Availability that may be used on the Cisco 4000 series routers:

- Interchassis High Availability, on page 191
- Bidirectional Forwarding Detection, on page 192

Interchassis High Availability

The Interchassis High Availability feature is also known as the box-to-box redundancy feature. Interchassis High Availability enables the configuration of pairs of routers to act as backup for each other. This feature can be configured to determine the active router based on several failover conditions. When a failover occurs, the standby router seamlessly takes over and starts processing call signaling and performing media forwarding tasks.

Groups of redundant interfaces are known as redundancy groups. The following figure depicts the active-standby device scenario. It shows how the redundancy group is configured for a pair of routers that have a single outgoing interface.
The routers are joined by a configurable control link and data synchronization link. The control link is used to communicate the status of the routers. The data synchronization link is used to transfer stateful information to synchronize the stateful database for the calls and media flows. Each pair of redundant interfaces are configured with the same unique ID number, also known as the RII. For information on configuring Interchassis HA on your router, see Configuring Interchassis High Availability, on page 193.

**IPsec Failover**

The IPsec Failover feature increases the total uptime (or availability) of your IPsec network. Traditionally, the increased availability of your IPsec network is accomplished by employing a redundant (standby) router in addition to the original (active) router. When the active router becomes unavailable for a reason, the standby router takes over the processing of IKE and IPsec. IPsec failover falls into two categories: stateless failover and stateful failover.

On the router, only the stateless form of IPsec failover is supported. This stateless failover uses protocols such as the Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP) to provide primary to secondary cutovers and also allows the active and standby VPN gateways to share a common virtual IP address.

**Bidirectional Forwarding Detection**

Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) is a detection protocol designed to provide fast-forwarding path-failure detection times for all media types, encapsulations, topologies, and routing protocols. In addition to fast-forwarding path-failure detection, BFD provides a consistent failure detection method for network administrators. Because a network administrator can use BFD to detect forwarding path failures at a uniform rate rather than variable rates for different routing protocol hello mechanisms, network profiling and planning is easier, and reconvergence time is consistent and predictable.

For more information on BFD, see the “Bidirectional Forwarding Detection” section in the IP Routing BFD Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Release 3S.
Bidirectional Forwarding Detection Offload

The Bidirectional Forwarding Detection Offload feature allows the offload of BFD session management to the forwarding engine for improved failure detection times. BFD offload reduces the overall network convergence time by sending rapid failure detection packets (messages) to the routing protocols for recalculating the routing table. See Configuring BFD Offload, on page 194.

Configuring Cisco High Availability

- Configuring Interchassis High Availability, on page 193
- Configuring Bidirectional Forwarding, on page 194
- Verifying Interchassis High Availability, on page 194
- Verifying BFD Offload, on page 201

Configuring Interchassis High Availability

Prerequisites

- The active device and the standby device must run on the identical version of the Cisco IOS XE software.
- The active device and the standby device must be connected through an L2 connection for the control path.
- The Embedded Service Processor (ESP) must be the same on both the active and standby devices. Route processors must also match and have a similar physical configuration.
- Either the Network Time Protocol (NTP) must be configured or the clock must be set identical on both devices to allow timestamps and call timers to match.
- Virtual router forwarding (VRF) must be defined in the same order on both active and standby routers for an accurate synchronization of data.
- The latency times must be minimal on all control and data links to prevent timeouts.
- Physically redundant links, such as Gigabit EtherChannel, must be used for the control and data paths.

Restrictions

- The failover time for a box-to-box application is higher for a non-box-to-box application.
- LAN and MESH scenarios are not supported.
- VRFs are not supported and cannot be configured under ZBFW High Availability data and control interfaces.
- The maximum number of virtual MACs supported by the Front Panel Gigabit Ethernet (FPGE) interfaces depends on the platform. For information about the FPGE interfaces, see the Hardware Installation Guide for the Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers.
• When the configuration is replicated to the standby router, it is not committed to the startup configuration; it is in the running configuration. A user must run the write memory command to commit the changes that have been synchronized from the active router, on the standby router.

**How to Configure Interchassis High Availability**

For more information on configuring Interchassis High Availability on the router, see the IP Addressing: NAT Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Release 3S.

### Configuring Bidirectional Forwarding

For information on configuring BFD on your router, see the IP Routing BFD Configuration Guide. For BFD commands, see the Cisco IOS IP Routing: Protocol-Independent Command Reference document.

### Configuring BFD Offload

**Restrictions**

• Only BFD version 1 is supported.
• When configured, only offloaded BFD sessions are supported; BFD session on RP are not supported.
• Only Asynchronous mode or no echo mode of BFD is supported.
• 511 asynchronous BFD sessions are supported.
• BFD hardware offload is supported for IPv4 sessions with non-echo mode only.
• BFD offload is supported only on port-channel interfaces.
• BFD offload is supported only for the Ethernet interface.
• BFD offload is not supported for IPv6 BFD sessions.
• BFD offload is not supported for BFD with TE/FRR.

**How to Configure BFD Offload**

BFD offload functionality is enabled by default. You can configure BFD hardware offload on the route processor. For more information, see Configuring BFD and the IP Routing BFD Configuration Guide.

### Verifying Interchassis High Availability

Use the following show commands to verify the Interchassis High Availability.

#### Note

Prerequisites and links to additional documentation configuring Interchassis High Availability are listed in Configuring Interchassis High Availability, on page 193.

• show redundancy application group [group-id | all]
The following examples show the redundancy application groups configured on the router:

**Router# show redundancy application group**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group ID</th>
<th>Group Name</th>
<th>State</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Generic-Redundancy-1</td>
<td>STANDBY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Generic-Redundancy2</td>
<td>ACTIVE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following example shows the details of redundancy application group 1:

**Router# show redundancy application group 1**

Group ID: 1
Group Name: Generic-Redundancy-1

Administrative State: No Shutdown
Aggregate operational state: Up
My Role: STANDBY
Peer Role: ACTIVE
Peer Presence: Yes
Peer Comm: Yes
Peer Progression Started: Yes

RF Domain: btob-one
RF state: STANDBY HOT
Peer RF state: ACTIVE

The following example shows the details of redundancy application group 2:

**Router# show redundancy application group 2**

Group ID: 2
Group Name: Generic-Redundancy2

Administrative State: No Shutdown
Aggregate operational state: Up
My Role: ACTIVE
Peer Role: STANDBY
Peer Presence: Yes
Peer Comm: Yes
Peer Progression Started: Yes

RF Domain: btob-two
RF state: ACTIVE
Peer RF state: STANDBY HOT

The following example shows details of the redundancy application transport client:

**Router# show redundancy application transport client**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Client</th>
<th>Conn#</th>
<th>Priority</th>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>L3</th>
<th>L4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( 0)RF</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>CTRL</td>
<td>IPV4</td>
<td>SCTP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( 1)MCP_HA</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>IPV4</td>
<td>UDP_REL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( 4)AR</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ASYM</td>
<td>IPV4</td>
<td>UDP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following example shows configuration details for the redundancy application transport group:

```
Router# show redundancy application transport group
Transport Information for RG (1)
Client = RF
  TI  conn_id my_ip   my_port peer_ip   peer_port intf   L3   L4
  0  0  1.1.1.1  59000  1.1.1.2  59000  CTRL IPV4 SCTP
Client = MCP_HA
  TI  conn_id my_ip   my_port peer_ip   peer_port intf   L3   L4
  1  1  9.9.9.2  53000  9.9.9.1  53000  DATA IPV4 UDP_REL
Client = AR
  TI  conn_id my_ip   my_port peer_ip   peer_port intf   L3   L4
  2  0  0.0.0.0  0  0.0.0.0  0  NONE IN NONE L3 NONE L4
Client = CF
  TI  conn_id my_ip   my_port peer_ip   peer_port intf   L3   L4
  3  0  9.9.9.2  59001  9.9.9.1  59001  DATA IPV4 SCTP
Transport Information for RG (2)
Client = RF
  TI  conn_id my_ip   my_port peer_ip   peer_port intf   L3   L4
  8  0  1.1.1.1  59004  1.1.1.2  59004  CTRL IPV4 SCTP
Client = MCP_HA
  TI  conn_id my_ip   my_port peer_ip   peer_port intf   L3   L4
  9  1  9.9.9.2  53002  9.9.9.1  53002  DATA IPV4 UDP_REL
Client = AR
  TI  conn_id my_ip   my_port peer_ip   peer_port intf   L3   L4
 10  0  0.0.0.0  0  0.0.0.0  0  NONE IN NONE L3 NONE L4
Client = CF
  TI  conn_id my_ip   my_port peer_ip   peer_port intf   L3   L4
 11  0  9.9.9.2  59005  9.9.9.1  59005  DATA IPV4 SCTP
```

The following example shows the configuration details of redundancy application transport group 1:

```
Router# show redundancy application transport group 1
Transport Information for RG (1)
Client = RF
  TI  conn_id my_ip   my_port peer_ip   peer_port intf   L3   L4
  0  0  1.1.1.1  59000  1.1.1.2  59000  CTRL IPV4 SCTP
Client = MCP_HA
  TI  conn_id my_ip   my_port peer_ip   peer_port intf   L3   L4
  1  1  9.9.9.2  53000  9.9.9.1  53000  DATA IPV4 UDP_REL
Client = AR
  TI  conn_id my_ip   my_port peer_ip   peer_port intf   L3   L4
  2  0  0.0.0.0  0  0.0.0.0  0  NONE IN NONE L3 NONE L4
Client = CF
  TI  conn_id my_ip   my_port peer_ip   peer_port intf   L3   L4
  3  0  9.9.9.2  59001  9.9.9.1  59001  DATA IPV4 SCTP
```

The following example shows configuration details of redundancy application transport group 2:

```
Router# show redundancy application transport group 2
Transport Information for RG (2)
Client = RF
  TI  conn_id my_ip   my_port peer_ip   peer_port intf   L3   L4
  8  0  1.1.1.1  59004  1.1.1.2  59004  CTRL IPV4 SCTP
Client = MCP_HA
  TI  conn_id my_ip   my_port peer_ip   peer_port intf   L3   L4
  9  1  9.9.9.2  53002  9.9.9.1  53002  DATA IPV4 UDP_REL
Client = AR
  TI  conn_id my_ip   my_port peer_ip   peer_port intf   L3   L4
 10  0  0.0.0.0  0  0.0.0.0  0  NONE IN NONE L3 NONE L4
Client = CF
  TI  conn_id my_ip   my_port peer_ip   peer_port intf   L3   L4
 11  0  9.9.9.2  59005  9.9.9.1  59005  DATA IPV4 SCTP
```
The following example shows configuration details of the redundancy application control-interface group:

```
Router# show redundancy application control-interface group
The control interface for rg[1] is GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Interface is Control interface associated with the following protocols: 2 1
BFD Enabled
Interface Neighbors:
Peer: 1.1.1.2 Active RGS: 1 Standby RGS: 2 BFD handle: 0

The control interface for rg[2] is GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Interface is Control interface associated with the following protocols: 2 1
BFD Enabled
Interface Neighbors:
Peer: 1.1.1.2 Active RGS: 1 Standby RGS: 2 BFD handle: 0
```

The following example shows configuration details of the redundancy application control-interface group 1:

```
Router# show redundancy application control-interface group 1
The control interface for rg[1] is GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Interface is Control interface associated with the following protocols: 2 1
BFD Enabled
Interface Neighbors:
Peer: 1.1.1.2 Active RGS: 1 Standby RGS: 2 BFD handle: 0

The control interface for rg[2] is GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Interface is Control interface associated with the following protocols: 2 1
BFD Enabled
Interface Neighbors:
Peer: 1.1.1.2 Active RGS: 1 Standby RGS: 2 BFD handle: 0
```

The following example shows configuration details of the redundancy application control-interface group 2:

```
Router# show redundancy application control-interface group 2
The control interface for rg[2] is GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Interface is Control interface associated with the following protocols: 2 1
BFD Enabled
Interface Neighbors:
Peer: 1.1.1.2 Active RGS: 1 Standby RGS: 2 BFD handle: 0
```

The following example shows configuration details of the redundancy application faults group:

```
Router# show redundancy application faults group
Faults states Group 1 info:
Runtime priority: [50]
RG Faults RG State: Up.
Total # of switchovers due to faults: 0
Total # of down/up state changes due to faults: 2
Faults states Group 2 info:
Runtime priority: [135]
RG Faults RG State: Up.
Total # of switchovers due to faults: 0
Total # of down/up state changes due to faults: 2
```

The following example shows configuration details specific to redundancy application faults group 1:

```
Router# show redundancy application faults group 1
Faults states Group 1 info:
Runtime priority: [50]
RG Faults RG State: Up.
Total # of switchovers due to faults: 0
Total # of down/up state changes due to faults: 2
```

The following example shows configuration details specific to redundancy application faults group 2:

```
Router# show redundancy application faults group 2
Faults states Group 2 info:
Runtime priority: [135]
RG Faults RG State: Up.
Total # of switchovers due to faults: 0
Total # of down/up state changes due to faults: 2
```

The following example shows configuration details for the redundancy application protocol group:
Router# show redundancy application protocol group

RG Protocol RG 1
--------------
Role: Standby
Negotiation: Enabled
Priority: 50
Protocol state: Standby-hot
Ctrl Intf(s) state: Up
Active Peer: address 1.1.1.2, priority 150, intf Gi0/0/0
Standby Peer: Local
Log counters:
role change to active: 0
role change to standby: 1
disable events: rg down state 1, rg shut 0
ctrl intf events: up 2, down 1, admin_down 1
reload events: local request 0, peer Request 0

RG Media Context for RG 1
--------------------------
Ctx State: Standby
Protocol ID: 1
Media type: Default
Control Interface: GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Current Hello timer: 3000
Configured Hello timer: 3000, Hold timer: 10000
Peer Hello timer: 3000, Peer Hold timer: 10000
Stats:
Pkts 117, Bytes 7254, HA Seq 0, Seq Number 117, Pkt Loss 0
Authentication not configured
Authentication Failure: 0
Reload Peer: TX 0, RX 0
Resign: TX 0, RX 0
Active Peer: Present. Hold Timer: 10000
Pkts 115, Bytes 3910, HA Seq 0, Seq Number 1453975, Pkt Loss 0

RG Protocol RG 2
--------------
Role: Active
Negotiation: Enabled
Priority: 135
Protocol state: Active
Ctrl Intf(s) state: Up
Active Peer: Local
Standby Peer: address 1.1.1.2, priority 130, intf Gi0/0/0
Log counters:
role change to active: 1
role change to standby: 1
disable events: rg down state 1, rg shut 0
ctrl intf events: up 2, down 1, admin_down 1
reload events: local request 0, peer Request 0

RG Media Context for RG 2
--------------------------
Ctx State: Active
Protocol ID: 2
Media type: Default
Control Interface: GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Current Hello timer: 3000
Configured Hello timer: 3000, Hold timer: 10000
Peer Hello timer: 3000, Peer Hold timer: 10000
Stats:
Pkts 118, Bytes 7316, HA Seq 0, Seq Number 118, Pkt Loss 0
Authentication not configured
Authentication Failure: 0
Reload Peer: TX 0, RX 0
Resign: TX 0, RX 1
Standby Peer: Present. Hold Timer: 10000
Pkt 102, Bytes 3468, HA Seq 0, Seq Number 1453977, Pkt Loss 0

The following example shows configuration details for the redundancy application protocol group 1:

Router# show redundancy application protocol group 1
RG Protocol RG 1
------------------
Role: Standby
Negotiation: Enabled
Priority: 50
Protocol state: Standby-hot
Ctrl Intf(s) state: Up
Active Peer: address 1.1.1.2, priority 150, intf Gi0/0/0
Standby Peer: Local
Log counters:
role change to active: 0
role change to standby: 1
disable events: rg down state 1, rg shut 0
ctrl intf events: up 2, down 1, admin_down 1
reload events: local request 0, peer request 0

RG Media Context for RG 1
------------------------
Ctx State: Standby
Protocol ID: 1
Media type: Default
Control Interface: GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Current Hello timer: 3000
Configured Hello timer: 3000, Hold timer: 10000
Peer Hello timer: 3000, Peer Hold timer: 10000
Stats:
Pkt 120, Bytes 7440, HA Seq 0, Seq Number 120, Pkt Loss 0
Authentication not configured
Authentication Failure: 0
Reload Peer: TX 0, RX 0
Resign: TX 0, RX 0
Active Peer: Present. Hold Timer: 10000
Pkt 118, Bytes 4012, HA Seq 0, Seq Number 1453978, Pkt Loss 0

The following example shows configuration details for the redundancy application protocol group 2:

Router# show redundancy application protocol group 2
RG Protocol RG 2
------------------
Role: Active
Negotiation: Enabled
Priority: 135
Protocol state: Active
Ctrl Intf(s) state: Up
Active Peer: Local
Standby Peer: address 1.1.1.2, priority 130, intf Gi0/0/0
Log counters:
role change to active: 1
role change to standby: 1
disable events: rg down state 1, rg shut 0
ctrl intf events: up 2, down 1, admin_down 1
reload events: local request 0, peer request 0

RG Media Context for RG 2
------------------------
Verifying Interchassis High Availability

Ctx State: Active
Protocol ID: 2
Media type: Default
Control Interface: GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Current Hello timer: 3000
Configured Hello timer: 3000, Hold timer: 10000
Peer Hello timer: 3000, Peer Hold timer: 10000
Stats:
Pkts 123, Bytes 7626, HA Seq 0, Seq Number 123, Pkt Loss 0
Authentication not configured
Authentication Failure: 0
Reload Peer: TX 0, RX 0
Resign: TX 0, RX 1
Standby Peer: Present. Hold Timer: 10000
Pkts 107, Bytes 3638, HA Seq 0, Seq Number 1453982, Pkt Loss 0

The following example shows configuration details for the redundancy application protocol 1:

Router# show redundancy application protocol 1
Protocol id: 1, name: rg-protocol-1
BFD: ENABLE
Hello timer in msecs: 3000
Hold timer in msecs: 10000

The following example shows configuration details for redundancy application interface manager group:

Router# show redundancy application if-mgr group
RG ID: 1
----------------
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/3.152
---------------------------------------
VMAC 0007.b421.4e21
VIP 55.1.1.255
Shut shut
Decrement 10
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/2.152
---------------------------------------
VMAC 0007.b421.5209
VIP 45.1.1.255
Shut shut
Decrement 10

RG ID: 2
----------------
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/3.166
---------------------------------------
VMAC 0007.b422.14d6
VIP 4.1.255.254
Shut no shut
Decrement 10
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/2.166
---------------------------------------
VMAC 0007.b422.0d06
VIP 3.1.255.254
The following examples shows configuration details for redundancy application interface manager group 1 and group 2:

Router# show redundancy application if-mgr group 1

RG ID: 1

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/3.152
---------------------------------------
VMAC 0007.b421.4e21
VIP  55.1.1.255
Shut  no shut
Decrement 10

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/2.152
---------------------------------------
VMAC 0007.b421.5209
VIP  45.1.1.255
Shut  no shut
Decrement 10

The following example shows configuration details for redundancy application data-interface group:

Router# show redundancy application data-interface group

The data interface for rg[1] is GigabitEthernet0/0/1
The data interface for rg[2] is GigabitEthernet0/0/1

The following examples show configuration details specific to redundancy application data-interface group 1 and group 2:

Router# show redundancy application data-interface group 1

The data interface for rg[1] is GigabitEthernet0/0/1

Router # show redundancy application data-interface group 2

The data interface for rg[2] is GigabitEthernet0/0/1

Verifying BFD Offload

Use the following commands to verify and monitor BFD offload feature on your router.
Configuration of BFD Offload is described in Configuring Bidirectional Forwarding, on page 194.

- `show bfd neighbors [details]`
- `debug bfd [packet | event]`
- `debug bfd event`

The `show bfd neighbors` command displays the BFD adjacency database:

```
Router# show bfd neighbor
IPv4 Sessions        | LD/RD  | RH/RS | State | Int
192.10.1.1          | 362/1277 | Up    | Up    | Gi0/0/1.2
192.10.2.1          | 445/1278 | Up    | Up    | Gi0/0/1.3
192.10.3.1          | 1093/961 | Up    | Up    | Gi0/0/1.4
192.10.4.1          | 1244/946 | Up    | Up    | Gi0/0/1.5
192.10.5.1          | 1094/937 | Up    | Up    | Gi0/0/1.6
192.10.6.1          | 1097/1260 | Up  | Up    | Gi0/0/1.7
192.10.7.1          | 1098/929 | Up    | Up    | Gi0/0/1.8
192.10.8.1          | 1111/928 | Up    | Up    | Gi0/0/1.9
192.10.9.1          | 1100/1254 | Up  | Up    | Gi0/0/1.10
```

The `debug bfd neighbor detail` command displays the debugging information related to BFD packets:

```
Router# show bfd neighbor detail
IPv4 Sessions        | LD/RD  | RH/RS | State | Int
192.10.1.1          | 362/1277 | Up    | Up    | Gi0/0/1.2
Session state is UP and not using echo function.
Session Host: Hardware
OurAddr: 192.10.1.2
Handle: 33
Local Diag: 0, Demand mode: 0, Poll bit: 0
MinTxInt: 50000, MinRxInt: 50000, Multiplier: 3
Received MinRxInt: 50000, Received Multiplier: 3
Holddown (hits): 0(0), Hello (hits): 50(0)
Rx Count: 3465, Rx Interval (ms) min/max/avg: 42/51/46
Tx Count: 3466, Tx Interval (ms) min/max/avg: 39/52/46
Elapsed time watermarks: 0 0 (last: 0)
Registered protocols: CEF EIGRP
Uptime: 00:02:50
Last packet: Version: 1 - Diagnostic: 0
State bit: Up - Demand bit: 0
Poll bit: 0 - Final bit: 0
C bit: 1
Multiplier: 3 - Length: 24
My Discr.: 1277 - Your Discr.: 362
Min tx interval: 50000 - Min rx interval: 50000
Min Echo interval: 0
```

The `show bfd summary` command displays the BFD summary:

```
Router# show bfd summary
Session | Up | Down
Total   | 400 | 400 | 0
```
The `show bfd drops` command displays the number of packets dropped in BFD:

```
Router# show bfd drops
BFD Drop Statistics
                     IPV4   IPV6   IPV4-M  IPV6-M  MPLS_PW  MPLS_TP_LSP
Invalid TTL          0       0       0       0       0       0
BFD Not Configured   0       0       0       0       0       0
No BFD Adjacency     33      0       0       0       0       0
Invalid Header Bits  0       0       0       0       0       0
Invalid Discriminator 1      0       0       0       0       0
Session AdminDown    94      0       0       0       0       0
Authen invalid BFD ver 0     0       0       0       0       0
Authen invalid len   0       0       0       0       0       0
Authen invalid seq  0       0       0       0       0       0
Authen failed        0       0       0       0       0       0
```

The `debug bfd packet` command displays debugging information about BFD control packets:

```
Router# debug bfd packet
*Nov 12 23:08:27.982: BFD-DEBUG Packet: Rx IP:192.11.22.1 ld/rd:1941/0 diag:0 (No Diagnostic)
      Down C cnt:4 ttl:254 (0)
*Nov 12 23:08:27.982: BFD-DEBUG Packet: Tx IP:192.11.22.1 ld/rd:983/1941 diag:3 (Neighbor Signaled Session Down) Init C cnt:44 (0)
*Nov 12 23:08:28.007: BFD-DEBUG Packet: Rx IP:192.11.22.1 ld/rd:983/1941 diag:0 (No Diagnostic)
      Up C cnt:0 (0)
*Nov 12 23:08:28.007: BFD-DEBUG Packet: Tx IP:192.11.22.1 ld/rd:983/1941 diag:0 (No Diagnostic)
      Up F C cnt:0 (0)
```

The `debug bfd event` displays debugging information about BFD state transitions:

```
Router# debug bfd event
```
### Additional References

The following documents provide information related to the BFD feature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configuring Stateful Interchassis Configuration.</td>
<td><strong>Security Configuration Guide: Zone-Based Policy Firewall, Cisco IOS XE Release 3S</strong> at:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Related Topic</td>
<td>Document Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring Call Home

The Call Home feature provides e-mail-based and web-based notification of critical system events. A versatile range of message formats are available for optimal compatibility with pager services, standard e-mail, or XML-based automated parsing applications. Common uses of this feature may include direct paging of a network support engineer, e-mail notification to a Network Operations Center, XML delivery to a support website, and use of Cisco Smart Call Home services for direct case generation with the Cisco Systems Technical Assistance Center (TAC).

This chapter describes how to configure the Call Home feature in Cisco IOS Release 15.4(3)S and later releases for the Cisco ISR 4400 Series and Cisco ISR 4300 Series Routers.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- Finding Feature Information, on page 207
- Prerequisites for Call Home, on page 207
- Information About Call Home, on page 208
- How to Configure Call Home, on page 210
- Configuring Diagnostic Signatures, on page 232
- Displaying Call Home Configuration Information, on page 240
- Default Call Home Settings, on page 246
- Alert Group Trigger Events and Commands, on page 246
- Message Contents, on page 253
- Additional References, on page 261

Finding Feature Information

Your software release may not support all of the features documented in this module. For the latest feature information and caveats, see the release notes for your platform and software release.

Use the Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco IOS and Catalyst OS software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, see http://tools.cisco.com/ITDIT/CFN/. A Cisco account is not required to access the Cisco Feature Navigator.

Prerequisites for Call Home

The following are the prerequisites before you configure Call Home:
Information About Call Home

The Call Home feature can deliver alert messages containing information on configuration, environmental conditions, inventory, syslog, snapshot, and crash events. It provides these alert messages as either e-mail-based or web-based messages. Multiple message formats are available, allowing for compatibility with pager services, standard e-mail, or XML-based automated parsing applications. This feature can deliver alerts to multiple recipients, referred to as Call Home destination profiles, each with configurable message formats and content categories. A predefined destination profile is provided for sending alerts to the Cisco TAC (callhome@cisco.com). You can also define your own destination profiles.

Flexible message delivery and format options make it easy to integrate specific support requirements.

This section contains the following subsections:

- Benefits of Using Call Home
- Obtaining Smart Call Home Services

Benefits of Using Call Home

The Call Home feature offers the following benefits:

- Multiple message-format options, which include:
  - Short Text—Suitable for pagers or printed reports.
  - Plain Text—Full formatted message information suitable for human reading.
  - XML—Machine-readable format using XML and Adaptive Markup Language (AML) document type definitions (DTDs). The XML format enables communication with the Cisco TAC.
- Multiple concurrent message destinations.
- Multiple message categories including configuration, environmental conditions, inventory, syslog, snapshot, and crash events.
- Filtering of messages by severity and pattern matching.
• Scheduling of periodic message sending.

Obtaining Smart Call Home Services

If you have a service contract directly with Cisco, you can register for the Smart Call Home service. Smart Call Home analyzes Smart Call Home messages and provides background information and recommendations. For known issues, particularly online diagnostics failures, Automatic Service Requests are generated with the Cisco TAC.

Smart Call Home offers the following features:

• Continuous device health monitoring and real-time diagnostic alerts.

• Analysis of Smart Call Home messages and, if needed, Automatic Service Request generation routed to the correct TAC team, including detailed diagnostic information to speed problem resolution.

• Secure message transport directly from your device or through an HTTP proxy server or a downloadable Transport Gateway (TG). You can use a TG aggregation point to support multiple devices or in cases where security dictates that your devices may not be connected directly to the Internet.

• Web-based access to Smart Call Home messages and recommendations, inventory, and configuration information for all Smart Call Home devices provides access to associated field notices, security advisories, and end-of-life information.

You need the following items to register for Smart Call Home:

• SMARTnet contract number for your router

• Your e-mail address

• Your Cisco.com username

For more information about Smart Call Home, see https://supportforums.cisco.com/community/4816/smart-call-home.

Anonymous Reporting

Smart Call Home is a service capability included with many Cisco service contracts and is designed to assist customers resolve problems more quickly. In addition, the information gained from crash messages helps Cisco understand equipment and issues occurring in the field. If you decide not to use Smart Call Home, you can still enable Anonymous Reporting to allow Cisco to securely receive minimal error and health information from the device. If you enable Anonymous Reporting, your customer identity will remain anonymous, and no identifying information will be sent.

Note

When you enable Anonymous Reporting, you acknowledge your consent to transfer the specified data to Cisco or to vendors operating on behalf of Cisco (including countries outside the United States). Cisco maintains the privacy of all customers. For information about how Cisco treats personal information, see the Cisco Privacy Statement at http://www.cisco.com/web/siteassets/legal/privacy.html.

When Call Home is configured in an anonymous way, only crash, inventory, and test messages are sent to Cisco. No customer identifying information is sent.
For more information about what is sent in these messages, see Alert Group Trigger Events and Commands, on page 246.

How to Configure Call Home

The following sections show how to configure Call Home using a single command:

- Configuring Smart Call Home (Single Command), on page 210
- Configuring and Enabling Smart Call Home, on page 211

The following sections show detailed or optional configurations:

- Enabling and Disabling Call Home, on page 212
- Configuring Contact Information, on page 212
- Configuring Destination Profiles, on page 214
- Subscribing to Alert Groups, on page 217
- Configuring General E-Mail Options, on page 222
- Specifying Rate Limit for Sending Call Home Messages, on page 224
- Specifying HTTP Proxy Server, on page 225
- Enabling AAA Authorization to Run IOS Commands for Call Home Messages, on page 226
- Configuring Syslog Throttling, on page 226
- Configuring Call Home Data Privacy, on page 227
- Sending Call Home Communications Manually, on page 228

Configuring Smart Call Home (Single Command)

To enable all Call Home basic configurations using a single command, perform the following steps:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **configure terminal**
2. **call-home reporting {anonymous | contact-email-addr email-address} [http-proxy {ipv4-address | ipv6-address | name} port port-number]**

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enters configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring Call Home

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 call-home reporting {anonymous</td>
<td>contact-email-addr email-address} [http-proxy {ipv4-address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Router(config)# call-home reporting contact-email-addr <a href="mailto:email@company.com">email@company.com</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **anonymous**—Enables Call-Home TAC profile to send only crash, inventory, and test messages and send the messages anonymously.
- **contact-email-addr**—Enables Smart Call Home service full reporting capability and sends a full inventory message from Call-Home TAC profile to Smart Call Home server to start full registration process.
- **http-proxy {ipv4-address | ipv6-address | name}**—Configures an ipv4 or ipv6 address or server name. Maximum length is 64 characters.
- **port port-number**—Port number. Range is 1 to 65535.

**Note**
The HTTP proxy option allows you to make use of your own proxy server to buffer and secure Internet connections from your devices.

**Note**
After successfully enabling Call Home either in anonymous or full registration mode using the call-home reporting command, an inventory message is sent out. If Call Home is enabled in full registration mode, a Full Inventory message for full registration mode is sent out. If Call Home is enabled in anonymous mode, an anonymous inventory message is sent out. For more information about what is sent in these messages, see Alert Group Trigger Events and Commands, on page 246.

Configuring and Enabling Smart Call Home

For application and configuration information about the Cisco Smart Call Home service, see the “Getting Started” section of the Smart Call Home User Guide at https://supportforums.cisco.com/community/4816/smart-call-home. This document includes configuration examples for sending Smart Call Home messages directly from your device or through a transport gateway (TG) aggregation point.

**Note**
For security reasons, we recommend that you use the HTTPS transport options, due to the additional payload encryption that HTTPS offers. The Transport Gateway software is downloadable from Cisco.com and is available if you require an aggregation point or a proxy for connection to the Internet.
Enabling and Disabling Call Home

To enable or disable the Call Home feature, perform the following steps:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. service call-home
3. no service call-home

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 service call-home</td>
<td>Enables the Call Home feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# service call-home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 no service call-home</td>
<td>Disables the Call Home feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# no service call-home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring Contact Information

Each router must include a contact e-mail address (except if Call Home is enabled in anonymous mode). You can optionally include a phone number, street address, contract ID, customer ID, and site ID.

To assign the contact information, perform the following steps:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. call-home
3. contact-email-addr email-address
4. phone-number +phone-number
5. street-address street-address
6. customer-id text
7. site-id text
8. contract-id text
### Detailed Steps

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Router# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><code>call-home</code></td>
<td>Enters the Call Home configuration submode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Router(config)# call-home</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td><code>contact-email-addr email-address</code></td>
<td>Designates your e-mail address. Enter up to 200 characters in e-mail address format with no spaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Router(cfg-call-home)# contact-email-addr username@example.com</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td><code>phone-number +phone-number</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Assigns your phone number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Router(cfg-call-home)# phone-number +1-800-555-4567</code></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong>: The number must begin with a plus (+) prefix and may contain only dashes (-) and numbers. Enter up to 17 characters. If you include spaces, you must enclose your entry in quotes (&quot;&quot;').</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td><code>street-address street-address</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Assigns your street address where RMA equipment can be shipped. Enter up to 200 characters. If you include spaces, you must enclose your entry in quotes (&quot;&quot;').</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Router(cfg-call-home)# street-address &quot;1234 Picaboo Street, Any city, Any state, 12345&quot;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td><code>customer-id text</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Identifies customer ID. Enter up to 64 characters. If you include spaces, you must enclose your entry in quotes (&quot;&quot;').</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Router(cfg-call-home)# customer-id Customer1234</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td><code>site-id text</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Identifies customer site ID. Enter up to 200 characters. If you include spaces, you must enclose your entry in quotes (&quot;&quot;').</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Router(cfg-call-home)# site-id Site1ManhattanNY</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 8</td>
<td><code>contract-id text</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Identifies your contract ID for the router. Enter up to 64 characters. If you include spaces, you must enclose your entry in quotes (&quot;&quot;').</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Router(cfg-call-home)# contract-id Company1234</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

The following example shows how to configure contact information:

```
Router# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Router(config)# call-home
Router(config)# contact-email-addr username@example.com
```
A destination profile contains the required delivery information for an alert notification. At least one destination profile is required. You can configure multiple destination profiles of one or more types.

You can create and define a new destination profile or copy and use the predefined destination profile. If you define a new destination profile, you must assign a profile name.

If you use the Cisco Smart Call Home service, the destination profile must use the XML message format.

You can configure the following attributes for a destination profile:

- **Profile name**—String that uniquely identifies each user-defined destination profile. The profile name is limited to 31 characters and is not case-sensitive.

  You cannot use **all** as a profile name.

- **Transport method**—Transport mechanism, either e-mail or HTTP (including HTTPS), for delivery of alerts.

  - For user-defined destination profiles, e-mail is the default, and you can enable either or both transport mechanisms. If you disable both methods, e-mail is enabled.
  
  - For the predefined Cisco TAC profile, you can enable either transport mechanism, but not both.

- **Destination address**—The actual address related to the transport method to which the alert should be sent.

- **Message formatting**—The message format used for sending the alert. The format options for a user-defined destination profile are long-text, short-text, or XML. The default is XML. For the predefined Cisco TAC profile, only XML is allowed.

- **Message size**—The maximum destination message size. The valid range is 50 to 3,145,728 Bytes. The default is 3,145,728 Bytes.

  Anonymous reporting—you can choose for your customer identity to remain anonymous, and no identifying information is sent.

  - **Subscribing to interesting alert-groups**—You can choose to subscribe to alert-groups highlighting your interests.

This section contains the following subsections:

- Creating a New Destination Profile, on page 215
Creating a New Destination Profile

To create and configure a new destination profile, perform the following steps:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. call-home
3. profile name
4. [no] destination transport-method {email | http}
5. destination address {email email-address | http url}
6. destination preferred-msg-format {long-text | short-text | xml}
7. destination message-size-limit bytes
8. active
9. end
10. show call-home profile \{name | all\}

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | configure terminal  
Example:  
Router# configure terminal | Enters configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | call-home  
Example:  
Router(config)# call-home | Enters the Call Home configuration submode. |
| **Step 3** | profile name  
Example:  
Router(config-call-home)# profile profile1 | Enters the Call Home destination profile configuration submode for the specified destination profile. If the specified destination profile does not exist, it is created. |
| **Step 4** | [no] destination transport-method {email | http}  
Example:  
Router(cfg-call-home-profile)# destination transport-method email | (Optional) Enables the message transport method. The no option disables the method. |
| **Step 5** | destination address {email email-address | http url}  
Example:  
Router(cfg-call-home-profile)# destination address email myaddress@example.com | Configures the destination e-mail address or URL to which Call Home messages are sent.  
**Note** | When entering a destination URL, include either http:// or https://, depending on whether the server is a secure server. |
### Configuring Call Home

**Copying a Destination Profile**

To create a new destination profile by copying an existing profile, perform the following steps:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **configure terminal**
2. **call-home**
3. **copy profile** `source-profile` `target-profile`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> call-home</td>
<td>Enters the Call Home configuration submode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# call-home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Setting Profiles to Anonymous Mode

To set an anonymous profile, perform the following steps:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `configure terminal`
2. `call-home`
3. `profile name`
4. `anonymous-reporting-only`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td><code>call-home</code></td>
<td>Enters the Call Home configuration submode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router(config)# call-home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td><code>profile name</code></td>
<td>Enables the profile configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router(cfg-call-home) profile Profile-1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td><code>anonymous-reporting-only</code></td>
<td>Sets the profile to anonymous mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router(cfg-call-home-profile)# anonymous-reporting-only</td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> By default, Call Home sends a full report of all types of events subscribed in the profile. When <code>anonymous-reporting-only</code> is set, only crash, inventory, and test messages will be sent.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subscribing to Alert Groups

An alert group is a predefined subset of Call Home alerts supported in all routers. Different types of Call Home alerts are grouped into different alert groups depending on their type. The following alert groups are available:

- Crash
This section contains the following subsections:

- Periodic Notification, on page 220
- Message Severity Threshold, on page 221
- Configuring a Snapshot Command List, on page 221

The triggering events for each alert group are listed in Alert Group Trigger Events and Commands, on page 246, and the contents of the alert group messages are listed in Message Contents, on page 253.

You can select one or more alert groups to be received by a destination profile.

---

**Note**

A Call Home alert is only sent to destination profiles that have subscribed to the alert group containing that Call Home alert. In addition, the alert group must be enabled.

---

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `configure terminal`
2. `call-home`
3. `alert-group {all | configuration | environment | inventory | syslog | crash | snapshot}`
4. `profile name`
5. `subscribe-to-alert-group all`
6. `subscribe-to-alert-group configuration [periodic {daily hh:mm | monthly date hh:mm | weekly day hh:mm}]`
7. `subscribe-to-alert-group environment [severity {catastrophic | disaster | fatal | critical | major | minor | warning | notification | normal | debugging}]`
8. `subscribe-to-alert-group inventory [periodic {daily hh:mm | monthly date hh:mm | weekly day hh:mm}]`
9. `subscribe-to-alert-group syslog [severity {catastrophic | disaster | fatal | critical | major | minor | warning | notification | normal | debugging}]`
10. `subscribe-to-alert-group crash`
11. `subscribe-to-alert-group snapshot periodic [daily hh:mm | hourly mm | interval mm | monthly date hh:mm | weekly day hh:mm]`
12. `exit`
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**
configure terminal
Example:
Router# configure terminal | Enters configuration mode. |
| **Step 2**
call-home
Example:
Router(config)# call-home | Enters Call Home configuration submode. |
| **Step 3**
alert-group {all | configuration | environment | inventory | syslog | crash | snapshot}
Example:
Router(cfg-call-home)# alert-group all | Enables the specified alert group. Use the keyword all to enable all alert groups. By default, all alert groups are enabled. |
| **Step 4**
profile name
Example:
Router(cfg-call-home)# profile profile1 | Enters the Call Home destination profile configuration submode for the specified destination profile. |
| **Step 5**
subscribe-to-alert-group all
Example:
Router(cfg-call-home-profile)# subscribe-to-alert-group all | Subscribes to all available alert groups using the lowest severity.
You can subscribe to alert groups individually by specific type, as described in Step 6 through Step 11.

**Note** This command subscribes to the syslog debug default severity. This causes a large number of syslog messages to generate. You should subscribe to alert groups individually, using appropriate severity levels and patterns when possible. |
| **Step 6**
subscribe-to-alert-group configuration [periodic {daily hh:mm | monthly date hh:mm | weekly day hh:mm}]
Example:
Router(cfg-call-home-profile)# subscribe-to-alert-group configuration periodic daily 12:00 | Subscribes this destination profile to the Configuration alert group. The Configuration alert group can be configured for periodic notification, as described in Periodic Notification, on page 220. |
| **Step 7**
subscribe-to-alert-group environment [severity {catastrophic | disaster | fatal | critical | major | minor | warning | notification | normal | debugging}]
Example:
Router(cfg-call-home-profile)# subscribe-to-alert-group environment severity major | Subscribes this destination profile to the Environment alert group. The Environment alert group can be configured to filter messages based on severity, as described in Message Severity Threshold, on page 221. |
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 8 | `subscribe-to-alert-group inventory [periodic {daily hh:mm | monthly date hh:mm | weekly day hh:mm}]` | Subscribes this destination profile to the Inventory alert group. The Inventory alert group can be configured for periodic notification, as described in Periodic Notification, on page 220.  
Example:  
Router(cfg-call-home-profile)# `subscribe-to-alert-group inventory periodic monthly 1 12:00` |
| Step 9 | `subscribe-to-alert-group syslog [severity {catastrophic | disaster | fatal | critical | major | minor | warning | notification | normal | debugging}]` | Subscribes this destination profile to the Syslog alert group. The Syslog alert group can be configured to filter messages based on severity, as described in Message Severity Threshold, on page 221.  
Example:  
Router(cfg-call-home-profile)# `subscribe-to-alert-group environment severity major` |
| Step 10 | `subscribe-to-alert-group crash` | Subscribes to the Crash alert group in user profile. By default, TAC profile subscribes to the Crash alert group and cannot be unsubscribed.  
Example:  
Router(cfg-call-home-profile)# `[no | default] subscribe-to-alert-group crash` |
| Step 11 | `subscribe-to-alert-group snapshot periodic {daily hh:mm | hourly mm | interval mm | monthly date hh:mm | weekly day hh:mm}` | Subscribes this destination profile to the Snapshot alert group. The Snapshot alert group can be configured for periodic notification, as described in Periodic Notification, on page 220.  
Example:  
Router(cfg-call-home-profile)# `subscribe-to-alert-group snapshot periodic daily 12:00` |
| Step 12 | `exit` | Exits the Call Home destination profile configuration submode.  
Example:  
Router(cfg-call-home-profile)# `exit` |

### Periodic Notification

When you subscribe a destination profile to the Configuration, Inventory, or Snapshot alert group, you can choose to receive the alert group messages asynchronously or periodically at a specified time. The sending period can be one of the following:

- **Daily**—Specifies the time of day to send, using an hour:minute format `hh:mm`, with a 24-hour clock (for example, `14:30`).
• Weekly—Specifies the day of the week and time of day in the format day hh:mm, where the day of the week is spelled out (for example, Monday).

• Monthly—Specifies the numeric date, from 1 to 31, and the time of day, in the format date hh:mm.

• Interval—Specifies the interval at which the periodic message is sent, from 1 to 60 minutes.

• Hourly—Specifies the minute of the hour at which the periodic message is sent, from 0 to 59 minutes.

**Note**

Hourly and by interval periodic notifications are available for the Snapshot alert group only.

**Message Severity Threshold**

When you subscribe a destination profile to the Environment or Syslog alert group, you can set a threshold for the sending of alert group messages based on the level of severity of the message. Any message with a value lower than the destination profile specified threshold is not sent to the destination.

The severity threshold is configured using the keywords listed in the following table. The severity threshold ranges from catastrophic (level 9, highest level of urgency) to debugging (level 0, lowest level of urgency). If no severity threshold is configured for the Syslog or Environment alert groups, the default is debugging (level 0). The Configuration and Inventory alert groups do not allow severity configuration; severity is always set as normal.

**Table 13: Severity and Syslog Level Mapping**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Keyword</th>
<th>Syslog Level</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>catastrophic</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Network-wide catastrophic failure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>disaster</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Significant network impact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>fatal</td>
<td>Emergency (0)</td>
<td>System is unusable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>critical</td>
<td>Alert (1)</td>
<td>Critical conditions, immediate attention needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>major</td>
<td>Critical (2)</td>
<td>Major conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>minor</td>
<td>Error (3)</td>
<td>Minor conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>warning</td>
<td>Warning (4)</td>
<td>Warning conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>notification</td>
<td>Notice (5)</td>
<td>Basic notification and informational messages. Possibly independently insignificant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>normal</td>
<td>Information (6)</td>
<td>Normal event signifying return to normal state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>debugging</td>
<td>Debug (7)</td>
<td>Debugging messages.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuring a Snapshot Command List**

To configure a snapshot command list, perform the following steps:
**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal  
2. call-home  
3. [no | default] alert-group-config snapshot  
4. [no | default] add-command *command string*  
5. exit

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>call-home</td>
<td>Enters Call Home configuration submode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router(config)# call-home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>[no</td>
<td>default] alert-group-config snapshot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router(cfg-call-home)# alert-group-config snapshot</td>
<td>The no or default command will remove all snapshot command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>[no</td>
<td>default] add-command <em>command string</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router(cfg-call-home-snapshot)# add-command “show version”</td>
<td><em>command string</em>—IOS command. Maximum length is 128.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>exit</td>
<td>Exits and saves the configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router(cfg-call-home-snapshot)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuring General E-Mail Options**

To use the e-mail message transport, you must configure at least one Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) e-mail server address. You can configure the from and reply-to e-mail addresses, and you can specify up to four backup e-mail servers.

Note the following guidelines when configuring general e-mail options:

- Backup e-mail servers can be defined by repeating the **mail-server** command using different priority numbers.

- The **mail-server priority** number parameter can be configured from 1 to 100. The server with the highest priority (lowest priority number) is tried first.

To configure general e-mail options, perform the following steps:
### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `configure terminal`  
2. `call-home`  
3. `mail-server` `\{ipv4-address | ipv6-address | name\} priority number`  
4. `sender from email-address`  
5. `sender reply-to email-address`  
6. `source-interface interface-name`  
7. `vrf vrf-name`  

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | `configure terminal`  
Example:  
`Router# configure terminal` | Enters configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** | `call-home`  
Example:  
`Router(config)# call-home` | Enters Call Home configuration submode. |
| **Step 3** | `mail-server` `\{ipv4-address | ipv6-address | name\} priority number`  
Example:  
`Router(cfg-call-home)# mail-server smtp.example.com priority 1` | Assigns an e-mail server address and its relative priority among configured e-mail servers.  
Provide either of these:  
- The e-mail server’s IP address.  
- The e-mail server’s fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of 64 characters or less.  
Assign a priority number between 1 (highest priority) and 100 (lowest priority). |
| **Step 4** | `sender from email-address`  
Example:  
`Router(cfg-call-home)# sender from username@example.com` | (Optional) Assigns the e-mail address that appears in the from field in Call Home e-mail messages. If no address is specified, the contact e-mail address is used. |
| **Step 5** | `sender reply-to email-address`  
Example:  
`Router(cfg-call-home)# sender reply-to username@example.com` | (Optional) Assigns the e-mail address that appears in the reply-to field in Call Home e-mail messages. |
| **Step 6** | `source-interface interface-name`  
Example:  
`Router(cfg-call-home)# source-interface loopback1` | Assigns the source interface name to send call-home messages.  
- `interface-name`—Source interface name. Maximum length is 64. |
### Specifying Rate Limit for Sending Call Home Messages

To specify the rate limit for sending Call Home messages, perform the following steps:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. Configure terminal
2. Call-home
3. Rate-limit *number*

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>vrf vrf-name</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the VRF instance to send call-home e-mail messages. If no vrf is specified, the global routing table is used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

The following example shows the configuration of general e-mail parameters, including a primary and secondary e-mail server:

```
Router(config)\# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Router(config)# call-home
Router(cfg-call-home)# mail-server smtp.example.com priority 1
Router(cfg-call-home)# mail-server 192.168.0.1 priority 2
Router(cfg-call-home)# sender from username@example.com
Router(cfg-call-home)# sender reply-to username@example.com
Router(cfg-call-home)# source-interface loopback1
Router(cfg-call-home)# vrf vpn1
Router(cfg-call-home)# exit
```

**Specifying Rate Limit for Sending Call Home Messages**

To specify the rate limit for sending Call Home messages, perform the following steps:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. Configure terminal
2. Call-home
3. Rate-limit *number*
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call-home</td>
<td>Enters Call Home configuration submode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# call-home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rate-limit number</td>
<td>Specifies a limit on the number of messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>sent per minute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(cg-config-call-home)</td>
<td>• number—Range is 1 to 60. The default is 20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Specifying HTTP Proxy Server

To specify an HTTP proxy server for sending Call Home HTTP(S) messages to a destination, perform the following steps:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. call-home
3. http-proxy \{ipv4-address | ipv6-address | name\} port port-number

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call-home</td>
<td>Enters Call Home configuration submode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# call-home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>http-proxy {ipv4-address</td>
<td>ipv6-address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(cg-config-call-home)</td>
<td>http-proxy 1.1.1.1 port 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Enabling AAA Authorization to Run IOS Commands for Call Home Messages

To specify an HTTP proxy server for sending Call Home HTTP(S) messages to a destination, perform the following steps:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. configure terminal
2. call-home
3. aaa-authorization
4. aaa-authorization [username username]

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call-home</td>
<td>Enters Call Home configuration submode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# call-home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaa-authorization</td>
<td>Enables AAA authorization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(cfg-call-home)# aaa-authorization</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td>By default, AAA authorization is disabled for Call Home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaa-authorization [username username]</td>
<td>Specifies the username for authorization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(cfg-call-home)# aaa-authorization username user</td>
<td>• username username—Default username is callhome. Maximum length is 64.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring Syslog Throttling

To specify an HTTP proxy server for sending Call Home HTTP(S) messages to a destination, perform the following steps:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. configure terminal
2. call-home
3. [no] syslog-throttling
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call-home</td>
<td>Enters Call Home configuration submode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# call-home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[no] syslog-throttling</td>
<td>Enables or disables call-home syslog message throttling and avoids sending repetitive call-home syslog messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(cfg-call-home)# syslog-throttling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong> By default, syslog message throttling is enabled.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring Call Home Data Privacy

The data-privacy command scrubs data, such as IP addresses, from running configuration files to protect the privacy of customers. Enabling the data-privacy command can affect CPU utilization when scrubbing a large amount of data. Currently, the `show` command output is not being scrubbed except for configuration messages in the outputs for the `show running-config all` and `show startup-config data` commands.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. configure terminal
2. call-home
3. data-privacy {level {normal | high} | hostname}

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call-home</td>
<td>Enters Call Home configuration submode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# call-home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>data-privacy {level {normal</td>
<td>high}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(cfg-call-home)# data-privacy level high</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong> Enabling the data-privacy command can affect CPU utilization when scrubbing a large amount of data.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• normal—Scrubs all normal-level commands.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sending Call Home Communications Manually

You can manually send several types of Call Home communications. To send Call Home communications, perform the tasks in this section. This section contains the following subsections:

• Sending a Call Home Test Message Manually, on page 228
• Sending Call Home Alert Group Messages Manually, on page 228
• Submitting Call Home Analysis and Report Requests, on page 229
• Manually Sending Command Output Message for One Command or a Command List, on page 231

Sending a Call Home Test Message Manually

You can use the call-home test command to send a user-defined Call Home test message.

To manually send a Call Home test message, perform the following step:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. call-home test ["test-message"] profile name

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 call-home test [&quot;test-message&quot;] profile name</td>
<td>Sends a test message to the specified destination profile. The user-defined test message text is optional but must be enclosed in quotes (&quot;&quot;&quot;&quot;) if it contains spaces. If no user-defined message is configured, a default message is sent.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sending Call Home Alert Group Messages Manually

You can use the call-home send command to manually send a specific alert group message.

Note the following guidelines when manually sending a Call Home alert group message:

• Only the crash, snapshot, configuration, and inventory alert groups can be sent manually.
• When you manually trigger a crash, snapshot, configuration, or inventory alert group message and you specify a destination profile name, a message is sent to the destination profile regardless of the profile’s active status, subscription status, or severity setting.

• When you manually trigger a crash, snapshot, configuration, or inventory alert group message and do not specify a destination profile name, a message is sent to all active profiles that have either a normal or periodic subscription to the specified alert group.

To manually trigger Call Home alert group messages, perform the following steps:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `call-home send alert-group snapshot [profile name]`
2. `call-home send alert-group crash [profile name]`
3. `call-home send alert-group configuration [profile name]`
4. `call-home send alert-group inventory [profile name]`

**DETAILED STEPS**

| Step 1 | `call-home send alert-group snapshot [profile name]` | Sends a snapshot alert group message to one destination profile if specified, or to all subscribed destination profiles. |
| Example: | Router# call-home send alert-group snapshot profile1 |
| Step 2 | `call-home send alert-group crash [profile name]` | Sends a crash alert group message to one destination profile if specified, or to all subscribed destination profiles. |
| Example: | Router# call-home send alert-group crash profile1 |
| Step 3 | `call-home send alert-group configuration [profile name]` | Sends a configuration alert group message to one destination profile if specified, or to all subscribed destination profiles. |
| Example: | Router# call-home send alert-group configuration profile1 |
| Step 4 | `call-home send alert-group inventory [profile name]` | Sends an inventory alert group message to one destination profile if specified, or to all subscribed destination profiles. |
| Example: | Router# call-home send alert-group inventory profile1 |

**Submitting Call Home Analysis and Report Requests**

You can use the `call-home request` command to submit information about your system to Cisco to receive helpful analysis and report information specific to your system. You can request a variety of reports, including security alerts, known bugs, best practices, and command references.

Note the following guidelines when manually sending Call Home analysis and report requests:
If a **profile name** is specified, the request is sent to the profile. If no profile is specified, the request is sent to the Cisco TAC profile. The recipient profile does not need to be enabled for the call-home request. The profile should specify the e-mail address where the transport gateway is configured so that the request message can be forwarded to the Cisco TAC and the user can receive the reply from the Smart Call Home service.

The **ccoid user-id** is the registered identifier of the Smart Call Home user. If the **user-id** is specified, the response is sent to the e-mail address of the registered user. If no **user-id** is specified, the response is sent to the contact e-mail address of the device.

Based on the keyword specifying the type of report requested, the following information is returned:
- **config-sanity**—Information on best practices as related to the current running configuration.
- **bugs-list**—Known bugs in the running version and in the currently applied features.
- **command-reference**—Reference links to all commands in the running configuration.
- **product-advisory**—Product Security Incident Response Team (PSIRT) notices, End of Life (EOL) or End of Sales (EOS) notices, or field notices (FN) that may affect the devices in your network.

To submit a request for analysis and report information from the Cisco Output Interpreter tool, perform the following steps:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `call-home request output-analysis "show-command" [profile name] [ccoid user-id]`
2. `call-home request [config-sanity | bugs-list | command-reference | product-advisory] [profile name] [ccoid user-id]`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>Sends the output of the specified show command for analysis. The show command must be contained in quotes (&quot;&quot;&quot;).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Example:**
Router# call-home request output-analysis "show diag" profile TG |

| Step 2 | Sends the output of a predetermined set of commands such as the **show running-config all**, **show version** or **show module** commands, for analysis. In addition, the **call home request product-advisory** sub-command includes all inventory alert group commands. The keyword specified **after request** specifies the type of report requested. |
| **Example:**
Router# call-home request config-sanity profile TG |

**Example**

The following example shows a request for analysis of a user-specified **show** command:

Router# call-home request output-analysis "show diag" profile TG
Manually Sending Command Output Message for One Command or a Command List

You can use the `call-home send` command to execute an IOS command or a list of IOS commands and send the command output through HTTP or e-mail protocol.

Note the following guidelines when sending the output of a command:

- The specified IOS command or list of IOS commands can be any run command, including commands for all modules. The command must be contained in quotes (""').
- If the e-mail option is selected using the “email” keyword and an e-mail address is specified, the command output is sent to that address. If neither the e-mail nor the HTTP option is specified, the output is sent in long-text format with the specified service request number to the Cisco TAC (attach@cisco.com).
- If neither the “email” nor the “http” keyword is specified, the service request number is required for both long-text and XML message formats and is provided in the subject line of the e-mail.
- If the HTTP option is specified, the CiscoTac-1 profile destination HTTP or HTTPS URL is used as the destination. The destination e-mail address can be specified so that Smart Call Home can forward the message to the e-mail address. The user must specify either the destination e-mail address or an SR number but they can also specify both.

To execute a command and send the command output, perform the following step:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `call-home send {cli command | cli list} [email email msg-format {long-text | xml} | http {destination-email-address email}] [tac-service-request SR#]`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> `call-home send {cli command</td>
<td>cli list} [email email msg-format {long-text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router# call-home send “show version;show running-config;show inventory” email <a href="mailto:support@example.com">support@example.com</a> msg-format xml</td>
<td>**{cli command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>**email email msg-format {long-text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>http {destination-email-address email}</strong>—If the http option is selected, the command output will be sent to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Call Home

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Smart Call Home backend server (URL specified in TAC profile) in XML format.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**destination-email-address** *email* can be specified so that the backend server can forward the message to the e-mail address. The e-mail address, the service request number, or both must be specified.

- **tac-service-request** *SR#*—Specifies the service request number. The service request number is required if the e-mail address is not specified.

### Example

The following example shows how to send the output of a command to a user-specified e-mail address:

```
Router# call-home send "show diag" email support@example.com
```

The following example shows the command output sent in long-text format to attach@cisco.com, with the SR number specified:

```
Router# call-home send "show version; show run" tac-service-request 123456
```

The following example shows the command output sent in XML message format to callhome@cisco.com:

```
Router# call-home send "show version; show run" email callhome@cisco.com msg-format xml
```

The following example shows the command output sent in XML message format to the Cisco TAC backend server, with the SR number specified:

```
Router# call-home send "show version; show run" http tac-service-request 123456
```

The following example shows the command output sent to the Cisco TAC backend server through the HTTP protocol and forwarded to a user-specified email address:

```
Router# call-home send "show version; show run" http destination-email-address user@company.com
```

### Configuring Diagnostic Signatures

The Diagnostic Signatures feature downloads digitally signed signatures to devices. Diagnostic Signatures (DS) files are formatted files that collate knowledge of diagnostic events and provide methods to troubleshoot them without a need to upgrade the Cisco software. The aim of DS is to deliver flexible intelligence that can detect and collect troubleshooting information that can be used to resolve known problems in customers networks.
Information About Diagnostic Signatures

- Diagnostic Signatures Overview, on page 233
- Prerequisites for Diagnostic Signatures, on page 234
- Downloading Diagnostic Signatures, on page 234
- Diagnostic Signature Workflow, on page 234
- Diagnostic Signature Events and Actions, on page 235
- Diagnostic Signature Event Detection, on page 235
- Diagnostic Signature Actions, on page 235
- Diagnostic Signature Variables, on page 236

Diagnostic Signatures Overview

Diagnostic signatures (DS) for the Call Home system provide a flexible framework that allows the defining of new events and corresponding CLIs that can analyze these events without upgrading the Cisco software.

DSs provide the ability to define more types of events and trigger types than the standard Call Home feature supports. The DS subsystem downloads and processes files on a device as well as handles callbacks for diagnostic signature events.

The Diagnostic Signature feature downloads digitally signed signatures that are in the form of files to devices. DS files are formatted files that collate the knowledge of diagnostic events and provide methods to troubleshoot these events.

DS files contain XML data to specify the event description, and these files include CLI commands or scripts to perform required actions. These files are digitally signed by Cisco or a third party to certify their integrity, reliability, and security.

The structure of a DS file can be one of the following formats:

- Metadata-based simple signature that specifies the event type and contains other information that can be used to match the event and perform actions such as collecting information by using the CLI. The signature can also change configurations on the device as a workaround for certain bugs.
- Embedded Event Manager (EEM) Tool Command Language (Tcl) script-based signature that specifies new events in the event register line and additional action in the Tcl script.
- Combination of both the formats above.

The following basic information is contained in a DS file:

- **ID (unique number)**—Unique key that represents a DS file that can be used to search a DS.
- **Name (ShortDescription)**—Unique description of the DS file that can be used in lists for selection.
- **Description**—Long description about the signature.
- **Revision**—Version number, which increments when the DS content is updated.
- **Event & Action**—Defines the event to be detected and the action to be performed after the event happens.
Prerequisites for Diagnostic Signatures

Before you download and configure diagnostic signatures (DSs) on a device, you must ensure that the following conditions are met:

- You must assign one or more DSs to the device. For more information on how to assign DSs to devices, see Downloading Diagnostic Signatures, on page 234.

- HTTP/Secure HTTP (HTTPS) transport is required for downloading DS files. You must install the certification authority (CA) certificate to enable the authentication of the destination HTTPS server.

Note: If you configure the trustpool feature, the CA certificate is not required.

Downloading Diagnostic Signatures

To download the diagnostic signature (DS) file, you require the secure HTTP (HTTPS) protocol. If you have already configured an email transport method to download files on your device, you must change your assigned profile transport method to HTTPS to download and use DS.

Cisco software uses a PKI Trustpool Management feature, which is enabled by default on devices, to create a scheme to provision, store, and manage a pool of certificates from known certification authorities (CAs). The trustpool feature installs the CA certificate automatically. The CA certificate is required for the authentication of the destination HTTPS servers.

There are two types of DS update requests to download DS files: regular and forced-download. Regular download requests DS files that were recently updated. You can trigger a regular download request either by using a periodic configuration or by initiating an on-demand CLI. The regular download update happens only when the version of the requested DS is different from the version of the DS on the device. Periodic download is only started after there is any DS assigned to the device from DS web portal. After the assignment happens, the response to the periodic inventory message from the same device will include a field to notify device to start its periodic DS download/update. In a DS update request message, the status and revision number of the DS is included such that only a DS with the latest revision number is downloaded.

Forced-download downloads a specific DS or a set of DSes. You can trigger the forced-download update request only by initiating an on-demand CLI. In a force-download update request, the latest version of the DS file is downloaded irrespective of the current DS file version on the device.

The DS file is digitally signed, and signature verification is performed on every downloaded DS file to make sure it is from a trusted source.

Diagnostic Signature Workflow

The diagnostic signature feature is enabled by default in Cisco software. The following is the workflow for using diagnostic signatures:

- Find the DS(es) you want to download and assign them to the device. This step is mandatory for regular periodic download, but not required for forced download.

- The device downloads all assigned DS(es) or a specific DS by regular periodic download or by on-demand forced download.
• The device verifies the digital signature of every single DS. If verification passes, the device stores the DS file into a non-removable disk, such as bootflash or hard disk, so that DS files can be read after the device is reloaded. On the router, the DS file is stored in the bootflash:/callhome directory.

• The device continues sending periodic regular DS download requests to get the latest revision of DS and replace the older one in device.

• The device monitors the event and executes the actions defined in the DS when the event happens.

Diagnostic Signature Events and Actions

The events and actions sections are the key areas used in diagnostic signatures. The event section defines all event attributes that are used for event detection. The action section lists all actions which should be performed after the event happens, such as collecting show command outputs and sending them to Smart Call Home to parse.

Diagnostic Signature Event Detection

Event detection in a DS is defined in two ways: single event detection and multiple event detection.

Single Event Detection

In single event detection, only one event detector is defined within a DS. The event specification format is one of the following two types:

• DS event specification type: syslog, periodic, configuration, Online Insertion Removal (OIR) immediate, and call home are the supported event types, where “immediate” indicates that this type of DS does not detect any events, its actions are performed once it is downloaded, and the call-home type modifies the current CLI commands defined for existing alert-group.

• The Embedded Event Manager (EEM) specification type: supports any new EEM event detector without having to modify the Cisco software.

Other than using EEM to detect events, a DS is triggered when a Tool Command Language (Tcl) script is used to specify event detection types.

Multiple Event Detection

Multiple event detection involves defining two or more event detectors, two or more corresponding tracked object states, and a time period for the events to occur. The specification format for multiple event detection can include complex event correlation for tracked event detectors. For example, three event detectors (syslog, OIR, and IPSLA) are defined during the creation of a DS file. The correlation that is specified for these event detectors is that the DS will execute its action if both syslog and OIR events are triggered simultaneously, or if IPSLA is triggered alone.

Diagnostic Signature Actions

The diagnostic signature (DS) file consists of various actions that must be initiated when an event occurs. The action type indicates the kind of action that will be initiated in response to a certain event.

Variables are elements within a DS that are used to customize the files.

DS actions are categorized into the following four types:

• call-home
DS action types call-home and emailto collect event data and send a message to call-home servers or to the defined email addresses. The message uses “diagnostic-signature” as its message type and DS ID as the message sub-type.

The commands defined for the DS action type initiate CLI commands that can change configuration of the device, collect show command outputs, or run any EXEC command on the device. The DS action type script executes Tcl scripts.

Diagnostic Signature Variables

Variables are referenced within a DS and are used to customize the DS file. All DS variable names have the prefix ds_ to separate them from other variables. The following are the supported DS variable types:

- System variable: variables assigned automatically by the device without any configuration changes. The Diagnostic Signatures feature supports two system variables: ds_hostname and ds_signature_id.

- Environment variable: values assigned manually by using the environment variable-name variable-value command in call-home diagnostic-signature configuration mode. Use the show call-home diagnostic-signature command to display the name and value of all DS environment variables. If the DS file contains unresolved environment variables, this DS will stay in pending status until the variable gets resolved.

- Prompt variable: values assigned manually by using the call-home diagnostic-signature install ds-id command in privileged EXEC mode. If you do not set this value, the status of the DS indicates pending.

- Regular expression variable: values assigned from a regular expression pattern match with predefined CLI command outputs. The value is assigned during the DS run.

- Syslog event variable: values assigned during a syslog event detection in the DS file. This variable is valid only for syslog event detection.

How to Configure Diagnostic Signatures

- Configuring the Call Home Service for Diagnostic Signatures, on page 236
- Configuring Diagnostic Signatures, on page 238

Configuring the Call Home Service for Diagnostic Signatures

Configure the Call Home Service feature to set attributes such as the contact email address where notifications related with diagnostic signatures (DS) are sent and destination HTTP/secure HTTP (HTTPS) URL to download the DS files from.

You can also create a new user profile, configure correct attributes and assign it as the DS profile. For periodic downloads, the request is sent out just following full inventory message. By changing the inventory periodic configuration, the DS periodic download also gets rescheduled.
The predefined CiscoTAC-1 profile is enabled as a DS profile by default and we recommend that you use it. If used, you only need to change the destination transport-method to the http setting.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. service call-home
3. call-home
4. contact-email-addr email-address
5. mail-server {ipv4-addr | name} priority number
6. profile profile-name
7. destination transport-method {email | http}
8. destination address {email address | http url}
9. subscribe-to-alert-group inventory [periodic {daily hh:mm | monthly day hh:mm | weekly day hh:mm}]
10. exit

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> service call-home</td>
<td>Enables Call Home service on a device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router(config)# service call-home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> call-home</td>
<td>Enters call-home configuration mode for the configuration of Call Home settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router(config)# call-home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> contact-email-addr email-address</td>
<td>(Optional) Assigns an email address to be used for Call Home customer contact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router(cfg-call-home)# contact-email-addr <a href="mailto:userid@example.com">userid@example.com</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> mail-server {ipv4-addr</td>
<td>name} priority number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router(cfg-call-home)# mail-server 10.1.1.1 priority 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> profile profile-name</td>
<td>Configures a destination profile for Call Home and enters call-home profile configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Router(cfg-call-home)# profile user1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specifies a transport method for a destination profile in the Call Home.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 7

**destination transport-method {email | http}**

**Example:**

Router(cfg-call-home-profile)# destination transport-method http

### Step 8

**destination address {email address | http url}**

**Example:**

Router(cfg-call-home-profile)# destination address http https://tools.cisco.com/its/service/oddce/services/DDCEService

### Step 9

**subscribe-to-alert-group inventory [periodic {daily hh:mm | monthly day hh:mm | weekly day hh:mm}]]**

**Example:**

Router(cfg-call-home-profile)# subscribe-to-alert-group inventory periodic daily 14:30

### Step 10

**exit**

**Example:**

Router(cfg-call-home-profile)# exit

### What to do next

Set the profile configured in the previous procedure as the DS profile and configure other DS parameters.

### Configuring Diagnostic Signatures

#### Before you begin

Configure the Call Home feature to set attributes for the Call Home profile. You can either use the default CiscoTAC-1 profile or use the newly-created user profile.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. call-home
2. diagnostic-signature
3. profile ds-profile-name
4. environment ds_env-var-name ds-env-var-value
5. end
6. call-home diagnostic-signature [{deinstall | download} {ds-id | all} | install ds-id]
7. show call-home diagnostic-signature [ds-id {actions | events | prerequisite | prompt | variables | failure | statistics | download}]
**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> call-home</td>
<td>Enters call-home configuration mode for the configuration of Call Home settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Router(config)# call-home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> diagnostic-signature</td>
<td>Enters call-home diagnostic signature mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Router(config)# call-home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> profile ds-profile-name</td>
<td>Specifies the destination profile on a device that DS uses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Router(config)# call-home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> environment ds-env-var-name ds-env-var-value</td>
<td>Sets the environment variable value for DS on a device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Router(config)# call-home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits call-home diagnostic signature mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Router(config)#</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> call-home diagnostic-signature</td>
<td>Downloads, installs, and uninstalls diagnostic signature files on a device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Router(config)#</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> show call-home diagnostic-signature</td>
<td>Displays the call-home diagnostic signature information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Router(config)#</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuration Examples for Diagnostic Signatures**

The following example shows how to enable the periodic downloading request for diagnostic signature (DS) files. This configuration will send download requests to the service call-home server daily at 2:30 p.m. to check for updated DS files. The transport method is set to HTTP.

Router> enable
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# service call-home
Router(config)# call-home
Router(config)# contact-email-addr userid@example.com
Router(config)# mail-server 10.1.1.1 priority 4
Router(config)# profile user-1
Configuring Call Home

Displaying Call Home Configuration Information

You can use variations of the `show call-home` command to display Call Home configuration information.

To display the configured Call Home information, perform the following:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. show call-home
2. show call-home detail
3. show call-home alert-group
4. show call-home mail-server status
5. show call-home profile {all | name}
6. show call-home statistics [detail | profile profile_name]

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show call-home</td>
<td>Displays the Call Home configuration in summary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router# show call-home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show call-home detail</td>
<td>Displays the Call Home configuration in detail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following is sample output from the `show call-home diagnostic-signature` command for the configuration displayed above:

outer# show call-home diagnostic-signature

Current diagnostic-signature settings:
Diagnostic-signature: enabled
Profile: user1 (status: ACTIVE)
Environment variable:
d_env1: abc
Downloaded DSES:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DS ID</th>
<th>DS Name</th>
<th>Revision</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Last Update (GMT+00:00)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6015</td>
<td>CronInterval</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>registered 2013-01-16 04:49:52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6030</td>
<td>ActCH</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>registered 2013-01-16 06:10:22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6032</td>
<td>MultiEvents</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>registered 2013-01-16 06:10:37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6033</td>
<td>PureTCL</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>registered 2013-01-16 06:11:48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> show call-home alert-group</td>
<td>Displays the available alert groups and their status.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router# show call-home alert-group</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> show call-home mail-server status</td>
<td>Checks and displays the availability of the configured e-mail server(s).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router# show call-home mail-server status</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> show call-home profile {all</td>
<td>name}</td>
<td>Displays the configuration of the specified destination profile. Use the all keyword to display the configuration of all destination profiles.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router# show call-home profile all</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> show call-home statistics [detail</td>
<td>profile profile_name]</td>
<td>Displays the statistics of Call Home events.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router# show call-home statistics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

**Call Home Information in Summary**

**Call Home Information in Detail**

**Available Call Home Alert Groups**

**E-Mail Server Status Information**

**Information for All Destination Profiles**

**Information for a User-Defined Destination Profile**

**Call Home Statistics**

The following examples show the sample output when using different options of the **show call-home** command.

Router# **show call-home**

Current call home settings:
```
call home feature : enable
call home message's from address: router@example.com
call home message's reply-to address: support@example.com
vrfs for call-home messages: Not yet set up
contact person's email address: technical@example.com
```
contact person's phone number: +1-408-555-1234
street address: 1234 Picaboo Street, Any city, Any state, 12345
customer ID: ExampleCorp
contract ID: X123456789
site ID: SantaClara

source ip address: Not yet set up
source interface: GigabitEthernet0/0
Mail-server[1]: Address: 192.168.2.1 Priority: 1
Mail-server[2]: Address: 223.255.254.254 Priority: 2
http proxy: 192.168.1.1:80

aaa-authorization: disable
aaa-authorization username: callhome (default)
data-privacy: normal
syslog throttling: enable

Rate-limit: 20 message(s) per minute

Snapshot command[0]: show version
Snapshot command[1]: show clock

Available alert groups:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyword</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>configuration</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>configuration info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crash</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>crash and traceback info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>environment</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>environmental info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inventory</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>inventory info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snapshot</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>snapshot info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syslog</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>syslog info</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Profiles:
- Profile Name: campus-noc
- Profile Name: CiscoTAC-1

Router# show call-home detail
Current call home settings:
- call home feature : enable
- call home message's from address: router@example.com
- call home message's reply-to address: support@example.com

vrf for call-home messages: Not yet set up

contact person's email address: technical@example.com

contact person's phone number: +1-408-555-1234
street address: 1234 Picaboo Street, Any city, Any state, 12345
customer ID: ExampleCorp
contract ID: X123456789
site ID: SantaClara

source ip address: Not yet set up
source interface: GigabitEthernet0/0
Mail-server[1]: Address: 192.168.2.1 Priority: 1
Mail-server[2]: Address: 223.255.254.254 Priority: 2
http proxy: 192.168.1.1:80

aaa-authorization: disable
aaa-authorization username: callhome (default)
data-privacy: normal
syslog throttling: enable

Rate-limit: 20 message(s) per minute
Snapshot command[0]: show version  
Snapshot command[1]: show clock

Available alert groups:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyword</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>configuration</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>configuration info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crash</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>crash and traceback info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>environment</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>environmental info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inventory</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>inventory info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snapshot</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>snapshot info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syslog</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>syslog info</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Profiles:

Profile Name: campus-noc
Profile status: ACTIVE
Preferred Message Format: xml
Message Size Limit: 3145728 Bytes
Transport Method: email
Email address(es): ncc@example.com
HTTP address(es): Not yet set up

Alert-group Severity
------------------------ ------------
configuration normal    
flush normal
environment debug       
inventory normal
snapshot normal
syslog normal

Syslog-Pattern Severity
------------------------ ------------
.*CALL_LOOP.* debug

Profile Name: CiscoTAC-1
Profile status: INACTIVE
Profile mode: Full Reporting
Preferred Message Format: xml
Message Size Limit: 3145728 Bytes
Transport Method: email
Email address(es): callhome@cisco.com
HTTP address(es): https://tools.cisco.com/its/service/oddce/services/DDCEService

Periodic configuration info message is scheduled every 14 day of the month at 11:12
Periodic inventory info message is scheduled every 14 day of the month at 10:57

Alert-group Severity
------------------------ ------------
crash normal
environment minor       
Syslog-Pattern Severity
------------------------ ------------
.*CALL_LOOP.* debug

Router# show call-home alert-group

Available alert groups:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyword</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>configuration</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>configuration info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crash</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>crash and traceback info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>environment</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>environmental info</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Router#
inventory Enable inventory info
snapshot Enable snapshot info
syslog Enable syslog info
Router#
Router# show call-home mail-server status
Please wait. Checking for mail server status ...

Mail-server[1]: Address: 192.168.2.1 Priority: 1 [Not Available]
Mail-server[2]: Address: 223.255.254.254 Priority: 2 [Available]
Router#
Router# show call-home profile all
Profile Name: campus-noc
  Profile status: ACTIVE
  Preferred Message Format: xml
  Message Size Limit: 3145728 Bytes
  Transport Method: email
  Email address(es): noc@example.com
  HTTP address(es): Not yet set up
  Alert-group Severity
    ----------------------------------- ------------
    configuration normal
    crash normal
    environment debug
    inventory normal
  Syslog-Pattern Severity
    ------------------------ ------------
    .*CALL_LOOP.* debug

Profile Name: CiscoTAC-1
  Profile status: INACTIVE
  Profile mode: Full Reporting
  Preferred Message Format: xml
  Message Size Limit: 3145728 Bytes
  Transport Method: email
  Email address(es): callhome@cisco.com
  HTTP address(es): https://tools.cisco.com/its/service/oddce/services/DDCEService

Periodic configuration info message is scheduled every 14 day of the month at 11:12
Periodic inventory info message is scheduled every 14 day of the month at 10:57

  Alert-group Severity
    ----------------------------------- ------------
    crash normal
    environment minor
  Syslog-Pattern Severity
    ------------------------ ------------
    .*CALL_LOOP.* debug
Router#
Router# show call-home profile campus-noc
Profile Name: campus-noc
  Profile status: ACTIVE
  Preferred Message Format: xml
  Message Size Limit: 3145728 Bytes
  Transport Method: email
  Email address(es): noc@example.com
  HTTP address(es): Not yet set up
Alert-group  Severity
--------------------  -------
configuration        normal
crash                normal
environment          debug
inventory            normal

Syslog-Pattern  Severity
------------------------  -------
.*CALL_LOOP.*            debug

Router#
Router# show call-home statistics
Message Types  Total  Email  HTTP
----------------  -------------  -------------  ------------------
Total Success    3       3       0
Config            3       3       0
Crash             0       0       0
Environment       0       0       0
Inventory         0       0       0
Snapshot          0       0       0
SysLog            0       0       0
Test              0       0       0
Request           0       0       0
Send-CLI          0       0       0

Total In-Queue    0       0       0
Config            0       0       0
Crash             0       0       0
Environment       0       0       0
Inventory         0       0       0
Snapshot          0       0       0
SysLog            0       0       0
Test              0       0       0
Request           0       0       0
Send-CLI          0       0       0

Total Failed      0       0       0
Config            0       0       0
Crash             0       0       0
Environment       0       0       0
Inventory         0       0       0
Snapshot          0       0       0
SysLog            0       0       0
Test              0       0       0
Request           0       0       0
Send-CLI          0       0       0

Total Ratelimit  -dropped  0       0       0
Config            0       0       0
Crash             0       0       0
Environment       0       0       0
Inventory         0       0       0
Snapshot          0       0       0
SysLog            0       0       0
Test              0       0       0
Request           0       0       0
Send-CLI          0       0       0

Last call-home message sent time: 2011-09-26 23:26:50 GMT-08:00
Router#
Default Call Home Settings

The following table lists the default Call Home settings.

Table 14: Default Call Home Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Call Home feature status</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User-defined profile status</td>
<td>Active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Predefined Cisco TAC profile status</td>
<td>Inactive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transport method</td>
<td>E-mail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message format type</td>
<td>XML</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination message size for a message sent in long text, short text, or XML format</td>
<td>3,145,728</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alert group status</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Home message severity threshold</td>
<td>Debug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message rate limit for messages per minute</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAA Authorization</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Home syslog message throttling</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data privacy level</td>
<td>Normal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Alert Group Trigger Events and Commands

Call Home trigger events are grouped into alert groups, with each alert group assigned commands to execute when an event occurs. The command output is included in the transmitted message. The following table lists the trigger events included in each alert group, including the severity level of each event and the executed commands for the alert group.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alert Group</th>
<th>Call Home Trigger Event</th>
<th>Syslog Event</th>
<th>Severity</th>
<th>Description and Commands Executed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Crash</td>
<td>SYSTEM_CRASH</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>Events related to software crash. The following commands are executed: show version show logging show region show inventory show stack crashinfo file (this command shows the contents of the crashinfo file)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TRACEBACK</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>Detects software traceback events. The following commands are executed: show version show logging show region show stack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alert Group</td>
<td>Call Home Trigger Event</td>
<td>Syslog Event</td>
<td>Severity</td>
<td>Description and Commands Executed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>User-generated request for configuration or configuration change event. The following commands are executed: <code>show platform</code> <code>show inventory</code> <code>show running-config all</code> <code>show startup-config</code> <code>show version</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>Events related to power, fan, and environment sensing elements such as temperature alarms. The following commands are executed: <code>show environment</code> <code>show inventory</code> <code>show platform</code> <code>show logging</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>SHUT</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Environmental Monitor initiated shutdown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>ENVCRIT</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Temperature or voltage measurement exceeded critical threshold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>BLOWER</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Required number of fan trays is not present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alert Group</td>
<td>Call Home Trigger Event</td>
<td>Syslog Event</td>
<td>Severity</td>
<td>Description and Commands Executed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>ENVWARN</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Temperature or voltage measurement exceeded warning threshold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>RPSFAIL</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Power supply may have a failed channel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–</td>
<td>ENVVM</td>
<td>PSCHANGE</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Power supply name change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>PSLEV</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Power supply state change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>PSOK</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Power supply now appears to be working correctly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Call Home

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alert Group</th>
<th>Call Home Trigger Event</th>
<th>Syslog Event</th>
<th>Severity</th>
<th>Description and Commands Executed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inventory</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alert Group</td>
<td>Call Home Trigger Event</td>
<td>Syslog Event</td>
<td>Severity</td>
<td>Description and Commands Executed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Inventory status should be provided whenever a unit is cold-booted or when FRUs are inserted or removed. This is considered a noncritical event, and the information is used for status and entitlement.

Commands executed for all Inventory messages sent in anonymous mode and for Delta Inventory message sent in full registration mode:

- `show diag all`
- `eeprom detail`
- `show version`
- `show inventory oid`
- `show platform`

Commands executed for Full Inventory message sent in full registration mode:

- `show platform`
- `show diag all`
- `eeprom detail`
- `show version`
- `show inventory oid`
- `show bootflash: all`
- `show data-corruption`
- `show interfaces`
- `show file systems`
- `show memory statistics`
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alert Group</th>
<th>Call Home Trigger Event</th>
<th>Syslog Event</th>
<th>Severity</th>
<th>Description and Commands Executed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>show process memory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>show process cpu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>show process cpu history</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>show license udi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>show license detail</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>show buffers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardremovedfrom slot%d, interfaces disabled.</td>
<td>HARDWARE_REMOVAL</td>
<td>REMCARD</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Card removed from slot %d, interfaces disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardinsertedinslot%d, interfaces administratively shut down.</td>
<td>HARDWARE_INSERTION</td>
<td>INSCARD</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Card inserted in slot %d, interfaces administratively shut down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event logged to syslog.</td>
<td>SYSLOG</td>
<td>LOG_EMERG</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>System is unusable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The following commands are executed:</td>
<td>SYSLOG</td>
<td>LOG_ALERT</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Action must be taken immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show inventory</td>
<td>SYSLOG</td>
<td>LOG_CRIT</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Critical conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show logging</td>
<td>SYSLOG</td>
<td>LOG_ERR</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Error conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SYSLOG</td>
<td>LOG_WARNING</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Warning conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SYSLOG</td>
<td>LOG_NOTICE</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Normal but signification condition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SYSLOG</td>
<td>LOG_INFO</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Informational.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SYSLOG</td>
<td>LOG_DEBUG</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Debug-level messages.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Alert Group | Call Home Trigger Event | Syslog Event | Severity | Description and Commands Executed
--- | --- | --- | --- | ---
Test | – | TEST | – | User-generated test message.
The following commands are executed:
- show platform
- show inventory
- show version

## Message Contents

This section consists of tables which list the content formats of alert group messages. This section also includes the following subsections that provide sample messages:

- Sample Syslog Alert Notification in Long-Text Format, on page 257
- Sample Syslog Alert Notification in XML Format, on page 259

The following table lists the content fields of a short text message.

**Table 16: Format for a Short Text Message**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device identification</td>
<td>Configured device name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date/time stamp</td>
<td>Time stamp of the triggering event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error isolation message</td>
<td>Plain English description of triggering event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm urgency level</td>
<td>Error level such as that applied to a system message</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table shows the content fields that are common to all long text and XML messages. The fields specific to a particular alert group message are inserted at a point between the common fields. The insertion point is identified in the table.

**Table 17: Common Fields for All Long Text and XML Messages**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Item (Plain Text and XML)</th>
<th>Description (Plain Text and XML)</th>
<th>Call-Home Message Tag (XML Only)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time stamp</td>
<td>Date and time stamp of event in ISO time notation: <strong>YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS GMT+HH:MM</strong>.</td>
<td>CallHome/EventTime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Item (Plain Text and XML)</td>
<td>Description (Plain Text and XML)</td>
<td>Call-Home Message Tag (XML Only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message name</td>
<td>Name of message. Specific event names are listed in the Alert Group Trigger Events and Commands, on page 246.</td>
<td>For short text message only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message type</td>
<td>Specifically “Call Home”.</td>
<td>CallHome/Event/Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message subtype</td>
<td>Specific type of message: full, delta, test</td>
<td>CallHome/Event/SubType</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message group</td>
<td>Specifically “reactive”. Optional because default is “reactive”.</td>
<td>For long-text message only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severity level</td>
<td>Severity level of message (see Message Severity Threshold, on page 221).</td>
<td>Body/Block/Severity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source ID</td>
<td>Product type for routing through the workflow engine. This is typically the product family name.</td>
<td>For long-text message only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device ID</td>
<td>Unique device identifier (UDI) for end device generating message. This field should be empty if the message is nonspecific to a fabric switch. The format is type@Sid@serial.</td>
<td>CallHome/CustomerData/ContractData/DeviceId</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• type is the product model number from backplane IDPROM.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• @ is a separator character.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Sid is C, identifying the serial ID as a chassis serial number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• serial is the number identified by the Sid field.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: CISCO3845@C@12345678</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer ID</td>
<td>Optional user-configurable field used for contract information or other ID by any support service.</td>
<td>CallHome/CustomerData/ContractData/CustomerId</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract ID</td>
<td>Optional user-configurable field used for contract information or other ID by any support service.</td>
<td>CallHome/CustomerData/ContractData/CustomerId</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Item (Plain Text and XML)</td>
<td>Description (Plain Text and XML)</td>
<td>Call-Home Message Tag (XML Only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site ID</td>
<td>Optional user-configurable field used for Cisco-supplied site ID or other data meaningful to alternate support service.</td>
<td>CallHome/CustomerData/ContractData/CustomerId</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Server ID                     | If the message is generated from the fabric switch, this is the unique device identifier (UDI) of the switch.  
  • *type* is the product model number from backplane IDPROM.  
  • *@* is a separator character.  
  • *Sid* is C, identifying the serial ID as a chassis serial number.  
  • *serial* is the number identified by the Sid field.  
  Example: CISCO3845@C@12345678 | For long text message only. |
| Message description           | Short text describing the error. | CallHome/MessageDescription |
|Device name                   | Node that experienced the event. This is the host name of the device. | CallHome/CustomerData/SystemInfo/NameName |
|Contact name                  | Name of person to contact for issues associated with the node experiencing the event. | CallHome/CustomerData/SystemInfo/Contact |
|Contact e-mail                | E-mail address of person identified as contact for this unit. | CallHome/CustomerData/SystemInfo/ContactEmail |
|Contact phone number          | Phone number of the person identified as the contact for this unit. | CallHome/CustomerData/SystemInfo/ContactPhoneNumber |
|Street address                | Optional field containing street address for RMA part shipments associated with this unit. | CallHome/CustomerData/SystemInfo/StreetAddress |
|Model name                    | Model name of the router. This is the “specific model as part of a product family name. | CallHome/Device/Cisco_Chassis/Model |
|Serial number                 | Chassis serial number of the unit. | CallHome/Device/Cisco_Chassis/SerialNumber |
Call-Home Message Tag (XML Only)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Item (Plain Text and XML)</th>
<th>Description (Plain Text and XML)</th>
<th>Call-Home Message Tag (XML Only)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chassis part number</td>
<td>Top assembly number of the chassis.</td>
<td>CallHome/Device/Cisco_Chassis/AdditionalInformation/AD@name=&quot;PartNumber&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System object ID</td>
<td>System Object ID that uniquely identifies the system.</td>
<td>CallHome/Device/Cisco_Chassis/AdditionalInformation/AD@name=&quot;sysObjectID&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System description</td>
<td>System description for the managed element.</td>
<td>CallHome/Device/Cisco_Chassis/AdditionalInformation/AD@name=&quot;sysDescr&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table shows the inserted fields specific to a particular alert group message.

**Note**

The following fields may be repeated if multiple commands are executed for this alert group.

**Table 18: Inserted Fields Specific to a Particular Alert Group Message**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command output name</th>
<th>Exact name of the issued command.</th>
<th>/aml/Attachments/Attachment/NameExactnameoftheissuedcommand.Commandoutputname</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Attachment type</td>
<td>Attachment type. Usually “inline”.</td>
<td>/aml/Attachments/Attachment@typeAttachmenttype.Usually“inline”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIME type</td>
<td>Normally “text” or “plain” or encoding type.</td>
<td>/aml/Attachments/Attachment/Data@encoding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command output text</td>
<td>Output of command automatically executed (see Alert Group Trigger Events and Commands, on page 246).</td>
<td>/mml/attachments/attachment/atdata</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table shows the inserted content fields for reactive messages (system failures that require a TAC case) and proactive messages (issues that might result in degraded system performance).

**Table 19: Inserted Fields for a Reactive or Proactive Event Message**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Item (Plain Text and XML)</th>
<th>Description (Plain Text and XML)</th>
<th>Call-Home Message Tag (XML Only)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chassis hardware version</td>
<td>Hardware version of chassis</td>
<td>CallHome/Device/Cisco_Chassis/HardwareVersion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supervisor module software version</td>
<td>Top-level software version</td>
<td>CallHome/Device/Cisco_Chassis/AdditionalInformation/AD@name=&quot;SoftwareVersion&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affected FRU name</td>
<td>Name of the affected FRU generating the event message</td>
<td>CallHome/Device/Cisco_Chassis/Cisco_Card/Model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affected FRU serial number</td>
<td>Serial number of affected FRU</td>
<td>CallHome/Device/Cisco_Chassis/Cisco_Card/SerialNumber</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following table shows the inserted content fields for an inventory message.

### Table 20: Inserted Fields for an Inventory Event Message

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Item (Plain Text and XML)</th>
<th>Description (Plain Text and XML)</th>
<th>Call-Home Message Tag (XML Only)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Affected FRU part number</td>
<td>Part number of affected FRU</td>
<td>CallHome/Device/Cisco_Chassis/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco_Card/PartNumber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRU slot</td>
<td>Slot number of FRU generating the event message</td>
<td>CallHome/Device/Cisco_Chassis/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco_Card/LocationWithinContainer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRU hardware version</td>
<td>Hardware version of affected FRU</td>
<td>CallHome/Device/Cisco_Chassis/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco_Card/HardwareVersion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRU software version</td>
<td>Software version(s) running on affected FRU</td>
<td>CallHome/Device/Cisco_Chassis/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco_Card/SoftwareIdentity/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>VersionString</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sample Syslog Alert Notification in Long-Text Format

The following example shows a Syslog alert notification in long-text format:

```
TimeStamp : 2014-08-13 21:41 GMT+00:00
Message Name : syslog
Message Type : Call Home
Message Group : reactive
Severity Level : 2
Source ID : ISR 4400
```
Device ID: ISR4451-X/K9@FTX1830AKF9
Customer ID:
Contract ID:
Site ID:
Server ID: ISR4451-X/K9@FTX1830AKF9
Event Description: *Aug 13 21:41:35.835: %CLEAR-5-COUNTERS: Clear counter on all interfaces by console
System Name: Router
Contact Email: admin@yourdomain.com
Contact Phone:
Street Address:
Affected Chassis: ISR4451-X/K9
Affected Chassis Serial Number: FTX1830AKF9
Affected Chassis Part No: 800-36894-03
Affected Chassis Hardware Version: 1.0
Supervisor Software Version: 15.4(20140812:034256)
Command Output Name: show logging
Attachment Type: command output
MIME Type: text/plain
Command Output Text: show logging
Syslog logging: enabled (0 messages dropped, 4 messages rate-limited, 0 flushes, 0 overruns, xml disabled, filtering disabled)
No Active Message Discriminator.

No Inactive Message Discriminator.

Console logging: level debugging, 71 messages logged, xml disabled,
filtering disabled
Monitor logging: level debugging, 0 messages logged, xml disabled,
filtering disabled
Buffer logging: level debugging, 73 messages logged, xml disabled,
filtering disabled
Exception Logging: size (4096 bytes)
Count and timestamp logging messages: disabled
Persistent logging: disabled
No active filter modules.

Trap logging: level informational, 70 message lines logged
Logging Source-Interface: VRF Name:
Log Buffer (4096 bytes):

*Aug 13 21:38:04.994: %CLEAR-5-COUNTERS: Clear counter on all interfaces by console
*Aug 13 21:40:55.706: %CLEAR-5-COUNTERS: Clear counter on all interfaces by console
*Aug 13 21:41:27.042: %SYS-5-CONFIG_I: Configured from console by console
Router#
Command Output Name: show inventory
Attachment Type: command output
MIME Type: text/plain
Command Output Text: show inventory
NAME: "Chassis", DESCRIPTION: "Cisco ISR4451 Chassis"
PID: ISR4451-X/K9 , VID: V03, SN: FTX1830AKF9

NAME: "Power Supply Module 0", DESCRIPTION: "450W AC Power Supply for Cisco ISR4450, ISR4350"
PID: PWR-4450-AC , VID: V01, SN: DCA1822XG04

NAME: "Fan Tray", DESCRIPTION: "Cisco ISR4450, ISR4350 Fan Assembly"
PID: ACS-4450-FANASSY , VID: , SN:
Sample Syslog Alert Notification in XML Format

The following example shows a Syslog alert notification in XML format:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<soap-env:Envelope xmlns:soap-env="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope">
<soap-env:Header>
<aml-session:To>http://tools.cisco.com/neddce/services/DDCEService</aml-session:To>
<aml-session:Path>
<aml-session:Via>http://www.cisco.com/appliance/uri</aml-session:Via>
</aml-session:Path>
<aml-session:MessageId>M4:FTX1830AKF9:53E9DBDA</aml-session:MessageId>
</aml-session:Session>
</soap-env:Header>
<soap-env:Body>
<aml-block:Header>
<aml-block:Type>http://www.cisco.com/2005/05/callhome/syslog</aml-block:Type>
<aml-block:CreationDate>2014-08-13 21:42:50 GMT+00:00</aml-block:CreationDate>
<aml-block:Builder>
<aml-block:Name>ISR 4400</aml-block:Name>
</aml-block:Builder>
<aml-block:Version>2.0</aml-block:Version>
</aml-block:Header>
<aml-block:BlockGroup>
<aml-block:GroupId>G5:FTX1830AKF9:53E9DBDA</aml-block:GroupId>
</aml-block:BlockGroup>
<aml-block:Number>0</aml-block:Number>
<aml-block:IsLast>true</aml-block:IsLast>
<aml-block:IsPrimary>true</aml-block:IsPrimary>
<aml-block:WaitForPrimary>false</aml-block:WaitForPrimary>
</aml-block:BlockGroup>
<aml-block:Severity>2</aml-block:Severity>
</aml-block:Header>
<aml-block:Content>
<ch:CallHome xmlns:ch="http://www.cisco.com/2005/05/callhome" version="1.0">
<ch:EventType>2014-08-13 21:42:49 GMT+00:00</ch:EventType>
</ch:Event>
```
Sample Syslog Alert Notification in XML Format

No Active Message Discriminator.

No Inactive Message Discriminator.

Console logging: level debugging, 75 messages logged, xml disabled, filtering disabled
Monitor logging: level debugging, 0 messages logged, xml disabled, filtering disabled
Buffer logging: level debugging, 77 messages logged, xml disabled, filtering disabled
Exception Logging: size (4096 bytes)
Count and timestamp logging messages: disabled
Persistent logging: disabled

No active filter modules.

Trap logging: level informational, 74 message lines logged
Logging Source-Interface: VRF Name:

Log Buffer (4096 bytes):

*Aug 13 21:42:23.364: %SYS-5-CONFIG_I: Configured from console by console
Router#]

<aml-block:Attachment type="inline">
<aml-block:Name>show inventory</aml-block:Name>
<aml-block:Data encoding="plain">
<![CDATA[
NAME: "Chassis", DESCR: "Cisco ISR4451 Chassis"
PID: ISR4451-X/K9, VID: V03, SN: FTX1830AKF9

NAME: "Power Supply Module 0", DESCR: "450W AC Power Supply for Cisco ISR4450, ISR4350"
PID: PWR-4450-AC, VID: V01, SN: DCA1822X0G4

NAME: "Fan Tray", DESCR: "Cisco ISR4450, ISR4350 Fan Assembly"
PID: ACS-4450-FANASSY, VID: , SN: 

NAME: "module 0", DESCR: "Cisco ISR4451 Built-In NIM controller"
PID: ISR4451-X/K9, VID: , SN: 

NAME: "NIM subslot 0/0", DESCR: "Front Panel 4 ports Gigabitethernet Module"
PID: ISR4451-X-4x1GE, VID: V01, SN: JAB092709EL

NAME: "module 1", DESCR: "Cisco ISR4451 Built-In SM controller"
PID: ISR4451-X/K9, VID: , SN: 

NAME: "module 2", DESCR: "Cisco ISR4451 Built-In SM controller"
PID: ISR4451-X/K9, VID: , SN: 

NAME: "module R0", DESCR: "Cisco ISR4451 Route Processor"
PID: ISR4451-X/K9, VID: V03, SN: FOC18271QLX

NAME: "module F0", DESCR: "Cisco ISR4451 Forwarding Processor"
PID: ISR4451-X/K9, VID: , SN: 

Router#]]>]]>]]>
</aml-block:Data>
</aml-block:Attachment>
</soap-env:Body>
</soap-env:Envelope>

Additional References

The following sections provide references related to the Call Home feature.
Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Document Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Smart Call Home User Guide</td>
<td>Explains how the Smart Call Home service offers web-based access to important information on select Cisco devices and offers higher network availability, and increased operational efficiency by providing proactive diagnostics and real-time alerts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/techsupport">http://www.cisco.com/techsupport</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Command Reference

Managing Cisco Enhanced Services and Network Interface Modules

The router supports Cisco Enhanced Services Modules (SMs) and Cisco Network Interface Modules (NIMs). The modules are inserted into the router using an adapter, or carrier card, into various slots. For more information, see the Hardware Installation Guide for the Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers.

The following sections are included in this chapter:

- Information About Cisco Enhanced Services and Network Interface Modules, on page 263
- Modules Supported, on page 264
- Network Interface Modules, on page 264
- Enhanced Service Modules, on page 266
- Implementing SMs and NIMs on Your Router, on page 268
- Managing Modules and Interfaces, on page 275
- Monitoring and Troubleshooting Modules and Interfaces, on page 279
- Configuration Examples, on page 286

Information About Cisco Enhanced Services and Network Interface Modules

The router configures, manages, and controls the supported Cisco Enhanced Services Modules (SMs) and Network Interface Modules (NIMs) using the module management facility built in its architecture. This new centralized module management facility provides a common way to control and monitor all the modules in the system regardless of their type and application. All Cisco Enhanced Service and Network Interface Modules supported on your router use standard IP protocols to interact with the host router. Cisco IOS software uses alien data path integration to switch between the modules.

- Modules Supported, on page 264
- Network Interface Modules, on page 264
- Enhanced Service Modules, on page 266
Modules Supported


Network Interface Modules

The following Network Interface Modules are supported:

- Cisco Fourth-Generation LTE Network Interface Module, on page 264
- Cisco 4-Port and 8-Port Layer 2 Gigabit EtherSwitch Network Interface Module, on page 264
- Cisco Fourth-Generation T1/E1 Voice and WAN Network Interface Module, on page 264
- Cisco SSD/HDD Carrier Card NIM, on page 265
- Upgrading the SSD or HDD Firmware, on page 265
- Error Monitoring, on page 266

Cisco Fourth-Generation LTE Network Interface Module

Cisco 4G LTE NIM addresses the modular 4G LTE cellular connectivity on the Cisco 4000 Series ISRs. This is the first wireless NIM, though it is not the first wireless module in the ISR product line. The closest modular card to Cisco 4G LTE NIM is the Cisco EHWIC 4G LTE, which accepts a single LTE modem. Cisco 4G LTE NIM is feature-compatible with Cisco EHWIC 4G LTE. For more information, see the Cisco Fourth-Generation LTE Network Interface Module Software Configuration Guide.

Cisco 4-Port and 8-Port Layer 2 Gigabit EtherSwitch Network Interface Module

The Cisco 4-Port and 8-Port Layer 2 Gigabit EtherSwitch Network Interface Module (NIM) integrates the Layer 2 features and provides a 1-Gbps connection to the multigigabit fabric (MGF) for intermodule communication. For more information on configuring the Cisco 4-Port and 8-Port Layer 2 Gigabit EtherSwitch NIM, see http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/routers/access/interfaces/NIM/software/configuration/guide/4_8PortGENIM.html.

Cisco Fourth-Generation T1/E1 Voice and WAN Network Interface Module

The Cisco Fourth-Generation T1/E1 Voice and WAN Network Interface Module (NIM) is inserted into the NIM slot of the router and provides data and voice support on T1/E1 trunks. To support voice-related and other DSP features, the Cisco PVDM4 (Cisco Packet Voice Digital Signal Processor Module) is also required. See the following documents for more information:

- Installing the Cisco Fourth-Generation T1/E1 Voice and WAN Network Interface Module
- Configuring the Cisco Fourth-Generation T1/E1 Voice and WAN Network Interface Module
• Installing the Cisco PVDM4

Cisco SSD/HDD Carrier Card NIM

The router supports a single Cisco SSD and HDD Carrier Card NIM, which must be placed in slot 0 and subslot 1, 2, or 3.

A Cisco SSD/HDD Carrier Card NIM can be one of the following:

• Cisco SSD Carrier Card NIM—Supports one or two Solid-State Drives (SSDs).
• Cisco HDD Carrier Card NIM—Supports one Hard Disk Drive (HDD).

For more information on the hardware characteristics of the SSD/HDD Carrier Card NIM, see the Hardware Installation Guide for the Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers.

For more information on deactivating or reactivating a SSD/HDD Carrier Card NIM, see Deactivating and Reactivating an SSD/HDD Carrier Card NIM, on page 271.

Cisco 1-, 2-, and 4-Port Serial NIM

The Cisco 1-, 2-, and 4-port Serial NIMs are multi-protocol synchronous serial network interface modules (NIMs) supported on the Cisco 4400 Series ISRs. The Cisco 1-, 2-, and 4-port Serial NIMs expand the capabilities of the router to provide connectivity for synchronous interfaces in a wide range of applications including up to 8Mbps data rate for high speed high-level data link control (HDLC). These capabilities can be utilized as Point-to-Point Cisco HDLC WAN interface or frame relay interface. The Cisco 1-, 2-, and 4-port Serial NIMs have their own serial communication controllers (SCC) and they do not rely on the host router for SCCs. For further information on configuring this NIM, see the Configuring the Cisco 1-, 2-, and 4-port Serial Network Interface Modules for the Cisco 4400 Series ISRs document.

Upgrading the SSD or HDD Firmware

You can upgrade the firmware for the SSD or HDD using the upgrade hw-programmable module filename bootflash:filename slot/sub-slot command.

A typical filename has the form: nim_ssd_manufacturer_firmware-version-number.bin

The firmware file can also be available in other locations other than bootflash:

For example, you can provide any one of the following locations in place of bootflash:filename:

• flash:filename
• harddisk:filename
• usb1:filename

Note

For a Cisco SSD carrier card NIM or Cisco HDD carrier card NIM, only slot 0 and one of the subslots 1, 2, or 3 must be used.
The following example shows how to upgrade a Micron P400m disk to firmware revision 200 using the upgrade hw-programmable module filename bootflash:filename slot/sub-slot command:

Router# upgrade hw-programmable module filename bootflash:nim_ssd_MicronP400m_E200.bin
Info: Trying to upgrade Module in 0/3 with nim_ssd_MicronP400m_E200.bin
Info: Current NIM-SSD disk config.
Info: Disk1: rev: 0200 model: MicronP400m-MTFDDAK200MAN
Info: Disk2: rev: 0200 model: MicronP400m-MTFDDAK200MAN
/dev/sde:
fwdownload: xfer_mode=3 min=1 max=255 size=512
............................................................................................................
Done.
/dev/sdf:
fwdownload: xfer_mode=3 min=1 max=255 size=512
............................................................................................................
Done.
Info: Performing post upgrade check ......
Info: Upgrade to Firmware version E200 on disk1 successful.
Info: Upgrade to Firmware version E200 on disk2 successful.
Info: Current NIM-SSD disk config.
Info: Disk1: rev: E200 model: MicronP400m

Error Monitoring

The drives in the Cisco SDD/HDD Carrier Card NIM are monitored for SMART errors. If a SMART error occurs, a Cisco IOS error message is displayed, as shown in the following example:

%IOSXE-5-PLATFORM:logger: INFO:/dev/sde:SMART error present:please do 'more bootflash:/tracelogs/smart_errors.log'.

You can find additional information in the error log at: bootflash:/tracelogs/smart_errors.log

Enhanced Service Modules

The following service modules are supported on the router:

- Cisco SM-1 T3/E3 Service Module, on page 266
- Cisco UCS E-Series Server, on page 266
- Cisco SM-X Layer 2/3 EtherSwitch Service Module, on page 267
- Cisco 6-Port GE SFP Service Module, on page 267

Cisco SM-1 T3/E3 Service Module

For more information, see the Cisco SM-1T3/E3 Enhanced Service Module Configuration Guide.

Cisco UCS E-Series Server

For more information, see the documentation listed in the Cisco UCS E-Series Server Roadmap.
Cisco SM-X Layer 2/3 EtherSwitch Service Module

This module provides the following features:

- Integration of Layer 2 and Layer 3 switching features and the ability of the router to use the Cisco SM-X Layer 2/3 ESM (16-port and 24-port) as an independent Layer 3 switch.
- 1 Gbps connection to the multigigabit fabric (MGF) for intermodule communication without burdening the CPU of the router.
- Up to 30 watts of power per port with the robust Power over Ethernet Plus (PoE+) feature along with IEEE 802.3AE Media Access Control Security (MACSec) port-based, hop-to-hop, encryption, and Cisco TrustSec.

For more information, see the following documents:

- Cisco SM-X Layer 2/3 EtherSwitch Service Module Configuration Guide for Cisco 4451-X ISR
- Connecting Cisco SM-X Layer 2/3 EtherSwitch Service Module to the Network

Cisco 6-Port GE SFP Service Module

The Cisco 6-port GE SFP service module is a Gigabit Ethernet module that can be inserted into the router's SM slot to provide Gigabit Ethernet features on routable external interfaces. For more information about configuring this service module, see the Software Configuration Guide for the Cisco 6-port GE SFP Service Module.

Cisco 4-port GE SFP and 1-port 10 GE SFP Service Module

The Cisco 4-port GE SFP and 1-port 10 GE SFP Service Module (SM-X-4x1GE-1x10GE) is software-configurable high-speed connectivity routing port service module for the Cisco ISR 4400 Series routers. This service module provides increased density of Ethernet interfaces on the Cisco ISR 4400 Series routers. For further information on configuring this service module, see: the Software Configuration Guide for the Cisco 6-port GE SFP Service Module and Cisco 4-port GE SFP and 1-port 10 GE SFP Service Module

Cisco 1GE-CU-SFP and 2GE-CU-SFP Network Interface Modules

The Cisco 1GE-CU-SFP and 2GE-CU-SFP Network Interface Modules (NIMs) are software-configurable high-speed connectivity routing port network interface modules for the Cisco 4000 and Cisco ISR 4300 Series Integrated Services Routers (ISR). These network interface modules provide increased density of Ethernet interfaces on the Cisco 4000 ISR. For further information on configuring this NIM, see the Configuring the Cisco 1GE-CU-SFP and 2GE-CU-SFP Network Interface Modules in Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers.

Note

Cisco 4221 ISR does not support 2GE-CU-SFP Network Interface Module.
Implementing SMs and NIMs on Your Router

- Downloading the Module Firmware, on page 268
- Installing SMs and NIMs, on page 268
- Accessing Your Module Through a Console Connection or Telnet, on page 268
- Online Insertion and Removal, on page 269

Downloading the Module Firmware

Module firmware must be loaded to the router to be able to use a service module. For more information, see Installing a Firmware Subpackage, on page 121.

The modules connect to the RP via the internal eth0 interface to download the firmware. Initially, the module gets an IP address for itself via BOOTP. The BOOTP also provides the address of the TFTP server used to download the image. After the image is loaded and the module is booted, the module provides an IP address for the running image via DHCP.

Installing SMs and NIMs

For more information, see "Installing and Removing NIMs and SMs" in the Hardware Installation Guide for the Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers.

Accessing Your Module Through a Console Connection or Telnet

Before you can access the modules, you must connect to the host router through the router console or through Telnet. After you are connected to the router, you must configure an IP address on the Gigabit Ethernet interface connected to your module. Open a session to your module using the `hw-module session` command in privileged EXEC mode on the router.

To establish a connection to the module, connect to the router console using Telnet or Secure Shell (SSH) and open a session to the switch using the `hw-module session slot/subslot` command in privileged EXEC mode on the router.

Use the following configuration examples to establish a connection:

- The following example shows how to open a session from the router using the `hw-module session` command:

  
  Router# hw-module session slot/card
  Router# hw-module session 0/1 endpoint 0

  Establishing session connect to subslot 0/1

- The following example shows how to exit a session from the router, by pressing Ctrl-A followed by Ctrl-Q on your keyboard:

  ```
  type ^a^q
  picocom v1.4
  port is : /dev/ttyDASH2
  flowcontrol : none
  ```
baudrate is : 9600
parity is : none
data bits are : 8
escape is : C-a
no init is : no
no reset is : no
no lock is : yes
send cmd is : ascii_xfr -s -v -110
receive cmd is : rz -vv

Online Insertion and Removal

The router supports online insertion and removal (OIR) of Cisco Enhanced Services Modules and Cisco Network Interface Modules. You can perform the following tasks using the OIR function:

• Preparing for Online Removal of a Module, on page 269
• Deactivating a Module, on page 269
• Deactivating Modules and Interfaces in Different Command Modes, on page 270
• Deactivating and Reactivating an SSD/HDD Carrier Card NIM, on page 271
• Reactivating a Module, on page 272
• Verifying the Deactivation and Activation of a Module, on page 272

Preparing for Online Removal of a Module

The router supports the OIR of a module, independent of removing another module installed in your router. This means that an active module can remain installed in your router, while you remove another module from one of the subslots. If you are not planning to immediately replace a module, ensure that you install a blank filler plate in the subslot.

Deactivating a Module

A module can be removed from the router without first being deactivated. However, we recommend that you perform a graceful deactivation (or graceful power down) of the module before removing it. To perform a graceful deactivation, use the `hw-module subslot slot/subslot stop` command in EXEC mode.

Note

When you are preparing for an OIR of a module, it is not necessary to independently shut down each of the interfaces before deactivating the module. The `hw-module subslot slot/subslot stop` command in EXEC mode automatically stops traffic on the interfaces and deactivates them along with the module in preparation for OIR. Similarly, you do not have to independently restart any of the interfaces on a module after OIR.

The following example shows how to use the `show facility-alarm status` command to verify if any critical alarm is generated when a module is removed from the system:

Router# show facility-alarm status
System Totals Critical: 5 Major: 1 Minor: 0
Source                     Severity       Description [Index]
--------------------------------------------------------------
Power Supply Bay 1 CRITICAL Power Supply/FAN Module Missing [0]
Deactivating Modules and Interfaces in Different Command Modes

You can deactivate a module and its interfaces using the `hw-module subslot` command in one of the following modes:

- If you choose to deactivate your module and its interfaces by executing the `hw-module subslot slot/subslot shutdown unpowered` command in global configuration mode, you are able to change the configuration in such a way that no matter how many times the router is rebooted, the module does not boot. This command is useful when you need to shut down a module located in a remote location and ensure that it does not boot automatically when the router is rebooted.

- If you choose to use the `hw-module subslot slot/subslot stop` command in EXEC mode, you cause the module to gracefully shut down. The module is rebooted when the `hw-module subslot slot/subslot start` command is executed.

To deactivate a module and all of its interfaces before removing the module, use one of the following commands in global configuration mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><code>hw-module subslot slot/subslot shutdown unpowered</code></td>
<td>Deactivates the module located in the specified slot and subslot of the router, where:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Example:</code> <code>Router# hw-module subslot 0/2 shutdown unpowered</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>slot</code>—Specifies the chassis slot number where the module is installed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>subslot</code>—Specifies the subslot number of the chassis where the module is installed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>shutdown</code>—Shuts down the specified module.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>unpowered</code>—Removes all interfaces on the module from the running configuration and the module is powered off.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>`hw-module subslot slot/subslot [reload</td>
<td>stop</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Router# hw-module subslot 0/2 stop | - slot—Specifies the chassis slot number where the module is installed.  
- subslot—Specifies the subslot number of the chassis where the module is installed.  
- reload—Stops and restarts the specified module.  
- stop—Removes all interfaces from the module and the module is powered off.  
- start—Powers on the module similar to a physically inserted module in the specified slot. The module firmware reboots and the entire module initialization sequence is executed in the IOSd and Input/Output Module daemon (IOMd) processes. |

---

### Deactivating and Reactivating an SSD/HDD Carrier Card NIM

The following restrictions apply:

- Deactivating or reactivating an SSD/HDD Carrier Card NIM without an SSD or HDD disk is not supported.

- Only a single (SSD or HDD) Carrier Card NIM can be plugged into a bay. If you plug an additional (SSD or HDD) Carrier Card NIM into another bay, the module powers down and kernel, log, or error messages are displayed on the Cisco IOS console. In rare cases, the file system may get corrupted on the additional drive.

Caution

Deactivation of an SSD/HDD Carrier Card NIM may cause loss of data.

To deactivate an SSD/HDD Carrier Card NIM, perform the following steps:

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 virtual-service name</td>
<td>Identifies the kWAAS service (by name), supported on your router, in preparation for the router to be shut down by the no activate command. We recommend that you use this command before reseating or replacing an SSD or HDD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Router(config)# virtual-service my-kwaas-instance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 no activate</td>
<td>Shuts down the kWAAS instance on your router. kWAAS services remain installed. The service will have to be reactivated after the HDD/SSD NIM (module) is restarted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Router(config-virt-serv)# no activate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Step 3 hw-module subslot slot/subslot [reload | stop | start] | Deactivates or reactivates the module in the specified slot and subslot.  
- slot—The chassis slot number where the module is installed. |
| Example: Router# hw-module subslot 0/2 stop Proceed with stop of module? [confirm] | |
### Reactivating a Module

If, after deactivating a module using the `hw-module subslot slot/subslot stop` command, you want to reactivate it without performing an OIR, use one of the following commands (in privileged EXEC mode):

- `hw-module subslot slot/subslot start`
- `hw-module subslot slot/subslot reload`

### Verifying the Deactivation and Activation of a Module

When you deactivate a module, the corresponding interfaces are also deactivated. This means that these interfaces will no longer appear in the output of the `show interface` command.

1. To verify the deactivation of a module, enter the `show hw-module subslot all oir` command in privileged EXEC configuration mode.

   Observe the "Operational Status" field associated with the module that you want to verify. In the following example, the module located in subslot 1 of the router is administratively down.

   ```
   Router# show hw-module subslot all oir
   Module  Model               Operational Status
   ----------- --------------- -------------------------
   subslot 0/0 ISR4451-4X1GE ok
   subslot 1/0 SM-X-T1/E1   ok
   ```

2. To verify activation and proper operation of a module, enter the `show hw-module subslot all oir` command and observe "ok" in the Operational Status field as shown in the following example:

   ```
   Router# show hw-module subslot all oir
   Module  Model               Operational Status
   ----------- --------------- -------------------------
   subslot 0/1 NIM-8MFT-T1/E1 ok
   ```
subslot 1/0 SM-X T1/E1 ok

Router# show platform hardware backplaneswitch-manager R0 status

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>slot</th>
<th>bay</th>
<th>port</th>
<th>enable</th>
<th>link status</th>
<th>speed(Mbps)</th>
<th>duplex</th>
<th>autoneg</th>
<th>pause_tx</th>
<th>mtu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>CP</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>ENABLED</td>
<td>ENABLED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>GE1</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>DISABLED</td>
<td>ENABLED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>GE0</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>DISABLED</td>
<td>ENABLED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>GE1</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>DISABLED</td>
<td>ENABLED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>GE0</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>DISABLED</td>
<td>ENABLED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>GE1</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>DISABLED</td>
<td>ENABLED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>GE0</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>DISABLED</td>
<td>ENABLED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>GE1</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>DISABLED</td>
<td>ENABLED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>GE0</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>DISABLED</td>
<td>ENABLED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>GE1</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>DISABLED</td>
<td>ENABLED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>GE0</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>DISABLED</td>
<td>ENABLED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>GE1</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>DISABLED</td>
<td>ENABLED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>GE0</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>DISABLED</td>
<td>ENABLED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>FFP</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>10000</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>ENABLED</td>
<td>DISABLED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>slot</th>
<th>bay</th>
<th>port</th>
<th>mac</th>
<th>vid</th>
<th>modid</th>
<th>flags</th>
<th>Layer 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>FFP</td>
<td>2c54.2dd2.661b</td>
<td>2351</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0x20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>FFP</td>
<td>2c54.2dd2.661b</td>
<td>2352</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0x20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>CP</td>
<td>2c54.2dd2.661e</td>
<td>2351</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0xC60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>CP</td>
<td>2c54.2dd2.661e</td>
<td>2352</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0x20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>GE0</td>
<td>58bf.ea3a.00f6</td>
<td>2350</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0x460</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>FFP</td>
<td>2c54.2dd2.661b</td>
<td>2350</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0x20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>GE0</td>
<td>58bf.ea3a.00f6</td>
<td>2352</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0x20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>CP</td>
<td>2c54.2dd2.661e</td>
<td>2350</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0x20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>GE0</td>
<td>58bf.ea3a.00f6</td>
<td>2351</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0xC60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Port block masks: rows=from port, columns=to port, u=unknown unicast, m=unknown multicast, b=broadcast, A=all

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CP</th>
<th>FFP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/0/1</td>
<td>1/0/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/0/1</td>
<td>2/0/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0/1/1</td>
<td>0/2/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0/2/0</td>
<td>0/3/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0/3/0</td>
<td>0/4/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0/4/1</td>
<td>0/4/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0/3/0</td>
<td>0/4/0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Port drops
Port VLAN membership: [untagged vlan] U=untagged T=tagged <VLAN range begin>-<VLAN range end>

FFP [2352] T:0001-4095
0/1/1 [2352] T:0002-2351 U:2352-2352 T:2353-4095
0/1/0 [2352] T:0002-2351 U:2352-2352 T:2353-4095
0/2/1 [2352] T:0002-2351 U:2352-2352 T:2353-4095
0/2/0 [2352] T:0002-2351 U:2352-2352 T:2353-4095

show platform hardware backplaneswitch-manager rp active ffp statistics: Example

Router# show platform hardware backplaneswitch-manager rp active ffp statistics

Broadcom 10G port(e.g: FFP) status:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Rx pkts</th>
<th>Rx Bytes</th>
<th>Tx Pkts</th>
<th>Tx Bytes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~64</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65-127</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128-255</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>256-511</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>512-1023</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1024-1518</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1519-2047</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2048-4095</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4096-9216</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9217-16383</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoS 0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoS 1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoS 2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoS 3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoS 4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoS 5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoS 6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoS 7</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unicast</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Managing Modules and Interfaces

The router supports various modules. For a list of supported modules, see Modules Supported, on page 264. The module management process involves bringing up the modules so that their resources can be utilized. This process consists of tasks such as module detection, authentication, configuration by clients, status reporting, and recovery. For detailed information about module configuration, see the module documentation referred to in the Documentation Roadmap for the Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers.

For a list of small-form-factor pluggable (SFP) modules supported on your router, see the "Installing and Upgrading Internal Modules and FRUs" section in the Hardware Installation Guide for the Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers.

The following sections provide additional information on managing the modules and interfaces:

- Managing Module Interfaces, on page 276
- Managing Modules and Interfaces Using Backplane Switch, on page 276
Managing Module Interfaces

After a module is in service, you can control and monitor its module interface. Interface management includes configuring clients with `shut` or `no shut` commands and reporting on the state of the interface and the interface-level statistics.

Monitor the module status and other statistical information using the `show` commands listed in Monitoring and Troubleshooting Modules and Interfaces, on page 279.

Managing Modules and Interfaces Using Backplane Switch

- Backplane Ethernet Switch, on page 276
- Viewing Module and Interface Card Status on a Router, on page 276
- Viewing Backplane Switch Statistics, on page 277
- Viewing Backplane Switch Port Statistics, on page 277
- Viewing Slot Assignments, on page 278

Backplane Ethernet Switch

The backplane Ethernet switch on your router provides connectivity to Enhanced Service Modules and Network Interface Modules (NIMs). The backplane Ethernet switch facilitates all packet transfers between the host router and its pluggable modules.

The backplane Ethernet switch act as a manager for the host router and controls the module and exchanges logical flow-control information with the module to ensure accurate feedback to the router features. See Managing Modules and Interfaces, on page 275 for more information. The backplane Ethernet switch also facilitates control plane traffic flow from the host router to the modules. The backplane switch manages modules and interface cards and is used to communicate with the modules. Module drivers integrate with the backplane switch to configure packet flow and control traffic buffering.

You are not required to perform any configuration tasks on the backplane switch; all the configurations are performed from the module, which may or may not lead to changes on the backplane switch. For more information on installing an adapter, see the Hardware Installation Guide for the Cisco ISR 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers.

Note

Layer 2 protocols, such as the IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree Protocol (STP), are not supported in the backplane Ethernet switch.

Viewing Module and Interface Card Status on a Router

You can view the module and interface card details using the `show platform` command in privileged EXEC mode.

The following example shows the sample output for the `show platform` command:

```
Router# show platform
Chassis type: ISR4451/K9
Slot  Type      State     Insert time (ago)
```
Viewing Backplane Switch Statistics

Statistics reports for each slot show incoming and outgoing packets or bytes. You can use the information to check traffic flow on the various ports of the backplane switch. The following example shows a sample output for the `show platform hardware backplaneswitch-manager rp active summary` command:

```
Router# show platform hardware backplaneswitch-manager rp active summary

Slot bay port InBytes InPkts OutBytes OutPkts
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
0 0 CP 6242 9361008 6241 403209
1 0 GE1 0 0 0 0
0 0 GE0 6306 407477 6241 9360934
2 0 GE1 0 0 0 0
0 0 GE0 0 0 0 0
0 0 CP 6242 9361008 6241 403209
1 0 GE0 6306 407477 6241 9360934
2 0 GE1 0 0 0 0
0 0 GE0 0 0 0 0
0 0 CP 6242 9361008 6241 403209
1 0 GE0 6306 407477 6241 9360934
2 0 GE1 0 0 0 0
0 0 GE0 0 0 0 0
```

Viewing Backplane Switch Port Statistics

You can view statistical information related to the port connected to the backplane switch using the `show platform hardware backplaneswitch-manager rp active subslot GEO statistics` command. The following example displays statistical information related to the backplane switch and ports connected to it:

```
Router# show platform hardware backplaneswitch-manager rp active subslot 1/0 GEO statistics

Broadcom 1G port(e.g: NIM, ESM, CP) status:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rx pkts</th>
<th>Rx Bytes</th>
<th>Tx Pkts</th>
<th>Tx Bytes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>6306</td>
<td>407477</td>
<td>6241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=64</td>
<td>6237</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65-127</td>
<td>66</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
### Viewing Slot Assignments

Use the `show inventory` command in privileged EXEC mode to view the slot assignments, as shown in the following example:

```
Router# show inventory
NAME: "Chassis", DESCR: "Cisco ISR4451 Chassis"
PID: ISR4451/K9 , VID: V01, SN: FGL163910CM

NAME: "Power Supply Module 1", DESCR: "Cisco 4451-X ISR 450W AC Power Supply"
PID: XXX-XXXX-XX , VID: XXX, SN: DCA1623X05N

NAME: "Fan Tray", DESCR: "Cisco 4451-X ISR Fan tray"
PID: ACS-4450-FANASSY , VID: , SN: 

NAME: "module 0", DESCR: "Cisco ISR4451 Built-In NIM controller"
PID: ISR4451/K9 , VID: , SN: 
```
Monitoring and Troubleshooting Modules and Interfaces

Use the following commands in global configuration mode to monitor and troubleshoot the modules and interfaces:

- `show platform`
- `show platform software backplaneswitch-manager RP [active [detail]]`
- `show platform hardware backplaneswitch-manager RP active CP statistics`
- `show platform hardware backplaneswitch-manager RP active summary`
- `show platform hardware backplaneswitch-manager [R0 [status] | RP]`
- `show diag all eeprom details`

**show platform**

```plaintext
Router# show platform
Chassis type: ISR4451/K9

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slot</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Insert time (ago)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>ISR4451/K9</td>
<td>ok</td>
<td>15:57:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>ISR4451-4x1GE</td>
<td>ok</td>
<td>15:57:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>ISR4451/K9</td>
<td>ok</td>
<td>15:57:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>SM-1T3/E3</td>
<td>ok</td>
<td>15:57:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/0</td>
<td>SM-1T3/E3</td>
<td>ok</td>
<td>15:57:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ISR4451/K9</td>
<td>ok</td>
<td>15:57:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/0</td>
<td>SM-1T3/E3</td>
<td>ok</td>
<td>15:57:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R0</td>
<td>ISR4451/K9</td>
<td>ok, active</td>
<td>15:57:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F0</td>
<td>ISR4451-FP</td>
<td>ok, active</td>
<td>15:57:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P0</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>ps, fail</td>
<td>never</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1</td>
<td>XXX-XXXX-XX</td>
<td>ok</td>
<td>15:56:58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2</td>
<td>ACS-4450-FANASSY</td>
<td>ok</td>
<td>15:56:58</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slot</th>
<th>CPLD Version</th>
<th>Firmware Version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>12090323</td>
<td>15.3(01r)S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>12090323</td>
<td>15.3(01r)S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>12090323</td>
<td>15.3(01r)S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R0</td>
<td>12090323</td>
<td>15.3(01r)S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F0</td>
<td>12090323</td>
<td>15.3(01r)S</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 21: show platform Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slot</td>
<td>Slot number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Type of module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State</td>
<td>Status of module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insert Time</td>
<td>Time since the module has been up and running</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

show platform software backplaneswitch-manager RP [active [detail]]

Router# show platform software backplaneswitch-manager RP active detail

BSM Software Display

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>module port</th>
<th>port type</th>
<th>alien type</th>
<th>traf type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0/1/0</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
<td>TRUNK</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0/1/1</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
<td>TRUNK</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0/2/0</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
<td>TRUNK</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0/2/1</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
<td>TRUNK</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0/3/0</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
<td>TRUNK</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0/3/1</td>
<td>ALIEN</td>
<td>TRUNK</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0/4/0</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
<td>TRUNK</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0/4/1</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
<td>TRUNK</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/0/0</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
<td>TRUNK</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/0/1</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
<td>TRUNK</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/0/0</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
<td>TRUNK</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/0/1</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
<td>TRUNK</td>
<td>NGIO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

show platform hardware backplaneswitch-manager RP active CP statistics

Router# show platform hardware backplaneswitch-manager RP active CP statistics

Broadcom 1G port (e.g. NIM, NGSM, CP) status:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Rx pkts</th>
<th>Rx Bytes</th>
<th>Tx Pkts</th>
<th>Tx Bytes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>6242</td>
<td>9361008</td>
<td>6241</td>
<td>403209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~64</td>
<td>72</td>
<td></td>
<td>6178</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65~127</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128~255</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>256~511</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>512~1023</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1024~1518</td>
<td>6163</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1519~2047</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2048~4095</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4096~9216</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good</td>
<td>6242</td>
<td>6241</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoS 0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoS 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoS 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CoS 3  6241  403209
CoS 4  0  0
CoS 5  0  0
CoS 6  0  0
CoS 7  0  0
Unicast  6241  6235
Multicast  1  0
Broadcast  0  6
Control  0  0
VLAN  0  0
Errored
FCS  0  0
Runts  0  0
Undersize  0  0
Ether len  0  0
Fragment  0  0
Jabber  0  0
MTU  0
Drops
CoS 0  0  0
CoS 1  0  0
CoS 2  0  0
CoS 3  0  0
CoS 4  0  0
CoS 5  0  0
CoS 6  0  0
CoS 7  0  0
STP  0
backpress  0
congest  0  0
purge/cell  0
no destination  1
Pause  0  0

show platform hardware backplaneswitch-manager RP active summary

Router# show platform hardware backplaneswitch-manager RP active summary
slot  bay  port  InBytes  InPkts  OutBytes  OutPkts
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
0  0  CP  242  0  0  0
1  0  GE1  0  0  0  0
1  0  GE0  0  0  0  0
2  0  GE1  0  0  0  0
2  0  GE0  0  0  0  0
0  1  GE1  0  0  0  0
0  1  GE0  0  0  0  0
0  2  GE1  0  0  0  0
0  2  GE0  0  0  0  0
0  3  GE1  0  0  0  0
0  3  GE0  0  0  0  0
0  4  GE1  0  0  0  0
0  4  GE0  0  0  0  0
0  0  FFP  0  0  0  0

show platform hardware backplaneswitch-manager [R0 [status] | RP]

Router# show platform hardware backplaneswitch-manager R0 status
slot  bay  port  enable  link status  speed(Mbps)  duplex  autoneg  pause_tx
pause_rx  mtu
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
0  0  CP  True  Up  1000  Full  ENABLED  ENABLED

Cisco 4000 Series ISRs Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.x
## Monitoring and Troubleshooting Modules and Interfaces

### Port Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>slot</th>
<th>bay</th>
<th>port</th>
<th>mac</th>
<th>vid</th>
<th>modid</th>
<th>flags</th>
<th>Layer 2</th>
<th>Layer 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>FFP</td>
<td>2c54.2dd2.661b</td>
<td>2351</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0x20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>CP</td>
<td>2c54.2dd2.661b</td>
<td>2352</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0x20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>CP</td>
<td>2c54.2dd2.661e</td>
<td>2351</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0xC60</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>CP</td>
<td>2c54.2dd2.661e</td>
<td>2352</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0x20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>GEO</td>
<td>58bf.ea3a.00f6</td>
<td>2350</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0x460</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>FFP</td>
<td>2c54.2dd2.661b</td>
<td>2350</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0x20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>GEO</td>
<td>58bf.ea3a.00f6</td>
<td>2352</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0x20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>CP</td>
<td>2c54.2dd2.661b</td>
<td>2350</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0x20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>GEO</td>
<td>58bf.ea3a.00f6</td>
<td>2351</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0xC60</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Port Block Masks

```
CP FFP 1/0/1 1/0/0 2/0/1 2/0/0 0/1/0 0/1/1 0/2/1 0/2/0 0/3/1 0/3/0
0/4/1 0/4/0 drops
```

```
CP  FFP 1/0/1 1/0/0 2/0/1 2/0/0 0/1/0 0/1/1 0/2/1 0/2/0 0/3/1 0/3/0
0/4/1 0/4/0 drops
```

- um: unknown unicast, m: unknown multicast, b: broadcast, A: all

---

**Port block masks: rows-from port, columns-to port, u=unknown unicast, m=unknown multicast, b=broadcast, A=all**

---

**Cisco 4000 Series ISRs Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.x**

OL-25328-03
Port VLAN membership: [untagged vlan] U=untagged T=tagged <VLAN range begin>-<VLAN range end>

FFP [2352] T:0001-4095
0/1/1 [2352] T:0002-2351 U:2352-2352 T:2353-4095
0/1/0 [2352] T:0002-2351 U:2352-2352 T:2353-4095
0/2/1 [2352] T:0002-2351 U:2352-2352 T:2353-4095
0/2/0 [2352] T:0002-2351 U:2352-2352 T:2353-4095

show diag all eeprom details

Router# show diag all eeprom details
MIDPLANE EEPROM data:

EEEPROM version : 4
Compatible Type : 0xFF
PCB Serial Number : F0C15520B7L
Controller Type : 1902
Hardware Revision : 1.0
PCB Part Number : 73-13854-02
Top Assy. Part Number : 800-36894-01
Board Revision : 05
Deviation Number : 123968
Fab Version : 02
Product Identifier (PID) : ISR4451/K9
Version Identifier (VID) : V01
CLEI Code : TDBTDBTDBT
Processor type : D0
Chassis Serial Number : FGL1601129D
Chassis MAC Address : 30f7.0d53.c7e0
MAC Address block size : 144
Manufacturing Test Data : 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
Asset ID : P1B-R2C

Power/Fan Module P0 EEPROM data:

EEEPROM version : 4
Compatible Type : 0xFF
Controller Type : 1509
Unknown Field (type 00DF): 1.85.1.236.1
Deviation Number : 0
PCB Serial Number : DCA1547X037
RMA Test History : 00
RMA Number : 0-0-0-0
RMA History : 00
Version Identifier (VID) : XXX
Product Identifier (PID) : XXX-XXXX-XX
CLEI Code : 0000000000
Environment Monitor Data: 41 01 C2 42 00 05 F8 00
50 01 F4 1B 5B 03 E8 1F
4A 05 DC 21 34 07 D0 21
FC 09 C4 22 60 0B 6B 22
92 0D AC 22 D8 0F A0 22
F8 11 94 22 F6 13 88 23
3C 15 7C 23 28 17 70 23
00 19 64 22 D8 1B 58 22
C4 1D 4C 22 BA 1F 40 22
A6 21 34 22 9C 23 28 22
92 25 1C 22 88 27 10 22
06
Board Revision: P0
Power/Fan Module P1 EEPROM data is not initialized
Power/Fan Module P2 EEPROM data is not initialized

Slot R0 EEPROM data:

EEPROM version: 4
Compatible Type: 0xFF
PCB Serial Number: FCC15520B7L
Controller Type: 1902
Hardware Revision: 1.0
PCB Part Number: 73-13864-02
Top Assy. Part Number: 800-36894-01
Board Revision: 05
Deviation Number: 123968
Fab Version: 02
Product Identifier (PID): ISR4451/K9
Version Identifier (VID): V01
CLEI Code: TDBTDBTDBT
Processor type: D0
Chassis Serial Number: PGL160129D
Chassis MAC Address: 30f7.0d53.c7e0
MAC Address block size: 144
Manufacturing Test Data: 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
Asset ID: P1B-R2C
Asset ID:

Slot F0 EEPROM data:

EEPROM version: 4
Compatible Type: 0xFF
Controller Type: 3567
Hardware Revision: 4.1
PCB Part Number: 73-12387-01
MAC Address block size: 15
Chassis MAC Address: aabb.ccdd.eeff
Product Identifier (PID): ISR4451-FF
Version Identifier (VID): V00
PCB Serial Number: FF123456789
Asset ID:

Slot 0 EEPROM data:

EEPROM version: 4
Compatible Type: 0xFF
Controller Type: 1612
Hardware Revision: 4.1
PCB Part Number: 73-12387-01
MAC Address block size: 15
Chassis MAC Address: aabb.ccdd.eeff
Product Identifier (PID): ISR4451-NGSM
Version Identifier (VID): V00
PCB Serial Number: NGSM1234567
Asset ID : 

Slot 1 EEPROM data:

EEPROM version : 4
Compatible Type : 0xFF
Controller Type : 1612
Hardware Revision : 4.1
PCB Part Number : 73-12387-01
MAC Address block size : 15
Chassis MAC Address : aabb.ccdd.eeff
Product Identifier (PID) : ISR4451-NGSM
Version Identifier (VID) : V00
PCB Serial Number : NGSM1234567

Asset ID : 

Slot 2 EEPROM data:

EEPROM version : 4
Compatible Type : 0xFF
Controller Type : 1612
Hardware Revision : 4.1
PCB Part Number : 73-12387-01
MAC Address block size : 15
Chassis MAC Address : aabb.ccdd.eeff
Product Identifier (PID) : ISR4451-NGSM
Version Identifier (VID) : V00
PCB Serial Number : NGSM1234567

Asset ID : 

SPA EEPROM data for subslot 0/0:

EEPROM version : 5
Compatible Type : 0xFF
Controller Type : 1902
Hardware Revision : 2.2
Boot Timeout : 400 msecs
PCB Serial Number : JAB092709EL
PCB Part Number : 73-8700-01
PCB Revision : A0
Fab Version : 01
RMA Test History : 00
RMA Number : 0-0-0-0
RMA History : 00
Deviation Number : 78409
Product Identifier (PID) : ISR4451-4X1GE
Version Identifier (VID) : V01
Top Assy. Part Number : 68-2236-01
Top Assy. Revision : A0
IDPROM Format Revision : 36
System Clock Frequency : 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
CLEI Code : CNUIAHSAAA
Base MAC Address : 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
MAC Address block size : 0
Manufacturing Test Data : 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
Field Diagnostics Data : 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
Calibration Data : Minimum: 0 dBmV, Maximum: 0 dBmV
Calibration values :
Power Consumption : 13100 mWatts (Maximum)
Environment Monitor Data : 03 30 OC E4 46 32 09 C4
46 32 05 DC 46 32 05 DC
46 32 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
Configuration Examples

This section provides examples of deactivating and activating modules.

Deactivating a Module Configuration: Example

You can deactivate a module to perform OIR of that module. The following example shows how to deactivate a module (and its interfaces) and remove power to the module. In this example, the module is installed in subslot 0 of the router.

Router(config)# hw-module slot 1 subslot 1/0 shutdown unpowered

Activating a Module Configuration: Example

You can activate a module if you have previously deactivated it. If you have not deactivated a module and its interfaces during OIR, then the module is automatically reactivated upon reactivation of the router.

The following example shows how to activate a module. In this example, the module is installed in subslot 0, located in slot 1 of the router:

Router(config)# hw-module slot 1 subslot 1/0 start
SFP Auto-Detect and Auto-Failover

Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers (ISRs) provide a Front Panel Gigabit Ethernet (FPGE) port that supports copper and fiber concurrent connections. Media can be configured for failover redundancy when the network goes down. This feature is supported only on Cisco ISR platforms.

This chapter includes this section:

- Enabling Auto-Detect, on page 287

Enabling Auto-Detect

When the media-type is not configured, the Auto-Detect feature is enabled by default. The Auto-Detect feature automatically detects the media that is connected and links up. If both the media are connected, whichever media comes up first is linked. By default, the media-type on FPGE ports is set to auto-select. User can overwrite the media-type configuration to either RJ-45 or SFP using the `media-type rj45/sfp` command under the FPGE interface. The media type configuration also falls back to “Auto-select” mode when the `no media-type` command is configured. You can use the `no media-type` command in interface configuration mode to enable the Auto-Detect feature.

Configuring Auto-Detect

The Auto-Detect feature is enabled by default on the Front Panel Gige Ports. It is enabled by either configuring "media-type auto-select" or "no media-type". To configure the Auto-Detect, perform these steps:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. interface gigabitethernet {slot | bay | port}
3. media-type auto-select
4. End

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Configuring the Primary and Secondary Media

When the router receives an indication that the primary media is down, the secondary failover media is enabled. After the switchover, the media does not switch back to primary media when the primary media is restored. You need to use either `shut` or `no shut` command or reload the module to switch the media-type back to primary(preferred) media.

To assign the primary or secondary failover media on the GE-SFP port, perform these steps:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `configure terminal`
2. `interface gigabitethernet {slot | port}`
3. `media-type rj45 autofailover`
4. `End`

### Examples

The following example shows the default configuration and the show running configuration does not show any media type when the no media-type is selected.

```
Router(config)# show running interface gigabitethernet 0/0/0
Building configuration...
```

```
Current configuration : 71 bytes
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0
  no ip address
  negotiation auto
end
```

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><strong>Enters interface configuration mode.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface gigabitethernet {slot</td>
<td>bay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config)# interface gigabitethernet slot/port</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><strong>Auto-select mode uses whichever connector is attached.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>media-type auto-select</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-if)# media-type auto-select</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><strong>Exits to global configuration mode.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-if)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Detailed Steps

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**  
configure terminal  
Example:  
Router# configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2**  
interface gigabitethernet {slot | port}  
Example:  
Router(config)# interface gigabitethernet slot/port | Enters interface configuration mode. |
| **Step 3**  
media-type rj45 autofailover  
Example:  
Router(config-if)# media-type rj45 autofailover | Configures the port with rj45 as the primary media for automatic failover. |
| **Step 4**  
End  
Example:  
Router(config-if)# end | Exits to global configuration mode. |

### Examples

The following example shows the primary configuration.

```
Router(config)# show running interface gigabitethernet 0/0/0  
Building configuration...  
Current configuration : 102 bytes  
!  
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0  
no ip address  
media-type rj45 auto-failover  
negotiation auto  
end
```
CHAPTER 19

Cellular IPv6 Address

This chapter provides an overview of the IPv6 addresses and describes how to configure Cellular IPv6 address on Cisco 4000 series ISRs.

This chapter includes this section:

- Cellular IPv6 Address, on page 291

Cellular IPv6 Address

IPv6 addresses are represented as a series of 16-bit hexadecimal fields separated by colons (:) in the format: x:x:x:x:x:x. Following are two examples of IPv6 addresses:

- 2001:CDBA::3257:9652 (zeros can be omitted)

IPv6 addresses commonly contain successive hexadecimal fields of zeros. Two colons (::) may be used to compress successive hexadecimal fields of zeros at the beginning, middle, or end of an IPv6 address (the colons represent successive hexadecimal fields of zeros). The table below lists compressed IPv6 address formats.

An IPv6 address prefix, in the format ipv6-prefix/prefix-length, can be used to represent bit-wise contiguous blocks of the entire address space. The ipv6-prefix must be in the form documented in RFC 2373 where the address is specified in hexadecimal using 16-bit values between colons. The prefix length is a decimal value that indicates how many of the high-order contiguous bits of the address comprise the prefix (the network portion of the address). For example, 2001:cdca::3257:9652 /64 is a valid IPv6 prefix.

IPv6 Unicast Routing

An IPv6 unicast address is an identifier for a single interface, on a single node. A packet that is sent to a unicast address is delivered to the interface identified by that address.

Cisco 4000 Series ISR supports the following address types:

- Link-Lock Address, on page 292
- Global Address, on page 292
Link-Lock Address

A link-local address is an IPv6 unicast address that can be automatically configured on any interface using the link-local prefix FE80::/10 (1111111010) and the interface identifier in the modified EUI-64 format. An link-local address is automatically configured on the cellular interface when an IPv6 address is enabled.

After the data call is established, the link-local address on the cellular interface is updated with the host generated link-local address that consists of the link-local prefix FF80::/10 (1111111010) and the auto-generated interface identifier from the USB hardware address. The figure below shows the structure of a link-local address.

Global Address

A global IPv6 unicast address is defined by a global routing prefix, a subnet ID, and an interface ID. The routing prefix is obtained from the PGW. The Interface Identifier is automatically generated from the USB hardware address using the interface identifier in the modified EUI-64 format. The USB hardware address changes after the router reloads.

Configuring Cellular IPv6 Address

To configure the cellular IPv6 address, perform these steps:

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. configure terminal
2. interface Cellular {type | number}
3. ip address negotiated
4. encapsulation slip
5. load-interval seconds
6. dialer in-band
7. dialer idle-timeout seconds
8. dialer string string
9. dialer-group group-number
10. no peer default ip address
11. ipv6 address autoconfig
12. async mode interactive
13. routing dynamic
14. dialer-list dialer-group protocol protocol-name {permit | deny | list | access-list-number | access-group }
15. ipv6 route ipv6-prefix/prefix-length 128
16. End

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>`interface Cellular {type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Router(config)# interface cellular 0/1/0</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Step 3 | `ip address negotiated` | Specifies that the IP address for a particular interface is dynamically obtained. |
| Example: | `Router(config-if)# ipv6 address negotiated` |

| Step 4 | `encapsulation slip` | Specifies Serial Line Internet Protocol (SLIP) encapsulation for an interface configured for dial-on-demand routing (DDR). |
| Example: | `Router(config-if)# encapsulation slip` |

| Step 5 | `load-interval seconds` | Specifies the length of time for which data is used to compute load statistics. |
| Example: | `Router(config-if)# load-interval 30` |

| Step 6 | `dialer in-band` | Enables DDR and configures the specified serial interface to use in-band dialing. |
| Example: | `Router(config-if)# dialer in-band` |

| Step 7 | `dialer idle-timeout seconds` | Specifies the dialer idle timeout period. |
| Example: | `Router(config-if)# dialer idle-timeout 0` |

| Step 8 | `dialer string string` | Specifies the number or string to dial. |
| Example: | `Router(config-if)# dialer string lte` |

| Step 9 | `dialer-group group-number` | Specifies the number of the dialer access group to which the specific interface belongs. |
| Example: | `Router(config-if)# dialer-group 1` |

| Step 10 | `no peer default ip address` | Removes the default address from your configuration. |
| Example: | `Router(config-if)# no peer default ip address` |

| Step 11 | `ipv6 address autoconfig` | Enables automatic configuration of IPv6 addresses using stateless autoconfiguration on an interface and enables IPv6 processing on the interface. |
| Example: | `Router(config-if)# ipv6 address autoconfig` |

<p>| Step 12 | <code>async mode interactive</code> | Please provide the inputs? |
| Example: | <code>Router(config-if)# async mode interactive</code> |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 13</strong></td>
<td><strong>Enablestheroutertopassroutingupdates tootherrouters throughaninterface.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><strong>Router(config-if)#routing dynamic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 14</strong></td>
<td><strong>Defines adial-on-demand routing (DDR) dialer list for dialing by protocol or by a combination of a protocol and a previously defined access list.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><strong>Router(config)#dialer-list 1 protocol ipv6 permit</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 15</strong></td>
<td><strong>Exits to global configuration mode.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td><strong>Router(config)#end</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows the Cellular IPv6 configuration:

```
Router(config)# interface Cellular0/0/0
ip address negotiated
encapsulation slip
load-interval 30
dialer in-band
dialer idle-timeout 0
dialer string lte
dialer-group 1
no peer default ip address
ipv6 address autoconfig
async mode interactive
routing dynamic
interface Cellular0/1/0
ip address negotiated
encapsulation slip
load-interval 30
dialer in-band
dialer idle-timeout 0
dialer string lte
dialer-group 1
no peer default ip address
ipv6 address autoconfig
async mode interactive
routing dynamic
dialer-list 1 protocol ipv6 permit
ipv6 route 2001:1234:1234::/64 Cellular0/1/0
ipv6 route 2001:4321:4321::5/128 Cellular0/1/1
```
Cellular IPv6 Address

Configuring Cellular IPv6 Address
Configuring Cellular IPv6 Address
Radio Aware Routing

Radio-Aware Routing (RAR) is a mechanism that uses radios to interact with the routing protocol OSPFv3 to signal the appearance, disappearance, and link conditions of one-hop routing neighbors.

In a large mobile networks, connections to the routing neighbors are often interrupted due to distance and radio obstructions. When these signals do not reach the routing protocols, protocol timers are used to update the status of a neighbor. Routing protocols have lengthy timer, which is not recommended in mobile networks.

The RAR feature is supported on Cisco ISR G2 and G3 Series Routers, Cisco ISR 4000 Series Routers.

PPPoE Extensions is the RAR protocol supported in Cisco 4000 Series ISRs. PPPoE Extensions with Aggregate support is introduce from Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7. release. OSPFv3 and EIGRP are the supported routing protocols.

• Benefits of Radio Aware Routing, on page 297
• Restrictions and Limitations, on page 298
• License Requirements, on page 298
• System Components, on page 298
• QoS Provisioning on PPPoE Extension Session, on page 299
• Example: Configuring the RAR Feature in Bypass Mode, on page 299
• Example: Configuring the RAR Feature in Aggregate Mode, on page 301
• Verifying RAR Session Details, on page 302
• Troubleshooting Radio Aware Routing, on page 308

Benefits of Radio Aware Routing

The Radio Aware Routing feature offers the following benefits:

• Provides faster network convergence through immediate recognition of changes.

• Enables routing for failing or fading radio links.

• Allows easy routing between line-of-sight and non-line-of-sight paths.

• Provides faster convergence and optimal route selection so that delay-sensitive traffic, such as voice and video, is not disrupted

• Provides efficient radio resources and bandwidth usage.

• Reduces impact on the radio links by performing congestion control in the router.
• Allows route selection based on radio power conservation.
• Enables decoupling of the routing and radio functionalities.
• Provides simple Ethernet connection to RFC 5578, R2CP, and DLEP compliant radios.

Restrictions and Limitations

The Radio Aware Routing feature has the following restrictions and limitations:
• The DLEP and R2CP protocols are not supported in Cisco 4000 Series ISRs.
• Multicast traffic is not supported in aggregate mode.
• Cisco High Availability (HA) technology is not supported.

License Requirements

This feature is made available with the AppX license.

System Components

The Radio Aware Routing (RAR) feature is implemented using the MANET (Mobile adhoc network) infrastructure comprising of different components such as PPPoE, Virtual multipoint interface (VMI), QoS, routing protocol interface and RAR protocols.

Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet PPPoE or PPPoE

PPPoE is a well-defined communication mechanism between the client and the server. In the RAR implementation, radio takes the role of the PPPoE client and router takes the role of the PPPoE server. This allows a loose coupling of radio and router, while providing a well-defined and predictable communication mechanism.

As PPPoE is a session or a connection oriented protocol, it extends the point-to-point radio frequency (RF) link from an external radio to an IOS router.

PPPoE Extensions

PPPoE extensions are used when the router communicates with the radio. In the Cisco IOS implementation of PPPoE, each individual session is represented by virtual access interface (connectivity to a radio neighbor) on which, QoS can be applied with these PPPoE extensions.

RFC5578 provides extensions to PPPoE to support credit-based flow control and session-based real time link metrics, which are very useful for connections with variable bandwidth and limited buffering capabilities (such as radio links).
Virtual Multipoint Interface (VMI)

Though PPPoE Extensions provides the most of the setup to communicate between a router and a radio, VMI addresses the need to manage and translate events that higher layers (example, routing protocols) consume. In addition, VMI operates in the Bypass mode.

In Bypass mode, every Virtual Access Interface (VAI) representing a radio neighbor is exposed to routing protocols OSPFv3 and EIGRP, so that, the routing protocol directly communicates with the respective VAI for both unicast and multicast routing protocol traffic.

In Aggregae mode, VMI is exposed to the routing protocols (OSPF) so that the routing protocols can leverage VMI for their optimum efficiency. When the network neighbors are viewed as a collection of networks on a point-to-multipoint link with broadcast and multicast capability at VMI, VMI helps in aggregating the multiple virtual access interfaces created from PPPoE. VMI presents a single multi access layer 2 broadcast capable interface. The VMI layer handles re-directs unicast routing protocol traffic to the appropriate P2P link (Virtual-Access interface), and replicates any Multicast/Broadcast traffic that needs to flow. Since the routing protocol communicates to a single interface, the size of the topology database is reduced, without impacting the integrity of the network.

QoS Provisioning on PPPoE Extension Session

The following example describes QoS provisioning on PPPoE extension session:

```plaintext
policy-map rar_policer
   class class-default
      police 10000 2000 1000 conform-action transmit exceed-action drop violate-action drop
policy-map rar_shaper
   class class-default
      shape average percent 1
interface Virtual-Template2
   ip address 92.92.2.1 255.255.255.0
   no peer default ip address
   no keepalive
   service-policy input rar_policer
end
```

Example: Configuring the RAR Feature in Bypass Mode

The following example is an end-to-end configuration of RAR in the bypass mode:

```plaintext
Note
Before you being the RAR configuration, you must first configure the subscriber authorization enable command to bring up the RAR session. Without enabling authorization, the Point-to-Point protocol does not recognize this as a RAR session and may not tag manet_radio in presentation of a PPPoE Active Discovery Initiate (PADI). By default, bypass mode does not appears in the configuration. It appears only if the mode is configured as bypass.

Configure a Service for RAR
```
policy-map type service rar-lab
  pppoe service manet_radio //note: Enter the pppoe service policy name as manet_radio

Configure Broadband

bba-group pppoe VMI2
  virtual-template 2
  service profile rar-lab
  !
  interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0
    description Connected to Client1
    negotiation auto
    pppoe enable group VMI2

Configure a Service for RAR

policy-map type service rar-lab
  pppoe service manet_radio //note: Enter the pppoe service policy name as manet_radio

Configuration in Bypass Mode

  • IP Address Configured under Virtual-Template Explicitly

    interface Virtual-Template2
    ip address 90.90.90.3 255.255.255.0
    no ip redirects
    peer default ip address pool PPPoEpool2
    ipv6 enable
    ospfv3 1 network manet
    ospfv3 1 ipv4 area 0
    ospfv3 1 ipv6 area 0
    no keepalive
    service-policy input rar_policer Or/And
    service-policy output rar_shaper

  • VMI Unnumbered Configured under Virtual Template

    interface Virtual-Template2
    ip unnumbered vmi2
    no ip redirects
    peer default ip address pool PPPoEpool2
    ipv6 enable
    ospfv3 1 network manet
    ospfv3 1 ipv4 area 0
    ospfv3 1 ipv6 area 0
    no keepalive
    service-policy input rar_policer Or/And
    service-policy output rar_shaper

Configure the Virtual Multipoint Interface in Bypass Mode

    interface vmi2 //configure the virtual multi interface
    ip address 92.92.2.1 255.255.255.0
physical-interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0
mode bypass

interface vmi3//configure the virtual multi interface
  ip address 93.93.2.1 255.255.255.0
physical-interface GigabitEthernet0/0/1
mode bypass

Configure OSPF Routing

  router ospfv3 1
  router-id 1.1.1.1
  !
  address-family ipv4 unicast
     redistribute connected metric 1 metric-type 1
     log-adjacency-changes
     exit-address-family
  !
  address-family ipv6 unicast
     redistribute connected metric-type 1
     log-adjacency-changes
     exit-address-family
  !
  ip local pool PPPoEpool2 92.92.2.3 92.92.2.254

Example: Configuring the RAR Feature in Aggregate Mode

The following example is an end-to-end configuration of RAR in the aggregate mode:

  Note

Before you being the RAR configuration, you must first configure the subscriber authorization enable command to bring up the RAR session. Without enabling authorization, the Point-to-Point protocol does not recognize this as a RAR session and may not tag manet_radio in PADI.

Configure a Service for RAR

  policy-map type service rar-lab
     pppoe service manet_radio //note: Enter the pppoe service policy name as manet_radio

Configure Broadband

  bba-group pppoe VMI2
     virtual-template 2
     service profile rar-lab

  !
  interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0
     description Connected to Client1
     negotiation auto
     pppoe enable group VMI2

  !
Configure a Service for RAR

```
policy-map type service rar-lab
  pppoe service manet_radio //note: Enter the pppoe service policy name as manet_radio
```

Configuration in Aggregate Mode

```
interface Virtual-Template2
  ip unnumbered vmi2
  no ip redirects
  no peer default ip address
  ipv6 enable
  no keepalive
  service-policy input rar_policer Or/And
  service-policy output rar_shaper
```

Configure the Virtual Multipoint Interface in Aggregate Mode

```
interface vmi2 //configure the virtual multi interface
  ip address 92.92.2.1 255.255.255.0
  physical-interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0
  mode aggregate
interface vmi3 //configure the virtual multi interface
  ip address 93.93.2.1 255.255.255.0
  no ip redirects
  no ip split-horizon eigrp 1
  physical-interface GigabitEthernet0/0/1
  mode aggregate
```

Configure OSPF Routing

```
router ospfv3 1
  router-id 1.1.1.1
  address-family ipv4 unicast
    redistribute connected metric 1 metric-type 1
    log-adjacency-changes
    exit-address-family
  address-family ipv6 unicast
    redistribute connected metric-type 1
    log-adjacency-changes
    exit-address-family
  ip local pool PPPoEpool2 92.92.2.3 92.92.2.254
  ip local pool PPPoEpool3 93.93.2.3 93.93.2.254
```

Verifying RAR Session Details

To retrieve RAR session details, use the following show commands:
```
Router#show pppoe session packets all
Total PPPoE sessions 2
```
session id: 9
local MAC address: 006b.f10e.a5e0, remote MAC address: 0050.56bc.424a
virtual access interface: Vi2.1, outgoing interface: Gi0/0/0
1646 packets sent, 2439363 received
176216 bytes sent, 117250290 received

PPPoE Flow Control Stats
Local Credits: 65535  Peer Credits: 65535  Local Scaling Value 64 bytes
Credit Grant Threshold: 28000  Max Credits per grant: 65535
Credit Starved Packets: 0
PADG xmit Seq Num: 32928  PADG Timer index: 0
PADG last rcvd Seq Num: 17313
PADG last nonzero Seq Num: 17306
PADG last nonzero rcvd amount: 2
PADG Timers: (ms)  [0]-1000  [1]-2000  [2]-3000  [3]-4000  [4]-5000
PADG xmit: 33308  rcvd: 17313
PADC xmit: 17313  rcvd: 19709
In-band credit pkt xmit: 7  rcvd: 2434422
Last credit packet snapshot
PADG xmit: seq_num = 32928, fcn = 0, bcn = 65535
PADC rcvd: seq_num = 32928, fcn = 65535, bcn = 65535
PADG rcvd: seq_num = 17313, fcn = 0, bcn = 65535
PADC xmit: seq_num = 17313, fcn = 65535, bcn = 65535
In-band credit pkt xmit: fcn = 61, bcn = 65533
In-band credit pkt rcvd: fcn = 0, bcn = 65534

==== PADQ Statistics====
PADQ xmit: 0  rcvd: 0

session id: 10
local MAC address: 006b.f10e.a5e1, remote MAC address: 0050.56bc.7dcb
virtual access interface: Vi2.2, outgoing interface: Gi0/0/1
1389302 packets sent, 1852 received
77869522 bytes sent, 142156 received

PPPoE Flow Control Stats
Local Credits: 65535  Peer Credits: 65535  Local Scaling Value 64 bytes
Credit Grant Threshold: 28000  Max Credits per grant: 65535
Credit Starved Packets: 0
PADG xmit Seq Num: 18787  PADG Timer index: 0
PADG last rcvd Seq Num: 18784
PADG last nonzero Seq Num: 18768
PADG last nonzero rcvd amount: 2
PADG Timers: (ms)  [0]-1000  [1]-2000  [2]-3000  [3]-4000  [4]-5000
PADG xmit: 18787  rcvd: 18784
PADC xmit: 18784  rcvd: 18787
In-band credit pkt xmit: 1387764  rcvd: 956
Last credit packet snapshot
PADG xmit: seq_num = 18787, fcn = 0, bcn = 65535
PADC rcvd: seq_num = 18787, fcn = 65535, bcn = 65535
PADG rcvd: seq_num = 18784, fcn = 0, bcn = 65535
PADC xmit: seq_num = 18784, fcn = 65535, bcn = 65535
In-band credit pkt xmit: fcn = 0, bcn = 64222
In-band credit pkt rcvd: fcn = 0, bcn = 65534

==== PADQ Statistics====
PADQ xmit: 0  rcvd: 1

Router#show pppoe session packets
Total PPPoE sessions 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SID</th>
<th>Pkts-In</th>
<th>Pkts-Out</th>
<th>Bytes-In</th>
<th>Bytes-Out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Verifying RAR Session Details

Router# show vmi counters
Interface vmi2: - Last Clear Time -

Input Counts:
  Process Enqueue = 0 (VMI)
  Fastswitch = 0
  VMI Punt Drop:
    Queue Full = 0

Output Counts:
  Transmit:
    VMI Process DQ = 4280
    Fastswitch VA = 0
    Fastswitch VMI = 0
  Drops:
    Total = 0
    QOS Error = 0
    VMI State Error = 0
    Mcast NBR Error = 0
    Ucast NBR Error = 0

Interface vmi3: - Last Clear Time -

Input Counts:
  Process Enqueue = 0 (VMI)
  Fastswitch = 0
  VMI Punt Drop:
    Queue Full = 0

Output Counts:
  Transmit:
    VMI Process DQ = 2956
    Fastswitch VA = 0
    Fastswitch VMI = 0
  Drops:
    Total = 0
    QOS Error = 0
    VMI State Error = 0
    Mcast NBR Error = 0
    Ucast NBR Error = 0

Interface vmi4: - Last Clear Time -

Input Counts:
  Process Enqueue = 0 (VMI)
  Fastswitch = 0
  VMI Punt Drop:
    Queue Full = 0

Output Counts:
  Transmit:
    VMI Process DQ = 0
    Fastswitch VA = 0
    Fastswitch VMI = 0
  Drops:
    Total = 0
    QOS Error = 0
    VMI State Error = 0
    Mcast NBR Error = 0
    Ucast NBR Error = 0

Router#
Router# show vmi neighbor details
1 vmi2 Neighbors
    1 vmi3 Neighbors
    0 vmi4 Neighbors
2 Total Neighbors

vmi2    IPV6 Address=FE80::21E:E6FF:FE43:F500
       IPV6 Global Addr::
       IPV4 Address=92.92.2.2, Uptime=05:15:01
       Output pkts=99, Input pkts=0
       No Session Metrics have been received for this neighbor.
       Transport PPPoE, Session ID=9

INTERFACE STATS:
    VMI Interface=vmi2,
        Input qcount=0, drops=0, Output qcount=0, drops=0
    V-Access intf=Virtual-Access2.1,
        Input qcount=0, drops=0, Output qcount=0, drops=0
    Physical intf=GigabitEthernet0/0/0,
        Input qcount=0, drops=0, Output qcount=0, drops=0

PPPoE Flow Control Stats
Local Credits: 65535  Peer Credits: 65535  Local Scaling Value 64 bytes
Credit Grant Threshold: 28000  Max Credits per grant: 65535
Credit Starved Packets: 0
PADG xmit Seq Num: 33038  PADG Timer index: 0
PADG last rcvd Seq Num: 17423
PADG last nonzero Seq Num: 17420
PADG last nonzero rcvd amount: 2
PADG xmit: 33418  rcvd: 17423
PADC xmit: 17423  rcvd: 19019
In-band credit pkt xmit: 7 rcvd: 2434446

Last credit packet snapshot
PADG xmit: seq_num = 33038, fcn = 0, bcn = 65535
PADC rcvd: seq_num = 33038, fcn = 65535, bcn = 65535
PADC rcvd: seq_num = 17423, fcn = 0, bcn = 65535
PADC xmit: seq_num = 17423, fcn = 65535, bcn = 65535
In-band credit pkt xmit: fcn = 61, bcn = 65535
In-band credit pkt rcvd: fcn = 0, bcn = 65534

---- PADQ Statistics ----
PADQ xmit: 0  rcvd: 0

vmi3    IPV6 Address=FE80::21E:7AFF:FE68:6100
       IPV6 Global Addr::
       IPV4 Address=91.91.91.4, Uptime=05:14:55
       Output pkts=6, Input pkts=0

METRIC DATA: Total rcvd=1, Avg arrival rate (ms)=0
    CURRENT: MDR=128000 bps, CDR=128000 bps
    Lat=0 ms, Res=100, RLQ=100, Load=0
    MDR  Max=128000 bps, Min=128000 bps, Avg=128000 bps
    CDR  Max=128000 bps, Min=128000 bps, Avg=128000 bps
    Latency Max=0, Min=0, Avg=0 (ms)
    Resource Max=100%, Min=100%, Avg=100%
    RLQ  Max=100, Min=100, Avg=100
    Load  Max=0%, Min=0%, Avg=0%

Transport PPPoE, Session ID=10

INTERFACE STATS:
    VMI Interface=vmi3,
        Input qcount=0, drops=0, Output qcount=0, drops=0
    V-Access intf=Virtual-Access2.2,
        Input qcount=0, drops=0, Output qcount=0, drops=0
    Physical intf=GigabitEthernet0/0/1,
        Input qcount=0, drops=0, Output qcount=0, drops=0
PPPoE Flow Control Stats
Local Credits: 65535  Peer Credits: 65535  Local Scaling Value 64 bytes
Credit Grant Threshold: 28000  Max Credits per grant: 65535
Credit Starved Packets: 0
PADG xmit Seq Num: 18896  PADG Timer index: 0
PADG last rcvd Seq Num: 18894
PADG last nonzero Seq Num: 18884
PADG last nonzero rcvd amount: 2
PADG Timers: (ms)  [0]-1000  [1]-2000  [2]-3000  [3]-4000  [4]-5000
PADG xmit: 18896  rcvd: 18894
PADG xmit: 18894  rcvd: 18896
In-band credit pkt xmit: 1387764  rcvd: 961
Last credit packet snapshot
PADG xmit: seq_num = 18896, fcn = 0, bcn = 65535
PADC rcvd: seq_num = 18896, fcn = 65535, bcn = 65535
PADG rcvd: seq_num = 18894, fcn = 0, bcn = 65535
PADC xmit: seq_num = 18894, fcn = 65535, bcn = 65535
In-band credit pkt xmit: fcn = 0, bcn = 65535
In-band credit pkt rcvd: fcn = 0, bcn = 65534
---- PADQ Statistics ----
PADQ xmit: 0  rcvd: 1

Router# show vmi neighbor details vmi 2
  1 vmi2 Neighbors

  vmi2  IPV6 Address=FE80::21E:E6FF:FE43:F500
         IPV6 Global Addr=::
         IPV4 Address=92.92.2.2, Uptime=05:16:03
         Output pkts=89, Input pkts=0
         No Session Metrics have been received for this neighbor.
         Transport PPPoE, Session ID=9
         INTERFACE STATS:
           VMI Interface=vmi2,
           Input qcount=0, drops=0, Output qcount=0, drops=0
           V-Access intf=Virtual-Access2.1,
           Input qcount=0, drops=0, Output qcount=0, drops=0
           Physical intf=GigabitEthernet0/0/0,
           Input qcount=0, drops=0, Output qcount=0, drops=0

PPPoE Flow Control Stats
Local Credits: 65535  Peer Credits: 65535  Local Scaling Value 64 bytes
Credit Grant Threshold: 28000  Max Credits per grant: 65535
Credit Starved Packets: 0
PADG xmit Seq Num: 33100  PADG Timer index: 0
PADG last rcvd Seq Num: 17485
PADG last nonzero Seq Num: 17449
PADG last nonzero rcvd amount: 2
PADG Timers: (ms)  [0]-1000  [1]-2000  [2]-3000  [3]-4000  [4]-5000
PADG xmit: 33480  rcvd: 17485
PADG xmit: 17485  rcvd: 19881
In-band credit pkt xmit: 7  rcvd: 2434460
Last credit packet snapshot
PADG xmit: seq_num = 33100, fcn = 0, bcn = 65535
PADC rcvd: seq_num = 33100, fcn = 65535, bcn = 65535
PADG rcvd: seq_num = 17485, fcn = 0, bcn = 65535
PADC xmit: seq_num = 17485, fcn = 65535, bcn = 65535
In-band credit pkt xmit: fcn = 61, bcn = 65533
In-band credit pkt rcvd: fcn = 0, bcn = 65534
---- PADQ Statistics ----
PADQ xmit: 0  rcvd: 0
Router# `show platform hardware qfp active feature ess session`  
Current number sessions: 2  
Current number TC flow: 0  
Feature Type: A=Accounting D=Policing(DRL) F=FFR M=DSCP Marking L=L4redirect P=Portbundle  
T=TC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Session</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Segment1</th>
<th>SegType1</th>
<th>Segment2</th>
<th>SegType2</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0x0000001500001022</td>
<td>PPPOE 0x0000001500002023</td>
<td>LTERM</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>PPP</td>
<td>0x0000001500001022</td>
<td>PPPOE 0x0000001500002023</td>
<td>LTERM</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>PPP</td>
<td>0x0000001800003026</td>
<td>PPPOE 0x0000001800004027</td>
<td>LTERM</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Router# `show platform software subscriber pppoe_fctl evsi 21`  
Ppoe Flow Control Stats  
Local Credits: 65535  Peer Credits: 65535  Local Scaling Value 64 bytes  
Credit Grant Threshold: 28000  Max Credits per grant: 65535  
Credit Starved Packets: 0  
PADG xmit Seq Num: 33215  PADG Timer index: 0  
PADG last rcvd Seq Num: 17600  
PADG last nonzero Seq Num: 17554  
PADG last nonzero rcvd amount: 2  
PADG Timers: (ms) [0]-1000 [1]-2000 [2]-3000 [3]-4000 [4]-5000  
PADG xmit: 33595  rcvd: 17600  
PADC xmit: 17600  rcvd: 19996  
In-band credit pkt xmit: 7 rcvd: 2434485  
Last credit packet snapshot  
PADG xmit: seq_num = 33215, fcn = 0, bcn = 65535  
PADC rcvd: seq_num = 33215, fcn = 65535, bcn = 65535  
PADC rcvd: seq_num = 17600, fcn = 0, bcn = 65535  
PADC xmit: seq_num = 17600, fcn = 65535, bcn = 65535  
In-band credit pkt rcvd: fcn = 0, bcn = 65534  
PADG xmit: seq_num = 33215, fcn = 0, bcn = 65535  
PADC xmit: seq_num = 33215, fcn = 65535, bcn = 65535  
PADC xmit: seq_num = 17600, fcn = 0, bcn = 65535  
PADC xmit: seq_num = 17600, fcn = 65535, bcn = 65535  
In-band credit pkt xmit: fcn = 61, bcn = 65533  
Condition Debug: 0x00000000  
In-band credit pkt rcvd: fcn = 0, bcn = 65534  
BQS buffer statistics  
Current packets in BQS buffer: 0  
Total en-queue packets: 0 de-queue packets: 0  
Total dropped packets: 0  
Internal flags: 0x0

Router# `show platform hardware qfp active feature ess session id 21`  
Session ID: 21  
EVSI type: PPP  
SIP Segment ID: 0x1500001022  
SIP Segment type: PPPOE  
FSP Segment ID: 0x1500002023  
FSP Segment type: LTERM  
QFP if handle: 16  
QFP interface name: EVSI21  
SIP TX Seq num: 0  
SIP RX Seq num: 0  
FSP TX Seq num: 0  
FSP RX Seq num: 0  
Condition Debug: 0x00000000  
session

Router# `show ospfv3 neighbor`
OSPFv3 1 address-family ipv4 (router-id 3.3.3.3)

Neighbor ID Pri State Dead Time Interface ID Interface
1.1.1.1 0 FULL/ - 00:01:32 19 Virtual-Access2.1

OSPFv3 1 address-family ipv6 (router-id 3.3.3.3)

Neighbor ID Pri State Dead Time Interface ID Interface
1.1.1.1 0 FULL/ - 00:01:52 19 Virtual-Access2.1

Router#sh ip route

Codes: L - local, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, M - mobile, B - BGP
D - EIGRP, EX - EIGRP external, O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
i - IS-IS, su - IS-IS summary, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2
ia - IS-IS inter area, * - candidate default, U - per-user static route
o - ODR, P - periodic downloaded static route, H - NHRP, a - application route
+ - replicated route, % - next hop override, p - overrides from PfR

Gateway of last resort is not set

90.0.0.0/8 is variably subnetted, 3 subnets, 2 masks
C 90.90.90.0/24 is directly connected, Virtual-Access2.1
O 90.90.90.4/32 [110/1] via 90.90.90.4, 00:00:03, Virtual-Access2.1
L 90.90.90.5/32 is directly connected, Virtual-Access2.1

Troubleshooting Radio Aware Routing

To troubleshoot the RAR, use the following debug commands:

- debug pppoe errors
- debug pppoe events
- debug ppp error
- debug vmi error
- debug vmi neighbor
- debug vmi packet
- debug vmi pppoe
- debug vmi registries
- debug vmi multicast
- debug vtemplate cloning
- debug vtemplate event
- debug vtemplate error
• debug plat hard qfp ac feature subscriber datapath pppoe detail
CHAPTER 21

Session Initiation Protocol Triggered VPN

Session Initiation Protocol Triggered VPN (SIP-Triggered VPN or VPN-SIP) is a service offered by service providers where a VPN is set up using Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) for on-demand media or application sharing between peers. The VPN-SIP feature defines the process in which two SIP user agents resolve each other’s IP addresses, exchange the fingerprints of their self-signed certificates, third-party certificates, or pre-shared key securely, and agree to establish an IPsec-based VPN.

Service providers offer the VPN-SIP service to their customers that have SIP-based services such as bank ATMs or branches. This VPN-SIP service replaces an ISDN connection for backup network functionality. If the primary broadband service link goes down, these bank ATMs or branches connect to their central headend or data centres through the VPN-SIP service.

The SIP server of the service provider, which coordinates the VPN-SIP service, is also used for billing of the service based on the time the service is used.

- Information about VPN-SIP, on page 311
- Prerequisites for VPN-SIP, on page 315
- Restrictions for VPN-SIP, on page 316
- How to Configure VPN-SIP, on page 316
- Configuration Examples for VPN-SIP, on page 322
- Troubleshooting for VPN-SIP, on page 323
- Additional References for VPN-SIP, on page 330
- Feature Information for VPN-SIP, on page 331

Information about VPN-SIP

Components for VPN-SIP Solution

VPN-SIP uses IPSec Static Virtual Tunnel Interface (SVTI). IPSec SVTI stays in active (UP) state even when there is no IPSec security association (SA) established between the tunnel interface and the SVTI peer.

The following are three components for the VPN-SIP Solution:

- SIP
- VPN-SIP
• Crypto (IP Security (IPsec), Internet Key Exchange (IKE), Tunnel Protection (TP), Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) modules within crypto)

Session Initiation Protocol

SIP is used as a name resolution mechanism to initiate an IKE session. VPN-SIP uses SIP service to establish a VPN connection to a home or a small business router that does not have a fixed IP address. This connection is achieved using self-signed certificates or pre-shared keys. SIP negotiates the use of IKE for media sessions in the Session Description Protocol (SDP) offer-and-answer model.

SIP is statically configured. One tunnel interface must be configured for each remote SIP number. SIP also provides billing capabilities for service providers to charge customers based on the SIP number, for using the VPN-SIP service. Billing based on SIP numbers happens in the service provider network and is independent of the end devices like Cisco VPN-SIP routers.

VPN-SIP Solution

VPN-SIP is the central block that coordinates between SIP and Crypto modules, and provides an abstraction between them.

When traffic destined to a remote network behind a SIP number is routed to the tunnel interface, the IPsec control plane gets a trigger from packet switching path as there is no IPSEC SA configured to that peer. IPsec control plane passes the trigger to VPN-SIP as the tunnel is configured for VPN-SIP.

Note

Static routes for remote networks for that SIP number must be configured to point to that tunnel interface.

When the VPN-SIP service is triggered, SIP sets up the call with a SIP phone number pair. SIP also passes incoming call details to the VPN-SIP and negotiates IKE media sessions using local address and fingerprint information of the local self-signed certificate or pre-shared key. SIP also passes remote address and fingerprint information to VPN-SIP.

The VPN-SIP service listens to tunnel status updates and invokes SIP to tear down the SIP session. The VPN-SIP service also provides a means to display current and active sessions.

Feature at a glance

The following steps summarize how the VPN-SIP feature works:

• IP SLA monitors the primary link using route tracking. When the primary link fails IP SLA detects this failure.

• Once the primary path fails, IP SLA switches the default route to the higher metric route that is configured on the router.

• When relevant traffic tries to flow using the secondary link, SIP sends an invite message to the SIP server to obtain the VPN peer information.

• The router receives the VPN peer information (IP address, local and remote SIP numbers, IKE port, and fingerprint) and it establishes VPN-SIP tunnel.
When the primary path comes back up, IP SLA detects the primary path and the route falls back to the original path. When the idle timer expires, IPSec is torn down and a SIP call is disconnected.

Following is the topology for the VPN-SIP solution:

**Figure 2: VPN-SIP Topology**

### SIP Call Flow

The SIP call flow is divided into initiation at the local peer and call receipt at the remote peer.

#### At SIP Call Initiation

When packets are routed to an SVTI interface in data plane, the SIP call must be placed to the peer SIP number to resolve its address, so that VPN tunnel can be brought up.

- When local auth-type is PSK, IKEv2 finds the matching key for a peer SIP number. The IKEv2 keyring must be configured with id_key_id_type (string) as SIP number for each SIP peer. IKEv2 computes the fingerprint of the looked-up key and passes it to VPN-SIP.

- When local auth-type is a self-signed certificate or an third-party certificate, IKEv2 computes the fingerprint of the local certificate configured under the IKEv2 profile and passes it to the VPN-SIP module.

The VPN-SIP module interacts with SIP to setup SIP call to the peer. When the call is successful, VPN-SIP sets the tunnel destination of SVTI to the resolved IP address, requesting SVTI to initiate the VPN tunnel.

---

**Note**

When a wildcard key is required, use the authentication local pre-share key command and the authentication remote pre-share key command in IKEv2 profile.
When SIP call is received at the remote peer

When a SIP call is received from a peer, following interactions occur between various crypto modules:

- The Tunnel Protection helps VPN-SIP module to set tunnel destination address.
- IKEv2 returns local auth-type (PSK or PKI) and local fingerprint to the VPN-SIP module. When local auth-type is PSK, IKEv2 finds a matching key for a corresponding SIP number.

**Note**

IKEv2 only knows peer by its SIP number.

During the SIP call negotiation between peers, each peer must select a unique local IKEv2 port number to be exchanged over the SDP. To support different port numbers for each session, the VPN-SIP module programmatically configures IP Port Address Translation (PAT) to translate between IKEv2 port (4500) and the port number exchanged over SDP. For the translation to work IP NAT must be configured on secondary link and the loopback interface configured as the VPN-SIP tunnel source. The lifetime of the translation is limited to the lifetime of the VPN-SIP session.

**SDP Offer and Answer**

Following is the sample for SDP offer and answer that is negotiated in the SIP call as defined in RFC 6193:

```offer SDP
... 
m=application 50001 udp ike-esp-udpencap 
c=IN IP4 10.6.6.49 
a=ike-setup:active 
a=fingerprint:SHA-1 \ 
b=AS:512 
...
```

```answer SDP
... 
m=application 50002 udp ike-esp-udpencap 
c=IN IP4 10.6.6.50 
a=ike-setup:passive 
a=fingerprint:SHA-1 \ 
b=AS:512 
```

As part of the SDP negotiation, both peers negotiate the maximum bandwidth rate for the VPN-SIP session using the `b=AS :number` SDP attribute. If the peers mention different bandwidth numbers in their SDP, both of them should honor the minimum value as the maximum bandwidth. If `b=AS :number` SDP attribute is missing in the offer or answer, the SIP call is not successfully set up.

The negotiated maximum bandwidth is applied on the SVTI tunnel interface through the programmatically configured QoS policy in the output direction. The programmatically configured QoS policy is not applied and session fails, if there is a pre-existing statically configured policy.

Once SIP call is complete and address of the peer is resolved, VPN-SIP sets tunnel destination of SVTI and sends a request to initiate tunnel.

**IKEv2 Negotiation**

Following is the process for IKEv2 Security Session (SA) negotiation:
• Before starting the session, IKEv2 checks with VPN-SIP if the session is a VPN-SIP session.

• If it’s a VPN-SIP session and local auth-type is PSK, IKEv2 looks up the PSK key pair using SIP number of the peer instead of IP address of the peer.

• For validating self-signed certificate, IKEv2 checks if the certificate is self-signed and validates the certificate.
  • In addition to existing AUTH payload validation as part of IKEv2 protocol, IKEv2 calculates hash of the received certificate or looked-up PSK and compares with the fingerprint from SIP negotiation that IKEv2 queries from VPN-SIP module. Only if the fingerprint matches, IKEv2 considers authentication of peer is valid. If not, IKEv2 declares that peer has failed to authenticate and fails the VPN session.

VPN-SIP solution depends on IPSEC idle timer to detect that traffic is no longer routed over the backup VPN. The idle-time configuration under the IPsec Profile is mandatory for session to be disconnected when there is no traffic. 120 seconds is the recommended time.

VPN-SIP and SIP coordinate to tear down SIP call.

When IPSec idle time expires the VPN-SIP module informs the IKEv2 to bring down the IPSec tunnel. VPN-SIP requests the SIP module to disconnect the SIP call, without waiting for confirmation from the IKEv2.

When SIP call disconnect is received from the peer, VPN-SIP module informs the IKEv2 to bring down the IPSec tunnel, and acknowledges to SIP to tear down the SIP call.

**Supported Platforms**

The VPN-SIP feature is supported on the following platforms:

**Prerequisites for VPN-SIP**

• Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers and Cisco 1000 Integrated Services Routers must have Cisco IOS XE 16.8.1 software installed.

• Security K9 license must be enabled on the router.

• The routers must have a minimum memory of 1 GB.

• For the SIP register request of the SIP User Agent to succeed, the SIP registrar must be available to the VPN-SIP routers.

• The DHCP server must support option 120 and 125 to obtain the SIP server address, which is needed for registration and establishing the SIP session.

• Proper routing configurations must be completed to ensure backup WAN path is used when primary path is down.

• Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) of the tunnel interface must be less than the MTU of the secondary WAN interface.

• When self-signed or third-party certificates are used for IKEv2 authentication, configure IKEv2 fragmentation on the VPN-SIP router to avoid fragmentation at the IP layer.
• NAT SIP ALG must be disabled.
• Caller ID notification service must be configured in the network.

Restrictions for VPN-SIP

• VPN-SIP and CUBE/SIP gateway cannot be configured on the same device. When CUBE license is active on the device, only CUBE will be functional.
• Only IPv4 is supported for transport and media (IPv4 transport for SIP registration, SIP signaling, and IPv4 packets encrypted over IPv4 transport).
• SIP signalling with peer devices behind NAT is not supported (ICE and STUN are not supported).
• SIP negotiation is supported only in global VRF.
• Remote-access VPN features like private address assignment, configuration mode exchange (CP payloads), routes exchange, are not supported.
• Routing protocols over the VPN-SIP session are not supported.
• Only Rivest-Shamir-Addleman (RSA) server self-signed certificates are supported.
• Pre-shared key lookup functionality using authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) is not supported.
• The IPSec idle timer is configured per IPSec profile using the ipsec-profile command. The idle time is the same for all VPN-SIP sessions that use a specific IPSec profile.
• Track objects that are used for IPSLA monitoring, have a maximum limit of 1000 objects in Cisco IOS software. When one track object is used to track one peer router, maximum number of VPN-SIP sessions that one IOS device can have is limited by the maximum number of track objects.
• Only one local SIP number is supported on Cisco IOS software.
• If there is a pre-existing statically configured policy, the programmatically configured QoS policy is not applied and session fails. Remove any statically configured QoS policy on the SVTI interface.
• Cisco does not support the interoperability with VPN-SIP implementation of other vendors.

How to Configure VPN-SIP

Configuring VPN-SIP

The following steps describe the process of configuring VPN-SIP:

1. Configure the tunnel authentication using third party certificates, self-signed certificates, or pre-shared keys.
   1. Tunnel Authentication using Certificates
      Configure a trustpoint to obtain a certificate from a certification authority (CA) server that is located in the customer's network. This is required for tunnel authentication. Use the following configuration:
peer1(config)# crypto pki trustpoint CA
    enrollment url http://10.45.18.132/
    serial-number none
    subject-name CN=peer2
    revocation-check crl
    rsakeypair peer2

peer2(config)# crypto pki authenticate CA
Certificate has the following attributes:
    Fingerprint MD5: F38A9B4C 2D80490C F8E7581B BABE7CBD
    Fingerprint SHA1: 4907CC36 B1957258 5DFE23B2 649E7DDA 99BDB7C3
% Do you accept this certificate? [yes/no]: yes
Trustpoint CA certificate accepted.

peer2(config)# crypto pki enroll CA
% Start certificate enrollment ...
% Create a challenge password. You will need to verbally provide this
    password to the CA Administrator in order to revoke your certificate.
    For security reasons your password will not be saved in the configuration.
    Please make a note of it.
Password: 
Re-enter password: 
% The subject name in the certificate will include: CN=peer2
% The subject name in the certificate will include: peer2
% Include an IP address in the subject name? [no]: 
Request certificate from CA? [yes/no]: yes
% Certificate request sent to Certificate Authority
% The 'show crypto pki certificate verbose CA' command will show the fingerprint.
Certificate map for Trustpoint
    crypto pki certificate map data 1
    issuer-name co cn = orange

2. Tunnel authentication using self-signed certificate

Configure a PKI trust point to generate a self-signed certificate on the device, when authenticating
using a self-signed certificate. Use the following configuration:

peer4(config)# crypto pki trustpoint Self
    enrollment selfsigned
    revocation-check none
    rsakeypair myRSA
exit
crypto pki enroll Self

Do you want to continue generating a new Self Signed Certificate? [yes/no]: yes
% Include the router serial number in the subject name? [yes/no]: yes
% Include an IP address in the subject name? [no]: no
Generate Self Signed Router Certificate? [yes/no]: yes

Router Self Signed Certificate successfully created

3. Configure tunnel authentication using a pre-shared key

crypto ikev2 keyring keys
peer peer1
    identity key-id 1234
    pre-shared-key key123

2. 1. Configure IKEv2 Profile for Certificate

crypto ikev2 profile IPROF
    match certificate data
    identity local key-id 5678
    authentication remote rsa-sig
2. Configure an IKEv2 Profile for pre-shared keys

crypto ikev2 profile IPROF
match identity remote any
identity local key-id 5678
authentication remote pre-share
authentication local pre-share
keyring local keys
nat force-encap

Note
To complete the IKEv2 SA configuration, the **nat force-encap** command must be configured on both peers. Since, UDP encapsulation is negotiated in SDP, IKEv2 must start and continue on port 4500.

3. Configure an IPsec profile

crypto ipsec profile IPROF
set security-association idle-time 2000

4. Configure a LAN side interface

Note
The LAN side interface is connected to the ISRG2 interface on the router.

```plaintext
interface Vlan101
    ip address 10.3.3.3 255.255.255.0
    no shutdown
!
interface GigabitEthernet2
    switchport access vlan 101
    no ip address
```

5. Configure a loopback interface

The loopback interface is used as the source interface for the secondary VPN tunnel.

```plaintext
interface loopback 1
    ip address 10.11.1.1 255.0.0.0
    ip nat inside
```

6. Configure a secondary interface.

Note
Make sure the secondary interface is configured to receive the IP address, SIP server address, and vendor specific information via DHCP.

```plaintext
interface GigabitEthernet8
    ip dhcp client request sip-server-address
    ip dhcp client request vendor-identifying-specific
    ip address dhcp
    ip nat outside
```

7. Configure the tunnel interface
interface Tunnel1
    ip address 10.3.2.1 255.255.255.255
    load-interval 30
    tunnel source Loopback1
    tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
tunnel destination dynamic
tunnel protection ipsec profile IPROF ikev2-profile IPROF
vpn-sip local-number 5678 remote-number 1234 bandwidth 1000

Use the `vpn-sip local-number` `local-number remote-number` `remote-number bandwidth` `bw-number` command to configure the sVTI interface for VPN-SIP. Bandwidth is the maximum data transmission rate that must be negotiated with this peer and the negotiated value is set on the tunnel interface. Allowed values are 64, 512, and 1000 kbps.

Once an SVTI is configured for VPN-SIP, changes cannot be made to tunnel mode, tunnel destination, tunnel source, and tunnel protection. To change the mode, source, destination, or tunnel protection you must remove the VPN-SIP configuration from the SVTI interface.

8. Add static default routes
   Add a secondary route with a higher metric.
   ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 Tunnel0 track 1
   ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 Tunnel1 254

9. Configure IP SLA
   ip sla 1
       icmp-echo 10.11.11.1
       threshold 500
       timeout 500
       frequency 2
       ip sla schedule 1 life forever start-time now

10. Configure route tracking
    track 1 ip sla 1 reachability

11. Enable VPN-SIP
    vpn-sip enable
    vpn-sip local-number 5678 address ipv4 GigabitEthernet8
    vpn-sip tunnel source Loopback1
    vpn-sip logging

    To configure VPN-SIP, you must configure local SIP number and local address. The `vpn-sip local-number SIP-number address ipv4 WAN-interface-name` command configures the local SIP number that is used for SIP call and the associated IPv4 address.

---

**Note**

Only IPv4 addresses can be configured. Crypto module does not support dual stack.

- Backup WAN interface address may change based on DHCP assignment.

---

When the primary WAN interface is functional, the destination of the VPN-SIP tunnel is set to the backup WAN interface, so that the tunnel interface is active. Destination is set to IP address of the peer that is learnt from SDP of SIP negotiation when traffic is routed to the tunnel interface. When primary WAN interface fails and the back routes are activated, packets are routed to the sVTI through backup.
We recommend that you use an unused non-routable address as the address of the loopback interface and do not configure this loopback interface for any other purpose. Once a loopback interface is configured, VPN-SIP listens to any updates to the interface and blocks them. The `vpn-sip logging` command enables the system logging of VPN-SIP module for events, such as session up, down, or failure.

### Verifying VPN-SIP on a Local Router

#### Verifying Registration Status

Peer1# show vpn-sip registration-status
SIP registration of local number 0388881001 : registered 10.6.6.50

#### Verifying SIP Registrar

Peer1#show vpn-sip sip registrar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Line</th>
<th>destination</th>
<th>expires(sec)</th>
<th>contact</th>
<th>transport</th>
<th>call-id</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0388881001 example.com</td>
<td>2359</td>
<td>10.6.6.50</td>
<td>UDP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3176F988-9EAA11E7-8002AFA0-8EF41435</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Verifying VPN-SIP Status

Peer1#show vpn-sip session detail
VPN-SIP session current status

Interface: Tunnel1
Session status: SESSION_UP (I)
Uptime : 00:00:42
Remote number : 0388881001 ------> This is the Remote Router's SIP number
Local number : 0388882001 ------> Local router's SIP number
Remote address:port: 10.6.6.49:50002
Local address:port : 10.6.6.50:50001
Crypto conn handle: 0x8000017D
SIP Handle : 0x800000C7
SIP callID : 1554
Configured/Negotiated bandwidth: 64/64 kbps

#### Verifying Crypto Session

Peer1# show crypto session detail
Crypto session current status
Code: C - IKE Configuration mode, D - Dead Peer Detection
K - Keepalives, N - NAT-traversal, T - cTCP encapsulation
X - IKE Extended Authentication, F - IKE Fragmentation
R - IKE Auto Reconnect, U - IKE Dynamic Route Update
S - SIP Vpn-sip

Interface: Tunnel1
Profile: IPROF
Uptime: 00:03:53
Session status: UP-ACTIVE
Peer: 10.6.6.49 port 4500 fvrf: (none) ivrf: (none)
Phase1_id: 10.6.6.49
Desc: (none)
Session ID: 43
IKEv2 SA: local 10.11.1.1/4500 remote 10.6.6.49/50002 Active
  Capabilities:S connid:1 lifetime:23:56:07 ===> Capabilities:S indicates this is a SIP VPN_SIP Session
  IPSEC FLOW: permit ip 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
  Active SAs: 2, origin: crypto map
  Inbound: #pkts dec'ed 6 drop 0 life (KB/Sec) 4222536/3366
  Outbound: #pkts enc'ed 4 drop 0 life (KB/Sec) 4222537/3366

Verifying IP NAT Translations
Peer1#sh ip nat translations
Pro Inside global       Inside local       Outside local     Outside global
udp 2.2.2.2:4500        10.6.6.50:50001    10.6.6.49:50002    10.6.6.49:50002

Verifying DHCP SIP Configuration
Peer9#show vpn-sip sip dhcp
SIP DHCP Info
  SIP-DHCP interface:   GigabitEthernet8
  SIP server address:
  Domain name:          dns:example.com

Verifying VPN-SIP on a Remote Router

Verifying VPN-SIP Registration Status on a Remote Router
Peer2# show vpn-sip registration-status
SIP registration of local number 0388882001 : registered 10.6.6.49

Verifying VPN-SIP Registrar on a Remote Router
Peer2# show vpn-sip sip registrar
  Line   destination expires( sec) contact transport    call-id
  -----------------------------------------------
  0388882001 example.com         2478 10.6.6.49    UDP
  E6F23809-9EAB11E7-80029279-40B97F59

Verifying VPN-SIP Session Details on a Remote Router
Peer2# show vpn-sip session detail
SIP-VPN session current status
  Interface: Tunnel1
  Session status: SESSION_UP (R)
  Uptime: 00:00:21
  Remote number: 0388882001 ===> This is the Peer1 Router's SIP number
  Local number: 0388881001 ===> Local router's SIP number
  Remote address:port: 10.6.6.50:50001
  Local address:port: 10.6.6.49:50002
  Crypto conn handle: 0x8000017E
  SIP Handle: 0x800000BE
  SIP callID: 1556
  Configured/Negotiated bandwidth: 1000/64 kbps

Verifying Crypto Session Details on a Remote Router
Peer2 #show crypto session detail
Crypto session current status
Configuration Examples for VPN-SIP

Using self-signed certificates for authentication

The following is sample configuration to configure VPN-SIP using self-signed certificates for authentication. There is no distinction between initiator and responder role in VPN-SIP. The configuration on a peer node will be identical with local SIP numbers changed.

// Self-signed certificate
crypto pki trustpoint selfCert
   rsakeypair myRSA
   enrollment selfsigned
   revocation-check none
!
crypto ikev2 profile vpn-sip-profile
   match identity remote any
   authentication local rsa-sig
   authentication remote rsa-sig
   pki trustpoint selfCert // Use same self-signed trustpoint for sign and verify nat force-encap
!
crypto ipsec profile vpn-sip-ipsec
   set security-association idle-time 120
!
vpn-sip enable
vpn-sip local-number 0388883001 address ipv4 GigabitEthernet1
tunnel source Loopback11
vpn-sip logging

// one tunnel per peer – configuration is for peer with a SIP-number of 0388884001
int tunnel0
  ip unnumbered loopback 0
  tunnel source loopback11
  tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
  tunnel destination dynamic
  tunnel protection ipsec profile vpn-sip-ipsec ikev2-profile vpn-sip-profile
  vpn-sip local-number 0388883001 remote-number 0388884001 bandwidth 1000

// ip unnumbered of tunnel interfaces
int loopback 0
  ip address 10.21.1.1 255.255.255.255

int loopback11
  ip address 10.9.9.9 255.255.255.255
  ip nat inside

// one tunnel per peer – this is for peer with SIP-number 0388885001
int tunnel1
  ip unnumbered loopback 0
  tunnel source loopback11
  tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
  tunnel destination dynamic
  tunnel protection ipsec profile vpn-sip-ipsec ikev2-profile iprof
  vpn-sip sip-local 0388883001 sip-remote 0388885001 bandwidth 1000

interface GigabitEthernet8
  ip dhcp client request sip-server-address
  ip dhcp client request vendor-identifying-specific
  ip address dhcp
  ip nat outside

// backup routes configured with higher AD so that these routes will be activated only when primary path goes down. AD need to be chosen to be greater than that of primary route.
ip route 10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0 tunnel 0 250
ip route 10.1.0.0 255.0.0.0 tunnel 0 250
ip route 10.2.0.0 255.0.0.0 tunnel 0 250
ip route 10.3.0.0 255.0.0.0 tunnel 0 250

Troubleshooting for VPN-SIP

Viewing Tunnel Interface in Show Output

Symptom

Show VPN-SIP session doesn’t show any information about the tunnel interface. In the following example, information about the tunnel interface, tunnel1 is not shown:

Peer5-F#show vpn-sip session
VPN-SIP session current status

Interface: Tunnel2
  Session status: READY_TO_CONNECT
  Remote number : 0334563333
  Local number : 0623458888
  Remote address:port : 0.0.0.0:0
  Local address:port : 192.30.18.22:0
Interface: Tunnel3
  Session status: READY_TO_CONNECT
  Remote number : 0323452222
  Local number : 0623458888
  Remote address:port: 0.0.0.0:0
  Local address:port : 192.30.18.22:0

Interface: Tunnel4
  Session status: READY_TO_CONNECT
  Remote number : 0612349999
  Local number : 0623458888
  Remote address:port: 0.0.0.0:0
  Local address:port : 192.30.18.22:0

Interface: Tunnel6
  Session status: READY_TO_CONNECT
  Remote number : 0634567777
  Local number : 0623458888
  Remote address:port: 0.0.0.0:0
  Local address:port : 172.30.18.22:0

Possible Cause
VPN-SIP is not configured on the tunnel interface

Peer5-F#sh run int tun1
Building configuration...

Current configuration : 201 bytes
!
interface Tunnel1
  ip address 10.5.5.5 255.0.0.0
  tunnel source Loopback11
  tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
  tunnel destination dynamic
  tunnel protection ipsec profile test-prof ikev2-profile test
end

Recommended Action
Configure VPN-SIP on the tunnel interface.

Peer5-F#show running interface tunnel 1
Building configuration...

Current configuration : 278 bytes
!
interface Tunnel1
  ip address 10.5.5.5 255.255.255.255
  tunnel source Loopback11
  tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
  tunnel destination dynamic
  tunnel protection ipsec profile test-prof ikev2-profile test
  vpn-sip local-number 0623458888 remote-number 0312341111 bandwidth 1000
end

Following is the running output for the above scenario:

Peer5-F#show vpn-sip session detail
VPN-SIP session current status

Interface: Tunnel1
Session Initiation Protocol Triggered VPN

Troubleshooting for VPN-SIP

Troubleshooting SIP Registration Status

Symptom

SIP registration status is Not Registered

Peer5#show vpn-sip sip registrar
Line destination expires(sec) contact transport call-id

Cisco 4000 Series ISRs Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.x
Peer5-F#show vpn-sip registration-status

SIP registration of local number 0623458888 : not registered

Possible Cause

IP address is not configured on the WAN interface.

Peer5#show ip interface brief

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>IP-Address</th>
<th>OK? Method</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Protocol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES unset</td>
<td>down</td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/1</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES unset</td>
<td>up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/2</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES unset</td>
<td>down</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/3</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES unset</td>
<td>down</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/4</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES unset</td>
<td>up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/5</td>
<td>10.5.5.5</td>
<td>YES manual</td>
<td>up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vlan1</td>
<td>10.45.1.5</td>
<td>YES NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NVL0</td>
<td>10.1.1.1</td>
<td>YES unset</td>
<td>up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loopback1</td>
<td>10.1.1.1</td>
<td>YES NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loopback5</td>
<td>10.5.5.5</td>
<td>YES NVRAM</td>
<td>administratively down</td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loopback11</td>
<td>10.11.11.11</td>
<td>YES NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunnel1</td>
<td>10.5.5.5</td>
<td>YES NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunnel2</td>
<td>10.2.2.2</td>
<td>YES NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunnel3</td>
<td>10.3.3.3</td>
<td>YES NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunnel4</td>
<td>10.4.4.4</td>
<td>YES NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunnel6</td>
<td>10.8.8.8</td>
<td>YES NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Peer5-F#show run interface gigabitEthernet 0/4

Building configuration...

Current configuration : 213 bytes

interface GigabitEthernet0/4
  ip dhcp client request sip-server-address
  ip dhcp client request vendor-identifying-specific
  no ip address
  ip nat outside
  ip virtual-reassembly in
duplex auto
  speed auto
end

Recommended Action

Use the **ip address dhcp** command to configure the interface IP address.

Peer5-F#show running-config interface gigabitEthernet 0/4

Building configuration...

Current configuration : 215 bytes

interface GigabitEthernet0/4
  ip dhcp client request sip-server-address
  ip dhcp client request vendor-identifying-specific
  ip address dhcp
  ip nat outside
  no ip address
  ip virtual-reassembly in
duplex auto
  speed auto
end

Peer5-F#show ip interface brief
### Session Initiation Protocol Triggered VPN

#### Troubleshooting for VPN-SIP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>IP-Address</th>
<th>OK? Method</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Protocol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES unset</td>
<td>down</td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/1</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES unset</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/2</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES unset</td>
<td>down</td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/3</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES unset</td>
<td>down</td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/4</td>
<td>172.30.18.22</td>
<td>YES DHCP</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/5</td>
<td>10.5.5.5</td>
<td>YES manual</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vlan1</td>
<td>10.45.1.5</td>
<td>YES NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NVI0</td>
<td>10.1.1.1</td>
<td>YES unset</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loopback1</td>
<td>10.1.1.1</td>
<td>YES NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loopback5</td>
<td>10.5.5.5</td>
<td>YES NVRAM</td>
<td>administratively down</td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loopback11</td>
<td>10.11.11.11</td>
<td>YES NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunnel1</td>
<td>10.6.5.5</td>
<td>YES NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunnel2</td>
<td>10.2.2.2</td>
<td>YES NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunnel3</td>
<td>10.3.3.3</td>
<td>YES NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunnel4</td>
<td>10.4.4.4</td>
<td>YES NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunnel6</td>
<td>10.8.8.8</td>
<td>YES NVRAM</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Peer5-F#show vpn-sip sip registrar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Line</th>
<th>destination</th>
<th>expires(sec)</th>
<th>contact</th>
<th>transport</th>
<th>call-id</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0623458888</td>
<td>example.com</td>
<td>2063</td>
<td>172.30.18.22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDP</td>
<td>1B88E80F-AP0611E7-802B80FCF-594EB0E7D122.50.18.22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SIP registration of local number 0623458888 : registered 172.30.18.22

#### Session stuck in Negotiating IKE state

**Symptom**

VPN-SIP session stuck in Negotiating IKE state.

Peer5-F#show vpn-sip session remote-number 0612349999 detail

VPN-SIP session current status

Interface: Tunnel4

- Session status: NEGOTIATING_IKE (R)
- Uptime: 00:00:58
- Remote number: 0612349999
- Local number: 0623458888
- Remote address:port: 172.30.168.3:24825
- Local address:port: 172.30.18.22:50012
- Crypto conn handle: 0x8000002E
- SIP Handle: 0x8000000C
- SIP callID: 16
- Configured/Negotiated bandwidth: 1000/1000 kbps

**Possible Cause**

Bad configuration related to IKEv2.

In the following example the Key ID that is configured in the keyring does not match the SIP number of the remote peer.

Peer5-F#show running-config interface tunnel 4

Building configuration...

Current configuration: 276 bytes

interface Tunnel4
ip address 10.4.4.4 255.0.0.0
tunnel source Loopback11
tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
tunnel destination dynamic
tunnel protection ipsec profile test-prof ikev2-profile test
VPN-SIP local-number 0623458888 remote-number 0612349999 bandwidth 1000  ---> Remote number mentioned here doesn’t match the remote number in the keyring
end

IKEv2 Keyring configs:
!
crypto ikev2 keyring keys
peer peer1
  identity key-id 0312341111
  pre-shared-key psk1
!
peer abc
  identity key-id 0345674444
  pre-shared-key psk1
!
peer peer2
  identity key-id 0334563333
  pre-shared-key psk10337101690
!
peer peer6
  identity key-id 0634567777
  pre-shared-key cisco123
!
peer peer3
  identity key-id 0323452222
  pre-shared-key cisco123
!
peer peer4
  identity key-id 0645676666
  pre-shared-key psk1
!
peer NONID
  identity fqdn example.com
  pre-shared-key psk1
!
!
crypto ikev2 profile test
match identity remote any
identity local key-id 0623458888
authentication remote pre-share
authentication local pre-share
keyring local keys
dpd 10 6 periodic
nat force-encap

**Recommended Action**

Correct the keyring configurations.

crypto ikev2 keyring keys
peer peer1
  identity key-id 0312341111
  pre-shared-key psk1
!
peer abc
  identity key-id 0345674444
  pre-shared-key psk1
!
peer peer2
  identity key-id 0334563333
Troubleshooting Session Initiation

Symptom
Session does not initiate and gets stuck in Negotiating IKE state

Possible Cause
Fragmentation of IKE packets when a large PKI certificate is included in the IKE authentication message.

Recommended Action
Configure IKEv2 fragmentation on the routers.

Debug Commands
The following debug commands are available to debug VPN-SIP configuration:
### Table 22: `debug` commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip event</code></td>
<td>Prints debug messages for SVTI registration with VPN-SIP, SIP registration, call setup, and so on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip errors</code></td>
<td>Prints error messages only when an error occurs during initialization, registration, call setup, and so on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip sip all</code></td>
<td>Enables all SIP debugging traces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip sip calls</code></td>
<td>Enables SIP SPI calls debugging trace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip sip dhcp</code></td>
<td>Enables SIP-DHCP debugging trace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip sip error</code></td>
<td>Enables SIP error debugging trace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip sip events</code></td>
<td>Enables SIP events debugging trace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip sip feature</code></td>
<td>Enables feature level debugging.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip sip function</code></td>
<td>Enables SIP function debugging trace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip sip info</code></td>
<td>Enables SIP information debugging trace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip sip level</code></td>
<td>Enables information level debugging.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip sip media</code></td>
<td>Enables SIP media debugging trace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip sip messages</code></td>
<td>Enables SIP messages debugging trace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip sip non-call</code></td>
<td>Enables Non-Call-Context trace (OPTIONS, SUBSCRIBE, and so on)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip sip preauth</code></td>
<td>Enable SIP preauth debugging trace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip sip states</code></td>
<td>Enable SIP SPI states debugging trace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip sip translate</code></td>
<td>Enables SIP translation debugging trace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip sip transport</code></td>
<td>Enables SIP transport debugging traces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>debug vpn-sip sip verbose</code></td>
<td>Enables verbose mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Additional References for VPN-SIP

#### Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Session Initiation Protocol Triggered VPN
### Standards and RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard/RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RFC 6193 (with Restrictions)</td>
<td>Media Description for the Internet Key Exchange Protocol (IKE) in the Session Description Protocol (SDP)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 22

Configuring Voice Functionality

This chapter provides information about configuring voice functionality on the Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers (ISRs).

This chapter includes these sections:

- Call Waiting, on page 333
- E1/R2 Signaling Configuration, on page 333
- Feature Group D Configuration, on page 339
- Media and Signaling Authentication and Encryption, on page 341
- Multicast Music-on-Hold, on page 341
- TLS 1.2 support on SCCP Gateways, on page 342

Call Waiting

With the Call Waiting feature, you can receive a second call while you are on the phone with another call. When you receive a second call, you hear a call-waiting tone (a tone with a 300 ms duration). Caller ID appears on phones that support caller ID. You can use hookflash to answer a waiting call and place the previously active call on hold. By using hookflash, you can toggle between the active and a call that is on hold. If the Call Waiting feature is disabled, and you hang up the current call, the second call will hear a busy tone. For more information on Call Waiting, see the http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/ios/voice/sip/configuration/guide/15_0/sip_15_0_book/sip_cg-hookflash.html#wp999028

Call Transfers

Call transfers are when active calls are put on hold while a second call is established between two users. After you establish the second call and terminate the active call, the call on hold will hear a ringback. The Call Transfer feature supports all three types of call transfers—blind, semi-attended, and attended. For more information on Call Transfers, see the http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/ios/voice/sip/configuration/guide/15_0/sip_15_0_book/sip_cg-hookflash.html#wp999084

E1 R2 Signaling Configuration

To configure the E1 R2, perform these steps:
### Before you begin

Before you attempt this configuration, ensure that you meet these prerequisites:

- R2 signaling applies only to E1 controllers.
- In order to run R2 signaling on Cisco 4000 Series ISRs, this hardware is required:
  - NIM-MFT-1T1/E1 or NIM-2MFT-T1/E1 or NIM-4MFT-T1/E1 or NIM-8MFT-T1/E1 or NIM-1CE1T1-PRI or NIM-2CE1T1-PRI or NIM-8CE1T1-PRI
- Define the command ds0-group on the E1 controllers of Cisco 4000 Series ISRs.
- Cisco IOS XE software release 15.5 (2)

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. Set up the controller E1 that connects to the private automatic branch exchange (PBX) or switch.
2. For E1 framing, choose either CRC or non-CRC
3. For E1 linecoding, choose either HDB3 or AMI.
4. For the E1 clock source, choose either internal or line. Note that different PBXs have different requirements on the clock source.
5. Configure line signaling.
6. Configure interregister signaling.
7. Customize the configuration with the cas-custom command.

### DETAILED STEPS

**Step 1**
Set up the controller E1 that connects to the private automatic branch exchange (PBX) or switch.

Ensure that the framing and linecoding of the E1 are properly set.

**Step 2**
For E1 framing, choose either CRC or non-CRC

**Step 3**
For E1 linecoding, choose either HDB3 or AMI.

**Step 4**
For the E1 clock source, choose either internal or line. Note that different PBXs have different requirements on the clock source.

**Step 5**
Configure line signaling.

```sh
(config) # controller E1 0/2/0

(config-controller)# ds0-group 1 timeslots 1 type ?

... r2-analog R2 ITU Q411 r2-digital R2 ITU Q421 r2-pulse R2 ITU Supplement 7 ...
```

**Step 6**
Configure interregister signaling.

```sh
(config)# controller E1 0/2/0

eefje(config)# controller E1 0/2/0
eefje(config-controller)# ds0-group 1 timeslots 1 type r2-digital ?
dtmf DTMF tone signaling r2-compelled R2 Compelled Register Signaling
```
r2-non-compelled  R2 Non Compelled Register Signaling  
r2-semi-compelled  R2 Semi Compelled Register Signaling  
...

The Cisco implementation of R2 signaling has Dialed Number Identification Service (DNIS) support enabled by default. If you enable the Automatic Number Identification (ANI) option, the collection of DNIS information is still performed. Specification of the ANI option does not disable DNIS collection. DNIS is the number that is called and ANI is the number of the caller. For example, if you configure a router called A to call a router called B, then the DNIS number is assigned to router B and the ANI number is assigned to router A. ANI is similar to caller ID.

**Step 7** Customize the configuration with the cas-custom command.

```plaintext
(config)# controller E1 0/2/0

(config-controller)# ds0-group 1 timeslots 1 type r2-digital r2-compelled ani
  cas-custom 1
    country brazil
    metering
    answer-signal group-b 1

  voice-port 0/2/0:1

  dial-peer voice 200 pots
  destination-pattern 43200
  direct-inward-dial
  port 0/2/0:1

  dial-peer voice 3925 voip
  destination-pattern 39...
  session target ipv4:1.5.25.41

```

---

**R2 Configurations**

The configurations have been modified in order to show only the information that this document discusses.

**Configured for R2 Digital Non-Compelled**

```plaintext
hostname eefje
!
controller E1 0
clock source line primary
ds0-group 1 timeslots 1-15 type r2-digital r2-non-compelled
  cas-custom 1

!--- For more information on these commands
!--- refer to
ds0-group
  and
cas-custom.
!
voice-port 0:1
cptone BE

!--- The cptone command is country specific. For more
!--- information on this command, refer to
```

---
dial-peer voice 123 pots
destination-pattern 123
direct-inward-dial
port 0:1
prefix 123

dial-peer voice 567 voip
destination-pattern 567
session target ipv4:2.0.0.2

Configured for R2 Digital Semi-Compelled
hostname eefje
controller E1 0
clock source line primary
ds0-group 1 timeslots 1-15 type r2-digital r2-semi-compelled
cas-custom 1

!--- For more information on these commands
!--- refer to
ds0-group
and
cas-custom
.

voice-port 0:1
cptone BE

!--- The cptone command is country specific. For more
!--- information on this command, refer to
cptone
.

dial-peer voice 123 pots
destination-pattern 123
direct-inward-dial
port 0:1
prefix 123

dial-peer voice 567 voip
destination-pattern 567
session target ipv4:2.0.0.2

Configured for R2 Digital Compelled ANI
hostname eefje
! controller E1 0 clock source line primary ds0-group
1 timeslots 1-15 type r2-digital r2-compelled ani cas-custom 1

!--- For more information on these commands
!--- refer to
ds0-group
and
cas-custom
.

voice-port 0:1 cptone BE

!--- The cptone command is country specific. For more
!--- information on this command, refer to
Sample Debug Command Output

This example shows the output for the `debug vpm sig` command.

```
(config-controller)debug vpm sig
Syslog logging: enabled
(0 messages dropped, 9 messages rate-limited, 1 flushes, 0 overruns,
xml disabled, filtering disabled)
No Active Message Discriminator.
Console logging: disabled
Monitor logging: level debugging, 0 messages logged, xml disabled, filtering disabled
Buffer logging: level debugging, 163274 messages logged, xml disabled, filtering disabled
Exception Logging: size (4096 bytes)  Count and timestamp logging messages: disabled
Persistent logging: disabled
No active filter modules.
Trap logging: level informational, 172 message lines logged
Logging Source-Interface:
VRF Name:Log Buffer (4096 bytes):0): DSX (E1 0/2/0:0): STATE: R2_IN_COLLECT_DNIS
R2 Got Event R2_TONE_OFF
*Jan 29 21:32:22.258: r2_reg_generate_digits(0/2/0:1(1)): Tx digit '1'
*Jan 29 21:32:22.369: htpsp_digit_ready(0/2/0:1(1)): Rx digit='#'
*Jan 29 21:32:22.369: R2 Incoming Voice(0/0): DSX (E1 0/2/0:0):STATE: R2_IN_COLLECT_DNIS
R2 Got Event R2_TONE_TIMER
*Jan 29 21:32:25.258: r2_reg_generate_digits(0/2/0:1(1)): Tx digit '#'
*Jan 29 21:32:25.520: htpsp_dialing_done(0/2/0:1(1))
*Jan 29 21:32:25.520: R2 Incoming Voice(0/0): DSX (E1 0/2/0:0):STATE: R2_IN_COLLECT_DNIS
R2 Got Event R2_TONE_TIMER
*Jan 29 21:32:25.520: r2_reg_generate_digits(0/2/0:1(1)): Tx digit '3#'
*Jan 29 21:32:25.520: htpsp_digit_ready_up(0/2/0:1(1)): Rx digit='1'
*Jan 29 21:32:25.520: R2 Incoming Voice(0/0): DSX (E1 0/2/0:0): STATE: R2_IN_CATEGORY
R2 Got Event 1
*Jan 29 21:32:25.520: Enter r2_comp_category
*Jan 29 21:32:25.520: R2 Event : 1
*Jan 29 21:32:25.520: collect_call_enable = 0
*Jan 29 21:32:25.520: Not Sending B7
*Jan 29 21:32:25.520: r2_reg_event_proc(0/2/0:1(1)) ADDR_INFO_COLLECTED (DNIS=39001, ANI=39700)
*Jan 29 21:32:25.520: r2_reg_process_event: [0/2/0:1(1), R2_REG_COLLECTING,
E_R2_REG_ADDR_COLLECTED(89)]
*Jan 29 21:32:25.520: r2_reg_ic_addr_collected(0/2/0:1(1))htsp_switch_ind
*Jan 29 21:32:25.520: htpsp_process_event: [0/2/0:1(1), R2_Q421_IC_WAIT_ANSWER,
E_HTSP_SETUP_ACK]
*Jan 29 21:32:25.521: r2_q421_ic_setup_ack(0/2/0:1(1)) E_HTSP_SETUP_ACK
*Jan 29 21:32:25.521: r2_reg_switch(0/2/0:1(1))
*Jan 29 21:32:25.521: r2_reg_process_event: [0/2/0:1(1), R2_REG_WAIT_FOR_SWITCH,
E_R2_REG_SWITCH(96)]
*Jan 29 21:32:25.521: r2_reg_ic_switched(0/2/0:1(1))
*Jan 29 21:32:25.522: htpsp_process_event: [0/2/0:1(1), R2_Q421_IC_WAIT_ANSWER,
E_HTSP_PROCEEDING]
*Jan 29 21:32:25.530:htsp_calcli_redged invoked
*Jan 29 21:32:25.530: r2_reg_event_proc(0/2/0:1(1)) ALERTING RECEIVED
*Jan 29 21:32:25.530: R2 Incoming Voice(0/0): DSX (E1 0/2/0:0): STATE: R2_IN_WAIT_REMOTE_ALERT
R2 Got Event R2_ALERTING
*Jan 29 21:32:25.530:rx R2_ALERTING in r2_comp_wait_remote_alert
*Jan 29 21:32:25.530: r2_reg_generate_digits(0/2/0:1(1)): Tx digit '1'htsp_alert_notify
```
This example shows the output for the **debug vtsp all** command.

```
(config-controller)#debug vtsp all
Log Buffer (4096 bytes)::S_R2_DIALING_COMP, event:E_VTSP_DIGIT_END]
*Jan 29 21:56:33.901: //213/85E8EDFC81D1/VTSP:(0/2/0:1):0:1:1/ds_do_dial: Digits To
Dial=#
*Jan 29 21:56:33.901: //213/85E8EDFC81D1/VTSP:(0/2/0:1):0:1:1/vtsp_dial_nopush:
*Jan 29 21:56:33.901: //213/85E8EDFC81D1/VTSP:(0/2/0:1):0:1:1/dc_dialing_done:
*Jan 29 21:56:34.691: //213/85E8EDFC81D1/VTSP:(0/2/0:1):0:1:1/vtsp_dsm_peer_event_cb:
Event=E_DSM_CC_CAPS_ACK
*Jan 29 21:56:34.691: //213/85E8EDFC81D1/VTSP:(0/2/0:1):0:1:1/vtsp_timer_stop: Timer
Stop Time=80497275
```

This example shows the output for the **debug vtsp all** command.

```
(config-controller)#debug vtsp all
Log Buffer (4096 bytes)::S_R2_DIALING_COMP, event:E_VTSP_DIGIT_END]
*Jan 29 21:56:33.901: //213/85E8EDFC81D1/VTSP:(0/2/0:1):0:1:1/ds_do_dial: Digits To
Dial=#
*Jan 29 21:56:33.901: //213/85E8EDFC81D1/VTSP:(0/2/0:1):0:1:1/vtsp_dial_nopush:
*Jan 29 21:56:33.901: //213/85E8EDFC81D1/VTSP:(0/2/0:1):0:1:1/dc_dialing_done:
*Jan 29 21:56:34.691: //213/85E8EDFC81D1/VTSP:(0/2/0:1):0:1:1/vtsp_dsm_peer_event_cb:
Event=E_DSM_CC_CAPS_ACK
*Jan 29 21:56:34.691: //213/85E8EDFC81D1/VTSP:(0/2/0:1):0:1:1/vtsp_timer_stop: Timer
Stop Time=80497275
*Jan 29 21:56:34.691: //213/85E8EDFC81D1/VTSP:(0/2/0:1):0:1:1/vtsp_dsm_dial_done_cb:
*Jan 29 21:56:33.901: //213/85E8EDFC81D1/VTSP:(0/2/0:1):0:1:1/vtsp_dial_nopush:
```
Feature Group D Configuration

To configure the Feature Group D signaling, perform these steps:

Before you begin

The Feature Group D signaling is supported on Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers from IOS XE release 15.5 (2). Feature Group D service is a trunk side connection that enables telephone customers to choose their long distance network and use the same number of digits irrespective of carrier they use. Routers interface with interexchange carriers using Feature Group D to support voice traffic in the carrier environment.

Before you attempt this configuration, ensure that you meet these prerequisites:

- The platform must be using Digital T1/E1 Packet Voice Trunk Network Modules.
The Digital T1/E1 Packet Voice Trunk Network Module can have one or two slots for voice/WAN Interface Network Modules (NIMs); NIM supports one to eight ports. Only the dual-mode (voice/WAN) multiple trunk cards are supported in the digital E1 packet voice trunk network module, not older VICs.

- Drop-and-Insert capability is supported only between two ports on the same multiple card.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `configure terminal {ip-address | interface-type interface-number [ip-address]}`
2. `voice-card slot/subslot`  
3. `controller T1/E1 slot/subslot/port`
4. `framing {sf | esf}`
5. `linecode {b8zs | ami}`
6. `ds0-group ds0-group-notimeslots timeslot-list type{e&m-fgd | fgd-eana}`
7. no shutdown
8. `exit`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`configure terminal {ip-address</td>
<td>interface-type interface-number [ip-address]}`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Router(config)# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>voice-card slot/subslot</code></td>
<td>Enters voice card interface configuration mode and specify the slot location by using a value from 0 to 5, depending upon your router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Router(config)# voice-card slot/subslot</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>controller T1/E1 slot/subslot/port</code></td>
<td>Enters controller configuration mode for the T1 controller at the specified slot/port location. Valid values for slot and port are 0 and 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Router(config)# controller T1 slot/subslot/port</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`framing {sf</td>
<td>esf}`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`Router(config)# framing {sf</td>
<td>esf}`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`linecode {b8zs</td>
<td>ami}`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`Router(config)# linecode {b8zs</td>
<td>ami}`</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Media and Signaling Authentication and Encryption


### Multicast Music-on-Hold

The Music-on-Hold (MOH) feature enables you to subscribe to a music streaming service when you are using a Cisco IOS MGCP voice gateway. Music streams from an MOH server to the voice interfaces of on-net and off-net callers that have been placed on hold. Cisco Communications Manager supports the capability to place callers on hold with music supplied from a streaming multicast MOH server.

By means of a preconfigured multicast address on the Cisco Unified Communications Manager or gateway, the gateway can "listen" for Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP) packets that are broadcast from a default router in the network and can relay the packets to designated voice interfaces in the network. You can initiate the call on hold. However, you cannot initiate music on hold on a MGCP controlled analog phone. Whenever
a called party places a calling party on hold, Cisco Communications Manager requests the MOH server to stream RTP packets to the "on-hold" interface through the preconfigured multicast address. In this way, RTP packets are relayed to appropriately configured voice interfaces that have been placed on hold. When you configure a multicast address on a gateway, the gateway sends an Internet Gateway Management Protocol (IGMP) "join" message to the default router, indicating to the default router that the gateway is ready to receive RTP multicast packets.

Multiple MOH servers can be present in the same network, but each server must have a different Class D IP address, and the address must be configured in Cisco Communications Manager and the MGCP voice gateways. For more information on configuring MOH, see the http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/ios-xml/ios/voice/cminterop/configuration/15-0m/vc-15-0m-book/vc-ucm-mgcp-gw.html#GUID-A3461142-2F05-4420-AEE6-032FCA3B7952

### TLS 1.2 support on SCCP Gateways

The TLS 1.2 support on SCCP Gateways feature details the configuration of TLS 1.2 on SCCP protocol for digital signal processor (DSP) farm including Unicast conference bridge (CFB), Media Termination Point (MTP), and SCCP telephony control (STC) application (STCAPP).

DSP on gateways can be used as media resources for transrating or transcoding. Each media resource uses Secure Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) to communicate with Cisco Unified Communications Manager. Currently SSL 3.1, which is equivalent to TLS1.0, is used for sending secure signals. This feature enhances the support to TLS 1.2.

#### SCCP TLS connection

CiscoSSL is based on OpenSSL. SCCP uses CiscoSSL to secure the communication signals.

If a resource is configured in the secure mode, the SCCP application initiates a process to complete Transport Layer Security (TLS) handshaking. During the handshake, the server sends information to CiscoSSL about the TLS version and cipher suites supported. Previously, only SSL3.1 was supported for SCCP secure signalling. SSL3.1 is equivalent to TLS 1.0. The TLS 1.2 Support feature introduces TLS1.2 support to SCCP secure signalling.

After TLS handshaking is complete, SCCP is notified and SCCP kills the process.

If the handshaking is completed successfully, a REGISTER message is sent to Cisco Unified Communications Manager through the secure tunnel. If handshaking fails and a retry is needed, a new process is initiated.

---

**Note**

For SCCP-based signalling, only TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA cipher suite is supported.

#### Supported Platforms

The TLS 1.2 support on SCCP Gateways feature is supported on the following platforms:

- Cisco 4321 Integrated Services Router
- Cisco 4331 Integrated Services Router
- Cisco 4351 Integrated Services Router
- Cisco 4431 Integrated Services Router

---
Configuring Voice Functionality

TLS 1.2 support on SCCP Gateways

- Cisco 4451-X Integrated Services Router
- The Cisco VG310, VG320, VG350, VG204XM, and VG202XM Analog Voice Gateways
- All Cisco Integrated Services Router Generation 2 (ISR G2) platforms

**Configuring TLS version for STC application**

Perform the following task to configure a TLS version for the STC application:

```
enable
configure terminal
stcapp security tls-version v1.2
exit
```

**Note**
The stcapp security tls command sets the TLS version to v.1.0, v1.1, or v1.2 only. If not configured explicitly, TLS v1.0 is selected by default.

**Configuring TLS version in Secure Mode for DSP Farm Profile**

Perform the following task to configure the TLS version in secure mode for DSP farm profile:

```
enable
configure terminal
dspfarm profile 7 conference security
tls-version v1.2
exit
```

**Note**
The tls command can be configured only in security mode.

**Verifying TLS version**

Perform the following task to verify the TLS version:

```
Device# show dspfarm profile 4
Dspfarm Profile Configuration

Profile ID = 4, Service = MTP, Resource ID = 5
Profile Service Mode : secure
Trustpoint : cucm_12_s_mtp
TLS Version : v1.2
Profile Admin State : DOWN
Profile Operation State : DOWN
Application : SCCP Status : NOT ASSOCIATED
Resource Provider : FLEX_DSPRM Status : DOWN
Total Number of Resources Configured : 1
Total Number of Resources Available : 0
Total Number of Resources Out of Service : 1
Total Number of Resources Active : 0
Hardware Configured Resources : 1
Hardware Resources Out of Service: 1
Software Configured Resources : 0
Number of Hardware Resources Active : 0
Number of Software Resources Active : 0
```
Codec Configuration: num_of_codecs:1
Codec: g711ulaw, Maximum Packetization Period: 30

Device# show dspfarm profile 5
Dspfarm Profile Configuration
Profile ID = 5, Service = CONFERENCING, Resource ID = 3
Profile Service Mode: secure
Trustpoint: cucm_12_s_conf
TLS Version: v1.0
Profile Admin State: DOWN
Profile Operation State: DOWN
Application: SCCP Status: NOT ASSOCIATED
Resource Provider: FLEX_DSPRM Status: DOWN
Total Number of Resources Configured: 1
Total Number of Resources Available: 0
Total Number of Resources Out of Service: 1
Total Number of Resources Active: 0
Maximum conference participants: 8
Codec Configuration: num_of_codecs:6
Codec: g711ulaw, Maximum Packetization Period: 30, Transcoder: Not Required
Codec: g711alaw, Maximum Packetization Period: 30, Transcoder: Not Required
Codec: g729ar8, Maximum Packetization Period: 60, Transcoder: Not Required
Codec: g729abr8, Maximum Packetization Period: 60, Transcoder: Not Required
Codec: g729r8, Maximum Packetization Period: 60, Transcoder: Not Required
Codec: g729br8, Maximum Packetization Period: 60, Transcoder: Not Required

Device# show dspfarm profile 6
Dspfarm Profile Configuration
Profile ID = 6, Service = TRANSCODING, Resource ID = 1
Profile Service Mode: secure
Trustpoint: cucm_12_s_xcode
TLS Version: v1.0
Profile Admin State: DOWN
Profile Operation State: DOWN
Application: SCCP Status: NOT ASSOCIATED
Resource Provider: FLEX_DSPRM Status: DOWN
Total Number of Resources Configured: 1
Total Number of Resources Available: 0
Total Number of Resources Out of Service: 1
Total Number of Resources Active: 0
Codec Configuration: num_of_codecs:4
Codec: g711ulaw, Maximum Packetization Period: 30
Codec: g711alaw, Maximum Packetization Period: 30
Codec: g729ar8, Maximum Packetization Period: 60
Codec: g729abr8, Maximum Packetization Period: 60

Verifying STC app TLS version

Perform the following task to verify TLS version of the STC application:

Device# show call application voice stcapp
App Status: Active
CCM Status: UP
CCM Group: 120
Registration Mode: CCM
Total Devices: 0
Total Calls in Progress: 0
Total Call Legs in Use: 0
ROH Timeout: 45
TLS Version: v1.0
Additional References

**Table 24: Additional References for TLS 1.2 support on SCCP Gateways**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS Voice Gateways Configuration Guide</td>
<td>Supplementary Services Features for FXS Ports on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS Voice Gateways Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Feature Information for TLS 1.2 support on SCCP Gateways**

**Table 25: Feature Information for TLS 1.2 support on SCCP Gateways**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| TLS 1.2 support on SCCP Gateways           | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1           | The TLS 1.2 support on SCCP Gateways feature details the configuration of TLS 1.2 on SCCP protocol for DSP farm including CFB, MTP, and STCAPP. The following commands were introduced: `stcapp security tls-version`, `tls-version`.
Dying Gasp Through SNMP, Syslog and Ethernet OAM

Dying Gasp—One of the following unrecoverable condition occurs:

- System reload
- Interface shutdown
- Power failure—supported on specific platforms

This type of condition is vendor specific. An Ethernet Operations, Administration, and Maintenance (OAM) notification about the condition may be sent immediately.

- Prerequisites for Dying Gasp Support, on page 347
- Restrictions for Dying Gasp Support, on page 347
- Information About Dying Gasp Through SNMP, Syslog and Ethernet OAM, on page 348
- How to Configure Dying Gasp Through SNMP, Syslog and Ethernet OAM, on page 348
- Configuration Examples for Dying Gasp Through SNMP, Syslog and Ethernet OAM, on page 349
- Feature Information for Dying Gasp Support, on page 350

Prerequisites for Dying Gasp Support

You must enable Ethernet OAM before configuring Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) for dying gasp feature. For more information, see Enabling Ethernet OAM on an Interface.

Restrictions for Dying Gasp Support

- The dying gasp feature is not supported if you remove the power supply unit (PSU) from the system.
- SNMP trap is sent only on power failure or removal of power supply cable on selected platforms.
- The dying gasp support feature cannot be configured using CLI. To configure hosts using SNMP, refer to the SNMP host configuration examples below.
- In the case of system reload or interface shutdown on the Cisco 4000 Series ISRs and Cisco 1100 Series ISRs running Cisco IOS-XE Everest Release 16.6.2, dying gasp packets are sent to peer routers. However, the system state is not captured in the system logs (syslogs) or SNMP traps.
Information About Dying Gasp Through SNMP, Syslog and Ethernet OAM

Dying Gasp

One of the OAM features as defined by IEEE 802.3ah is Remote Failure Indication, which helps in detecting faults in Ethernet connectivity that are caused by slowly deteriorating quality. Ethernet OAM provides a mechanism for an OAM entity to convey these failure conditions to its peer via specific flags in the OAM PDU. One of the failure condition methods to communicate is Dying Gasp, which indicates that an unrecoverable condition has occurred; for example, when an interface is shut down. This type of condition is vendor specific. A notification about the condition may be sent immediately and continuously.

How to Configure Dying Gasp Through SNMP, Syslog and Ethernet OAM

Dying Gasp Trap Support for Different SNMP Server Host/Port Configurations

Note

You can configure up to five different SNMP server host/port configurations.

Environmental Settings on the Network Management Server

setenv SR_TRAP_TEST_PORT=UDP port
setenv SR_UTIL_COMMUNITY=public
setenv SR_UTIL_SNMP_VERSION=v2c
setenv SR_MGR_CONF_DIR=Path to the executable snmpinfo.DAT file

The following example shows SNMP trap configuration on the host:

Router# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Router(config)#
Router(config)# snmp-server host 7.0.0.149 vrf Mgmt-intf version 2c public udp-port 6264
Router(config)#
Router(config)# ^Z
Router#

After performing a power cycle, the following output is displayed on the router console:
Dying Gasp Through SNMP, Syslog and Ethernet OAM

Message Displayed on the Peer Router on Receiving Dying Gasp Notification

001689: *May 30 14:16:47.746 IST: %ETHERNET_OAM-6-RFI: The client on interface Gi0/0/0 has received a remote failure indication from its remote peer(failure reason - remote client power failure action - )

Displaying SNMP Configuration for Receiving Dying Gasp Notification

Use the show running-config command to display the SNMP configuration for receiving dying gasp notification:

Router# show running-config | i snmp
snmp-server community public RW
snmp-server host 7.0.0.149 vrf Mgmt-intf version 2c public udp-port 6264
Router#

Configuration Examples for Dying Gasp Through SNMP, Syslog and Ethernet OAM

Example: Configuring SNMP Community Strings on a Router

Setting up the community access string to permit access to the SNMP:
Example: Configuring SNMP-Server Host Details on the Router Console

Specifying the recipient of a SNMP notification operation:

Router> enable
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# snmp-server host X.X.X.XXX vrf mgmt-intf version 2c public udp-port 9800
Router(config)# exit

For more information on command syntax and examples, refer to the Cisco IOS Network Management Command Reference.

Feature Information for Dying Gasp Support

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dying Gasp</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Release 16.6.2</td>
<td>Ethernet OAM provides a mechanism for an OAM entity to convey failure conditions to its peer via specific flags in the OAM PDU. One of the failure condition method to communicate is Dying Gasp, which indicates that an unrecoverable condition has occurred; for example, when an interface is shut down. This type of condition is vendor specific. A notification about the condition may be sent immediately and continuously.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 24

Support for Software Media Termination Point

The Support for Software Media Termination Point (MTP) feature bridges the media streams between two connections allowing Cisco Unified Communications Manager (Cisco UCM) to relay calls that are routed through SIP or H.323 endpoints via Skinny Call Control Protocol (SCCP) commands. These commands allow Cisco UCM to establish an MTP for call signaling.

- Finding Feature Information, on page 351
- Information About Support for Software Media Termination Point, on page 351
- How to Configure Support for Software Media Termination Point, on page 352
- Prerequisites, on page 352
- Restrictions, on page 352
- Configuring Support for Software Media Termination Point, on page 352
- Feature Information for Support for Software Media Termination Point, on page 357

Finding Feature Information

Your software release may not support all the features documented in this module. For the latest caveats and feature information, see Bug Search Tool and the release notes for your platform and software release. To find information about the features documented in this module, and to see a list of the releases in which each feature is supported, see the feature information table.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Information About Support for Software Media Termination Point

This feature extends the software MTP support to the Cisco Unified Border Element (Enterprise). Software MTP is an essential component of large-scale deployments of Cisco UCM. This feature enables new capabilities so that the Cisco UBE can function as an Enterprise Edge Cisco Session Border Controller for large-scale deployments that are moving to SIP trunking.
How to Configure Support for Software Media Termination Point

Prerequisites

• For the software MTP to function properly, codec and packetization must be configured the same way on both in call legs and out call legs.

Cisco Unified Border Element (Enterprise)

• Cisco IOS XE Release 2.6 or a later release must be installed and running on your Cisco ASR 1000 Series Router.

Restrictions

• RSVP Agent is not supported in software MTP.
• Hardware MTP for repacketization is not supported.
• Call Threshold is not supported for standalone software MTP.
• Per-call debugging is not supported.

Configuring Support for Software Media Termination Point

To enable and configure the Support for Software Media Termination Point feature, perform the following task.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. sccp local interface-type interface-number [port port-number]
4. sccp ccm {ipv4-address | ipv6-address | dns} identifier identifier-number [port port-number] version version-number
5. sccp
6. sccp ccm group group-number
7. associate ccm identifier-number priority number
8. associate profile profile-identifier register device-name
9. dspfarm profile profile-identifier {conference | mtp | transcode} [security]
10. maximum sessions {hardware | software} number
11. associate application sccp
12. no shutdown
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Router&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode. &lt;br&gt;• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 2</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Router# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 3</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sccp local interface-type interface-number [port port-number]</td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Router(config)# sccp local gigabitethernet0/0/0</td>
<td>Selects the local interface that SCCP applications (transcoding and conferencing) use to register with Cisco UCM. &lt;br&gt;• <em>interface type</em> --Can be an interface address or a virtual-interface address such as Ethernet. &lt;br&gt;• <em>interface number</em> --Interface number that the SCCP application uses to register with Cisco UCM. &lt;br&gt;• <em>(Optional)</em> <em>port port-number</em>--Port number used by the selected interface. Range is 1025 to 65535. Default is 2000.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 4</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sccp ccm {ipv4-address</td>
<td>ipv6-address</td>
<td>dns} identifier identifier-number [port port-number] version version-number</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 5</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sccp</td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Router(config)# sccp</td>
<td>Enables the Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) and its related applications (transcoding and conferencing).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 6</th>
<th><code>sccp ccm group group-number</code></th>
<th><strong>Purpose</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Router(config)# sccp ccm group 10</code></td>
<td>Creates a Cisco UCM group and enters SCCP Cisco UCM configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **group-number** --Identifies the Cisco UCM group. Range is 1 to 50.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 7</th>
<th><code>associate ccm identifier-number priority number</code></th>
<th><strong>Purpose</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Router(config-sccp-ccm)# associate ccm priority 30</code></td>
<td>Associates a Cisco UCM with a Cisco UCM group and establishes its priority within the group:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **identifier-number** --Identifies the Cisco UCM. Range is 1 to 65535. There is no default value.  
- **priority number** --Priority of the Cisco UCM within the Cisco UCM group. Range is 1 to 4. There is no default value. The highest priority is 1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 8</th>
<th><code>associate profile profile-identifier register device-name</code></th>
<th><strong>Purpose</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>Router(config-sccp-ccm)# associate profile 1 register MTP0011</code></td>
<td>Associates a DSP farm profile with a Cisco UCM group:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **profile-identifier** --Identifies the DSP farm profile. Range is 1 to 65535. There is no default value.  
- **register device-name** --Device name in Cisco UCM. A maximum of 15 characters can be entered for the device name.

| Step 9  | `dspfarm profile profile-identifier {conference | mtp | transcode} [security]` | **Purpose** |
|---------|-------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Example: | `Router(config-sccp-ccm)# dspfarm profile 1 mtp` | Enters DSP farm profile configuration mode and defines a profile for DSP farm services: |

- **profile-identifier** --Number that uniquely identifies a profile. Range is 1 to 65535. There is no default.  
- **conference** --Enables a profile for conferencing.  
- **mtp** --Enables a profile for MTP.  
- **transcode** --Enables a profile for transcoding.  
- **security** (Optional)-- Enables a profile for secure DSP farm services.

| Step 10 | `maximum sessions {hardware | software} number` | **Purpose** |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Example: | `Router(config-dspfarm-profile)# maximum sessions software 10` | Specifies the maximum number of sessions that are supported by the profile. |

- **hardware** --Number of sessions that MTP hardware resources can support.  
- **software** --Number of sessions that MTP software resources can support.  
- **number** --Number of sessions that are supported by the profile. Range is 0 to x. Default is 0. The x value is determined at run time depending on the number of resources available with the resource provider.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Command or Action</strong></th>
<th><strong>Purpose</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 11</strong></td>
<td>Associates SCCP to the DSP farm profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>associate application sccp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-dspfarm-profile)# associate application sccp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 12</strong></td>
<td>Changes the status of the interface to the UP state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no shutdown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-dspfarm-profile)# no shutdown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows a sample configuration for the Support for Software Media Termination Point feature:

```
sccp local GigabitEthernet0/0/1
sccp ccm 10.13.40.148 identifier 1 version 6.0
sccp
!
sccp ccm group 1
  bind interface GigabitEthernet0/0/1
  associate ccm 1 priority 1
  associate profile 6 register RR_RLS6
!
sccp
  dspfarm profile 6 mtp
codec g711ulaw
  maximum sessions software 100
  associate application SCCP
!
!
gateway
  media-inactivity-criteria all
timer receive-rtp 400
```

**Troubleshooting Tips**

To verify and troubleshoot this feature, use the following `show` commands:

- To verify information about SCCP, use the `show sccp` command:

  ```
  Router# show sccp
  SCCP Admin State: UP
  Gateway IP Address: 10.13.40.157, Port Number: 2000
  IP Precedence: 5
  User Masked Codec list: None
  Call Manager: 10.13.40.148, Port Number: 2000
    Priority: N/A, Version: 6.0, Identifier: 1
    Trustpoint: N/A
  ```

- To verify information about the DSPfarm profile, use the `show dspfarm profile` command:
Router# show dspfarm profile 6

Dspfarm Profile Configuration
Profile ID = 6, Service = MTP, Resource ID = 1
Profile Description:
Profile Service Mode : Non Secure
Profile Admin State : UP
Profile Operation State : ACTIVE
Application : SCCP Status : ASSOCIATED
Resource Provider : NONE Status : NONE
Number of Resource Configured : 100
Number of Resource Available : 100
Hardware Configured Resources : 0
Hardware Available Resources : 0
Software Resources : 100
Codec Configuration
Codec : g711ulaw, Maximum Packetization Period : 30

• To display statistics for the SCCP connections, use the show sccp connections command:

Router# show sccp connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sess_id</th>
<th>conn_id</th>
<th>stype</th>
<th>mode</th>
<th>codec</th>
<th>ripaddr</th>
<th>rport</th>
<th>sport</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16808048</td>
<td>16789079</td>
<td>mtp</td>
<td>sendrecv</td>
<td>g711u</td>
<td>10.13.40.20</td>
<td>17510</td>
<td>7242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16808048</td>
<td>16789078</td>
<td>mtp</td>
<td>sendrecv</td>
<td>g711u</td>
<td>10.13.40.157</td>
<td>6900</td>
<td>16050</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• To display information about RTP connections, use the show rtpspi call command:

Router# show rtpspi call

RTP Service Provider info:
No. CallId dstCallId Mode LocalRTP RmtRTP LocalIP RemoteIP SRTP
22     19    Snd-Rcv 7242   17510 0x90D080F 0x90D0814 0
19     22    Snd-Rcv 18050 6900 0x90D080F 0x90D080F 0

• To display information about VoIP RTP connections, use the show voip rtp connections command:

Router# show voip rtp connections

VoIP RTP Port Usage Information
Max Ports Available: 30000, Ports Reserved: 100, Ports in Use: 102
Port range not configured, Min: 5500, Max: 65499
VoIP RTP active connections:
No. CallId dstCallId LocalRTP RmtRTP LocalIP RemoteIP
1     114    117   19822 24556 10.13.40.157 10.13.40.157
4     117    114   16526 52624 10.13.40.157 10.13.40.20

• Additional, more specific, show commands that can be used include the following:
  • show sccp connection callid
  • show sccp connection connid
  • show sccp connection sessionid
  • show rtpspi call callid
  • show rtpspi stat callid
  • show voip rtp connection callid
  • show voip rtp connection type
• To isolate specific problems, use the `debug sccp` command:
  - `debug sccp [all | config | errors | events | keepalive | messages | packets | parser | tls]`

# Feature Information for Support for Software Media Termination Point

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Feature History Table for the ASR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Support for Software Media Termination Point</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Release 2.6 S</td>
<td>Software Media Termination Point (MTP) provides the capability for Cisco Unified Communications Manager (Cisco UCM) to interact with a voice gateway via Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) commands. These commands allow the Cisco UCM to establish an MTP for call signaling.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Feature Information for Support for Software Media Termination Point

Support for Software Media Termination Point
CHAPTER 25

Configuration Examples

This chapter provides examples of configuring common networking tasks on the router. The examples in this chapter are provided for illustrative purposes only; little or no context is given with these examples. For more information, see Installing the Software, on page 91.

When reading this section, also be aware that networking configurations are complex and can be configured in many ways. The examples in this section show one method of accomplishing a configuration.

This chapter contains the following examples:

- Copying the Consolidated Package from the TFTP Server to the Router, on page 359
- Configuring the Router to Boot Using the Consolidated Package Stored on the Router, on page 360
- Extracting the Subpackages from a Consolidated Package into the Same File System, on page 362
- Extracting the Subpackages from a Consolidated Package into a Different File System, on page 364
- Configuring the Router to Boot Using Subpackages, on page 365
- Backing Up Configuration Files, on page 371
- Displaying Digitally Signed Cisco Software Signature Information, on page 372
- Obtaining the Description of a Module or Consolidated Package, on page 376

Copying the Consolidated Package from the TFTP Server to the Router

The following example shows how to copy the consolidated package from the TFTP server to the router:

```
Router# dir bootflash:
Directory of bootflash:/

11 drwx 16384 Jul 2 2012 15:25:23 +00:00 lost+found
16225 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:30:48 +00:00 core
178465 drwx 4096 Sep 13 2012 17:48:41 +00:00 .prst_sync
324481 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:26:54 +00:00 .rollback_timer
12 -rw- 0 Jul 2 2012 15:27:06 +00:00 tracelogs.696
373153 drwx 114688 Sep 13 2012 17:49:14 +00:00 tracelogs
32449 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 .installer
681409 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:15:39 +00:00 .ssh
697633 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 vman_fdb

7451738112 bytes total (7015186432 bytes free)
Router# copy tftp bootflash:
Address or name of remote host []? 10.81.116.4
Source filename []? rtp_isr4400-54/isr4400.bin
```
Configuring the Router to Boot Using the Consolidated Package Stored on the Router

The following example shows how to configure the router to boot using the consolidated package stored on the router:

```
Router# dir bootflash:
Directory of bootflash:/

11 drwx  16384 Jul 2 2012 15:25:23 +00:00  lost+found
16225 drwx  4096 Jul 31 2012 19:30:48 +00:00  core
178465 drwx  4096 Sep 13 2012 17:48:41 +00:00  .prst_sync
324481 drwx  4096 Jul 2 2012 15:26:54 +00:00  .rollback_timer
12 -rw-  0 Jul 2 2012 15:27:06 +00:00  tracelogs.696
373153 drwx 114688 Sep 13 2012 18:05:07 +00:00  tracelogs
32449 drwx  4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00  .installer
681409 drwx  4096 Jul 31 2012 19:15:39 +00:00  .ssh
697633 drwx  4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00  vman_fdb
13 -rw-  424317088 Sep 13 2012 18:01:41 +00:00  isr4400.bin

7451738112 bytes total (6590910464 bytes free)
```

```
Router# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Router(config)# boot system bootflash:isr4400.bin
Router(config)# config-register 0x2102
Router(config)# exit
Router# show run | include boot
boot-start-marker
boot system bootflash:isr4400.bin
boot-end-marker
license boot level adventerprise
Router# copy running-config startup-config
Destination filename [startup-config]?
Building configuration...
[OK]
```
Router# **reload**
Proceed with reload? [confirm]
Sep 13 18:08:36.311 R0/0: %PMAN-5-EXITACTION: Process manager is exiting: process exit with reload chassis code

Initializing Hardware ...

System integrity status: c0000600
Failures detected:
  Boot FPGA corrupt
Key Sectors: (Primary,GOOD), (Backup,GOOD), (Revocation,GOOD)
Size of Primary = 2288 Backup = 2288 Revocation = 300

ROM:RSA Self Test Passed
ROM:Sha512 Self Test Passed
Self Tests Latency: 58 msec

System Bootstrap, Version 12.2(120618:163328) [username-ESGROM_20120618_GAMMA 101], DEVELOPMENT SOFTWARE
Copyright (c) 1994-2012 by cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Mon 06/18/2012 12:39:32.05 by username

Current image running: Boot ROM0
Last reset cause: LocalSoft
Cisco ISR 4400 platform with 4194304 Kbytes of main memory

File size is 0x194a90a0
Located isr4400.bin
Image size 424317088 inode num 13, bks cnt 103594 blk size 8*512
########################################################################
Boot image size = 424317088 (0x194a90a0) bytes

ROM:RSA Self Test Passed
ROM:Sha512 Self Test Passed
Self Tests Latency: 58 msec

Package header rev 1 structure detected
Calculating SHA-1 hash...done
validate_package: SHA-1 hash:
  calculated 7294dffc:892a6c35:a7a133df:18c032fc:0670b303
  expected 7294dffc:892a6c35:a7a133df:18c032fc:0670b303
Signed Header Version Based Image Detected

Using FLASH based Keys of type = PRIMARY KEY STORAGE
Using FLASH based Keys of type = ROLLOVER KEY STORAGE
RSA Signed DEVELOPMENT Image Signature Verification Successful.
Package Load Test Latency : 5133 msec
Image validated
%IOSXEBOOT-4-BOOT_ACTIVITY_LONG_TIME: (local/local): load_modules took: 2 seconds, expected max time 2 seconds

Restricted Rights Legend

Use, duplication, or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c) of the Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights clause at FAR sec. 52.227-19 and subparagraph (c) (1) (ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer
Extracting the Subpackages from a Consolidated Package into the Same File System

The following example shows how to extract the subpackages from a consolidated package into the same file system.

After entering the `request platform software package expand file bootflash:isr4400.bin` command (note that the `to` option is not used) the subpackages are extracted from the consolidated package into `bootflash:`.
Router> enable
Router# dir bootflash:
Directory of bootflash:/
  11 drwx 16384 Jul 2 2012 15:25:23 +00:00 lost+found
16225 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:30:48 +00:00 core
178465 drwx 4096 Sep 13 2012 18:12:58 +00:00 .prst_sync
324481 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:26:54 +00:00 .rollback_timer
12 -rw- 0 Jul 2 2012 15:27:06 +00:00 tracelogs.696
373153 drwx 114688 Sep 13 2012 18:16:49 +00:00 tracelogs
32449 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 .installer
681409 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:15:39 +00:00 .ssh
697633 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 vman_fdb
13 -rw- 424317088 Sep 13 2012 18:01:41 +00:00 isr4400.bin
778756 -rw- 112911096 Sep 13 2012 18:15:49 +00:00
isr4400-espbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
778757 -rw- 2220784 Sep 13 2012 18:15:49 +00:00
isr4400-firmware_fpga.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
778758 -rw- 371440 Sep 13 2012 18:15:49 +00:00
isr4400-firmware.fpge.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
778759 -rw- 8080112 Sep 13 2012 18:15:49 +00:00
isr4400-firmware.nim_t1e1.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
787860 -rw- 9351440 Sep 13 2012 18:15:49 +00:00
isr4400-firmware_sm_1t3e3.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120911_000023.SSA.pkg
778761 -rw- 379632 Sep 13 2012 18:15:49 +00:00
isr4400-firmware.ucse.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
--More-- 778754 -rw- 10540 Sep 13 2012 18:15:48 +00:00
isr4400-packages-universalk9.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.conf
778762 -rw- 27218680 Sep 13 2012 18:15:50 +00:00
isr4400-rpaccess.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
778763 -rw- 78938264 Sep 13 2012 18:15:50 +00:00
isr4400-rpbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
778764 -rw- 45177592 Sep 13 2012 18:15:50 +00:00
isr4400-rpcontrol.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120911_000023.SSA.pkg
778765 -rw- 114662144 Sep 13 2012 18:16:01 +00:00
isr4400-rpios-universalk9.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
778766 -rw- 26305668 Sep 13 2012 18:16:03 +00:00
isr4400-sipbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
778767 -rw- 13091576 Sep 13 2012 18:16:06 +00:00
isr4400-sipspa.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
778765 -rw- 11349 Sep 13 2012 18:16:06 +00:00 packages.conf
7451738112 bytes total (6150725632 bytes free)
Extracting the Subpackages from a Consolidated Package into a Different File System

The following example shows how to extract the subpackages from a consolidated package into a different file system.

The initial `dir usb0:` command shows that there are no subpackages in the `bootflash:` directory.

After the `request platform software package expand file usb0:isr4400.bin to bootflash:` command is entered, the subpackages are displayed in the `bootflash:` directory. The isr4400.bin consolidated package file is in the `usb0:` directory.

Router# `dir usb0:`
Directory of usb0:/
121 -rwx 423417088 Sep 13 2012 18:27:50 +00:00 isr4400.bin

Router# `dir bootflash:`
Directory of bootflash:/
11 drwx 16384 Jul 2 2012 15:25:23 +00:00 lost+found
16225 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:30:48 +00:00 core
178465 drwx 4096 Sep 13 2012 18:12:58 +00:00 .prst_sync
324481 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:26:54 +00:00 .rollback_timer
12 -rw- 0 Jul 2 2012 15:27:06 +00:00 tracelogs.696
373153 drwx 114688 Sep 13 2012 18:41:51 +00:00 tracelogs
32449 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 .installer
681409 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:15:39 +00:00 .ssh
697633 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 vman_fdb

Router# `request platform software package expand file usb0:isr4400.bin to bootflash:`
Verifying parameters
Validating package type
Copying package files
SUCCESS: Finished expanding all-in-one software package.

Router# `dir bootflash:`
Directory of bootflash:/
11 drwx 16384 Jul 2 2012 15:25:23 +00:00 lost+found
16225 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:30:48 +00:00 core
178465 drwx 4096 Sep 13 2012 18:12:58 +00:00 .prst_sync
324481 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:26:54 +00:00 .rollback_timer
12 -rw- 0 Jul 2 2012 15:27:06 +00:00 tracelogs.696
373153 drwx 114688 Sep 13 2012 18:41:51 +00:00 tracelogs
32449 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 .installer
681409 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:15:39 +00:00 .ssh
697633 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 vman_fdb
454276 -rw- 112911096 Sep 13 2012 18:46:05 +00:00 isr4400-espbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
454277 -rw- 2220784 Sep 13 2012 18:46:05 +00:00 isr4400-firmware_dsp_sp2700.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
454278 -rw- 371440 Sep 13 2012 18:46:05 +00:00 isr4400-firmware_fpge.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
454279 -rw- 8080112 Sep 13 2012 18:46:05 +00:00 isr4400-firmware_nim_t1e1.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
454280 -rw- 9331440 Sep 13 2012 18:46:06 +00:00 isr4400-firmware_sm_1t3e3.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
454281 -rw- 379632 Sep 13 2012 18:46:06 +00:00
Configuring the Router to Boot Using Subpackages

After placing the provisioning file and subpackage files in a directory and booting the router, we recommend that you do not rename, delete, or alter any of these files. Renaming, deleting, or altering the files can lead to unpredictable router problems and behaviors. Each version of a consolidated package contains subpackages that are similar to those shown in the following table. However, each version of a consolidated package may contain different versions of each subpackage.

Table 28: Subpackages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subpackage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RPBase</td>
<td>Provides the operating system software for the Route Processor. This is the only bootable package.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RPControl</td>
<td>Controls the control plane processes that act as the interface between the Cisco IOS process and the rest of the platform.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RPAccess</td>
<td>Exports processing of restricted components, such as Secure Socket Layer (SSL), Secure Shell (SSH), and other security features.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RPIOS</td>
<td>Provides the Cisco IOS kernel, where Cisco IOS XE features are stored and run. Each consolidated package has a different version of RPIOS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESPBase</td>
<td>Provides the Embedded Services Processor (ESP) operating system and control processes, and ESP software.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIPBase</td>
<td>Provides control processes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIPSPA</td>
<td>Provides Input/Output (I/O) drivers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firmware</td>
<td>Firmware subpackage. The name of the subpackage includes the module type, which either refers to a Network Information Module (NIM) or Cisco Enhanced Service Module.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following example shows how to configure the router to boot using subpackages:

```shell
Cisco 4000 Series ISRs Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.x
```
The `dir bootflash:` command confirms that all subpackages and the provisioning file are in the same file system, as shown in the following example:

```
Router# dir bootflash:
Directory of bootflash:/
  11 drwx 16384 Jul 2 2012 15:25:23 +00:00 lost+found
  16225 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:30:48 +00:00 core
  178465 drwx 4096 Sep 13 2012 18:12:58 +00:00 .prst_sync
  324481 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:26:54 +00:00 .rollback_timer
   12 -rw- 0 Jul 2 2012 15:27:06 +00:00 tracelogs.696
  373153 drwx 114688 Sep 13 2012 18:46:52 +00:00 tracelogs
  32449 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 .installer
  681409 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:15:39 +00:00 .ssh
  32449 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 .installer
  697633 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 .installer
  681409 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:15:39 +00:00 .ssh
  32449 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 .installer
  697633 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 .installer
  454276 -rw- 112911096 Sep 13 2012 18:46:05 +00:00
isr4400-espbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
  454277 -rw- 2220784 Sep 13 2012 18:46:05 +00:00
isr4400-firmware_dap_sp2700.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
  454278 -rw- 371440 Sep 13 2012 18:46:05 +00:00
isr4400-firmware_fpge.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
  454279 -rw- 808112 Sep 13 2012 18:46:05 +00:00
isr4400-firmware_nim_t1e1.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
  454280 -rw- 9331440 Sep 13 2012 18:46:06 +00:00
isr4400-firmware_sm_1t3e3.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
  454281 -rw- 379632 Sep 13 2012 18:46:06 +00:00
isr4400-firmware_ucase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
  454274 -rw- 10540 Sep 13 2012 18:46:05 +00:00
isr4400-packages-universalk9.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.conf
  454282 -rw- 2220784 Sep 13 2012 18:46:06 +00:00
isr4400-rpaccess.universalk9.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
  454283 -rw- 78938264 Sep 13 2012 18:46:06 +00:00
isr4400-rpbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
  454284 -rw- 45177592 Sep 13 2012 18:46:06 +00:00
isr4400-rpcontrol.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
  454285 -rw- 114662144 Sep 13 2012 18:46:16 +00:00
isr4400-rpios-universalk9.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
  454286 -rw- 26360568 Sep 13 2012 18:46:19 +00:00
isr4400-sipbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
  454287 -rw- 13091576 Sep 13 2012 18:46:21 +00:00
isr4400-sipspa.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
  454275 -rw- 11349 Sep 13 2012 18:46:21 +00:00 packages.conf
```

Router# show running | include boot
```
boot-start-marker
boot-end-marker
license boot level adventerprise
```
Proceed with reload? [confirm]

Sep 13 18:49:39.720 R0/0: %PMAN-5-EXITACTION: Process manager is exiting: process exit with reload chassis code

Initializing Hardware ...

System integrity status: c0000600
Failures detected:
Boot FPGA corrupt

Key Sectors: (Primary,GOOD), (Backup,GOOD), (Revocation,GOOD)
Size of Primary = 2288 Backup = 2288 Revocation = 300

ROM:RSA Self Test Passed
ROM:Sha512 Self Test Passed
Self Tests Latency: 58 msec

System Bootstrap, Version 12.2(20120618:163328) [username=ESGROM_20120618_GAMMA 101], DEVELOPMENT SOFTWARE
Copyright (c) 1994-2012 by cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Mon 06/18/2012 12:39:32.05 by username

Current image running: Boot ROM0

Last reset cause: LocalSoft

Cisco ISR 4400 platform with 4194304 Kbytes of main memory

File size is 0x000002c55
Located packages.conf
Image size 11349 inode num 454275, bks cnt 3 blk size 8*512

# File size is 0x04b48098
Located isr4400-rpbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
Image size 78938264 inode num 454283, bks cnt 19273 blk size 8*512

Boot image size = 78938264 (0x4b48098) bytes

ROM:RSA Self Test Passed
ROM:Sha512 Self Test Passed
Self Tests Latency: 58 msec

Package header rev 1 structure detected
Calculating SHA-1 hash... done
validate_package: SHA-1 hash:
calculated dbe960a6:d239245c:76d93622:d6c31a41:40e9e420
expected dbe960a6:d239245c:76d93622:d6c31a41:40e9e420
Signed Header Version Based Image Detected

Using FLASH based Keys of type = PRIMARY KEY STORAGE
Using FLASH based Keys of type = ROLLOVER KEY STORAGE
RSA Signed DEVELOPMENT Image Signature Verification Successful.
Package Load Test Latency : 1159 msec
Image validated

Restricted Rights Legend

Use, duplication, or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c) of the Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights clause at FAR sec. 52.227-19 and subparagraph
Cisco IOS-XE software, Copyright (c) 2005-2014 by cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved. Certain components of Cisco IOS-XE software are licensed under the GNU General Public License ("GPL") Version 2.0. The software code licensed under GPL Version 2.0 is free software that comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY. You can redistribute and/or modify such GPL code under the terms of GPL Version 2.0. For more details, see the documentation or "License Notice" file accompanying the IOS-XE software, or the applicable URL provided on the flyer accompanying the IOS-XE software.

ROM: IOS-XE ROMMON

Router uptime is 1 minute
Uptime for this control processor is 4 minutes
--More-- System returned to ROM by reload
System image file is "bootflash:packages.conf"
Last reload reason: Reload Command

This product contains cryptographic features and is subject to United States and local country laws governing import, export, transfer and use. Delivery of Cisco cryptographic products does not imply third-party authority to import, export, distribute or use encryption. Importers, exporters, distributors and users are responsible for compliance with U.S. and local country laws. By using this product you agree to comply with applicable laws and regulations. If you are unable to comply with U.S. and local laws, return this product immediately.

A summary of U.S. laws governing Cisco cryptographic products may be found at: http://www.cisco.com/wl/export/crypto/tool/stqrg.html

If you require further assistance please contact us by sending email to export@cisco.com.

License Level: adventerprise
License Type: EvalRightToUse
--More-- Next reload license Level: adventerprise

cisco ISR4451/K9 (2RU) processor with 1133589K/6147K bytes of memory.
Processor board ID FGL1619100P
4 Gigabit Ethernet interfaces
32768K bytes of non-volatile configuration memory.
4194304K bytes of physical memory.
7393215K bytes of Compact flash at bootflash:.
781688K bytes of USB flash at usb0:.

Configuration register is 0x2102

Router# dir bootflash:
Directory of bootflash:

11 drwx 16384 Jul 2 2012 15:25:23 +00:00 lost+found
16225 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:30:48 +00:00 core
178465 drwx 4096 Sep 13 2012 18:53:29 +00:00 .prat_sync
324481 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:26:54 +00:00 .rollback_timer
12 -rw- 0 Jul 2 2012 15:27:06 +00:00 tracelogs.696
373153 drwx 114688 Sep 13 2012 18:54:03 +00:00 tracelogs
32449 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 .installer
681409 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:15:39 +00:00 .ssh
697633 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 vman_fdb
454276 -rw- 112911096 Sep 13 2012 18:46:05 +00:00 isr4400-espbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
454277 -rw- 2220784 Sep 13 2012 18:46:05 +00:00
Configuring the Router to Boot Using Subpackages

```
isr4400-firmware_dsp_sp2700.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
454278 -rw-  371440 Sep 13 2012 18:46:05 +00:00
isr4400-firmware_fpge.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
454279 -rw-  8080112 Sep 13 2012 18:46:05 +00:00
isr4400-firmware_nim_t1e1.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
454280 -rw-  9331440 Sep 13 2012 18:46:06 +00:00
isr4400-firmware_sm_1t3e3.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
454281 -rw-  379632 Sep 13 2012 18:46:06 +00:00
isr4400-firmware_ucse.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
454274 -rw-  10540 Sep 13 2012 18:46:05 +00:00
isr4400-packages-universalk9.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.conf
454282 -rw- 27218680 Sep 13 2012 18:46:06 +00:00
isr4400-rpaccess.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
454283 -rw- 78938264 Sep 13 2012 18:46:06 +00:00
isr4400-rpbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
454284 -rw- 45177592 Sep 13 2012 18:46:06 +00:00
isr4400-rpcontrol.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
454285 -rw- 114662144 Sep 13 2012 18:46:16 +00:00
isr4400-rpios-universalk9.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
454286 -rw- 26360568 Sep 13 2012 18:46:19 +00:00
isr4400-sipbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
454287 -rw- 13091576 Sep 13 2012 18:46:21 +00:00
isr4400-sipspa.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg
454275 -rw-  11349 Sep 13 2012 18:46:21 +00:00
```

```
Router# del isr4400*
Delete filename [isr4400*]?
Delete bootflash:/isr4400-espbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg? [confirm]
Delete bootflash:/isr4400-firmware_dsp_sp2700.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg? [confirm]
Delete bootflash:/isr4400-firmware_fpge.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg? [confirm]
Delete bootflash:/isr4400-firmware_nim_t1e1.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg? [confirm]
Delete bootflash:/isr4400-firmware_sm_1t3e3.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg? [confirm]
Delete bootflash:/isr4400-firmware_ucse.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg? [confirm]
Delete bootflash:/isr4400-packages-universalk9.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.conf? [confirm]
Delete bootflash:/isr4400-rpbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg? [confirm]
Delete bootflash:/isr4400-rpcontrol.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg? [confirm]
Delete bootflash:/isr4400-rpios-universalk9.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg? [confirm]
Delete bootflash:/isr4400-sipbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg? [confirm]
Delete bootflash:/isr4400-sipspa.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20120910_000023.SSA.pkg? [confirm]
```

```
Router# dir bootflash:
```
```
11 drwx 16384 Jul 2 2012 15:25:23 +00:00 lost+found
16225 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:30:48 +00:00 core
178465 drwx 4096 Sep 13 2012 18:53:29 +00:00 .prsrt_sync
324481 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:26:54 +00:00 .rollback_timer
12 -rw- 0 Jul 2 2012 15:27:06 +00:00 tracelogs.696
373153 drwx 114688 Sep 13 2012 18:54:03 +00:00 tracelogs
32449 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 .installer
681409 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:15:39 +00:00 .ssh
697633 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 vman_fdb
454275 -rw- 11349 Sep 13 2012 18:46:21 +00:00 packages.conf
```

```
Router# del packages.conf
Delete filename [packages.conf]?
```

Cisco 4000 Series ISRs Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.x
OL-29328-03

[370]
Delete bootflash:/packages.conf? [confirm]
Router# copy tftp bootflash:
Address or name of remote host []? 10.81.116.4
Source filename []? rtp-isr4400-54/isr4400.bin
Destination filename [isr4400.bin]? isr4400.bin
Accessing tftp://10.81.116.4/rtp-isr4400-54/isr4400.bin...  
Loading rtp-isr4400-54/isr4400.bin from 10.81.116.4 (via GigabitEthernet0):
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!
[OK - 424317088 bytes]
424317088 bytes copied in 351.758 secs (1206276 bytes/sec)

Back Up Configuration Files

This section provides the following examples:

- Copying a Startup Configuration File to BootFlash, on page 371
- Copying a Startup Configuration File to a USB Flash Drive, on page 372
- Copying a Startup Configuration File to a TFTP Server, on page 372

Copying a Startup Configuration File to BootFlash

Router# dir bootflash:
Directory of bootflash:

11 drwx 16384 Jul 2 2012 15:25:23 +00:00 lost+found
16225 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:30:48 +00:00 core
178465 drwx 4096 Sep 13 2012 18:53:29 +00:00 .prst_sync
324481 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:26:54 +00:00 .rollback_timer
12 -rw- 0 Jul 2 2012 15:27:06 +00:00 tracelogs.696
373153 drwx 114688 Sep 13 2012 19:03:19 +00:00 tracelogs
32449 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 .installer
681409 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:15:39 +00:00 .ssh
697633 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 .vman_fdb
13 -rw- 424317088 Sep 13 2012 19:02:50 +00:00 isr4400.bin

7451738112 bytes total (6150721536 bytes free)
Router# copy nvram:startup-config bootflash:
Destination filename [startup-config]?
1367 bytes copied in 0.116 secs (11784 bytes/sec)
Router# dir bootflash:
Directory of bootflash:

11 drwx 16384 Jul 2 2012 15:25:23 +00:00 lost+found
16225 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:30:48 +00:00 core
178465 drwx 4096 Sep 13 2012 18:53:29 +00:00 .prst_sync
324481 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:26:54 +00:00 .rollback_timer
12 -rw- 0 Jul 2 2012 15:27:06 +00:00 tracelogs.696
373153 drwx 114688 Sep 13 2012 19:03:19 +00:00 tracelogs
32449 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 .installer
681409 drwx 4096 Jul 31 2012 19:15:39 +00:00 .ssh
697633 drwx 4096 Jul 2 2012 15:27:08 +00:00 .vman_fdb
13 -rw- 424317088 Sep 13 2012 19:02:50 +00:00 isr4400.bin
14 -rw- 1367 Sep 13 2012 19:03:57 +00:00 startup-config

Cisco 4000 Series ISRs Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.x
Copying a Startup Configuration File to a USB Flash Drive

Router# copy bootflash:startup-config tftp:
Address or name of remote host []? 172.18.40.33
Destination filename [router-config]? startup-config
!!
1367 bytes copied in 0.040 secs (34175 bytes/sec)
Router# exit

Router con0 is now available

Press RETURN to get started.

Copying a Startup Configuration File to a USB Flash Drive

Router# dir usb0:
Directory of usb0:/

No files in directory

4094840832 bytes total (4094836736 bytes free)
Router# copy nvram:startup-config usb0:
Destination filename [startup-config]?
1644 bytes copied in 0.248 secs (6629 bytes/sec)
Router# dir usb0:
Directory of usb0:/

3097--rwxs--x--1644__ Oct 3 2012 14:53:50 +00:00__startup-config

4094840832 bytes total (4094832640 bytes free)
Router#

Copying a Startup Configuration File to a TFTP Server

Router# copy nvram:startup-config tftp:
Address or name of remote host []? 172.18.40.4
Destination filename [router-config]? startup-config
!!
3274 bytes copied in 0.039 secs (83949 bytes/sec)
Router#

Displaying Digitally Signed Cisco Software Signature Information

In this example, authenticity details for a consolidated package are displayed on the screen:

router# show software authenticity running
PACKAGE isr4400-rpbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711.SSA.pkg
-------------------------------------------------------------------
Image type : Special
Signer Information
  Common Name : CiscoSystems
  Organization Unit : IOS-XE
  Organization Name : CiscoSystems
  Certificate Serial Number : 50F48E17
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hash Algorithm</th>
<th>: SHA512</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Signature Algorithm</td>
<td>: 2048-bit RSA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Version</td>
<td>: A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Verifier Information**
- Verifier Name : rp_base
- Verifier Version : BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711

**PACKAGE** isr4400-rpcontrol.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711.SSA.pkg

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Image type</th>
<th>: Special</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Signer Information</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Name : CiscoSystems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization Unit : IOS-XE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization Name : CiscoSystems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate Serial Number : 50F48DA3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hash Algorithm : SHA512</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signature Algorithm : 2048-bit RSA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Version : A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Verifier Information**
- Verifier Name : rp_base
- Verifier Version : BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711

**PACKAGE** isr4400-rpios-universalk9.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711.SSA.pkg

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Image type</th>
<th>: Special</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Signer Information</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Name : CiscoSystems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization Unit : IOS-XE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization Name : CiscoSystems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate Serial Number : 50F48E98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hash Algorithm : SHA512</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signature Algorithm : 2048-bit RSA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Version : A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Verifier Information**
- Verifier Name : rp_base
- Verifier Version : BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711

**PACKAGE** isr4400-rpaccess.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711.SSA.pkg

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Image type</th>
<th>: Special</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Signer Information</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Name : CiscoSystems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization Unit : IOS-XE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization Name : CiscoSystems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate Serial Number : 50F48DB4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hash Algorithm : SHA512</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signature Algorithm : 2048-bit RSA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Version : A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Verifier Information**
- Verifier Name : rp_base
- Verifier Version : BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711

**PACKAGE** isr4400-firmware_dsp_sp2700.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711.SSA.pkg

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Image type</th>
<th>: Special</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Signer Information</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Name : CiscoSystems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization Unit : IOS-XE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization Name : CiscoSystems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate Serial Number : 50F48DBE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Displaying Digitally Signed Cisco Software Signature Information

Hash Algorithm : SHA512
Signature Algorithm : 2048-bit RSA
Key Version : A

Verifier Information
Verifier Name : rp_base
Verifier Version : BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711

PACKAGE isr4400-firmware_sm_1t3e3.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711.SSA.pkg

Image type : Special
Signer Information
Common Name : CiscoSystems
Organization Unit : IOS-XE
Organization Name : CiscoSystems
Certificate Serial Number : 50F48DC7
Hash Algorithm : SHA512
Signature Algorithm : 2048-bit RSA
Key Version : A

Verifier Information
Verifier Name : rp_base
Verifier Version : BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711

PACKAGE isr4400-firmware_nim_t1e1.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711.SSA.pkg

Image type : Special
Signer Information
Common Name : CiscoSystems
Organization Unit : IOS-XE
Organization Name : CiscoSystems
Certificate Serial Number : 50F48D74
Hash Algorithm : SHA512
Signature Algorithm : 2048-bit RSA
Key Version : A

Verifier Information
Verifier Name : rp_base
Verifier Version : BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711

PACKAGE isr4400-espbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711.SSA.pkg

Image type : Special
Signer Information
Common Name : CiscoSystems
Organization Unit : IOS-XE
Organization Name : CiscoSystems
Certificate Serial Number : 50F48D64
Hash Algorithm : SHA512
Signature Algorithm : 2048-bit RSA
Key Version : A

Verifier Information
Verifier Name : rp_base
Verifier Version : BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711

PACKAGE isr4400-sipbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711.SSA.pkg

Image type : Special
Signer Information
Common Name : CiscoSystems
Organization Unit : IOS-XE
Organization Name : CiscoSystems
Certificate Serial Number : 50F48D94
Hash Algorithm : SHA512
Signature Algorithm : 2048-bit RSA
Key Version : A

Verifier Information
Verifier Name : rp_base
Verifier Version : BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711

PACKAGE isr4400-sipspa.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711.SSA.pkg
-------------------------------------------------------------------

Image type : Special
Signer Information
Common Name : CiscoSystems
Organization Unit : IOS-XE
Organization Name : CiscoSystems
Certificate Serial Number : 50F48D7F
Hash Algorithm : SHA512
Signature Algorithm : 2048-bit RSA
Key Version : A

Verifier Information
Verifier Name : rp_base
Verifier Version : BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711

SYSTEM IMAGE
-------------

Image type : Special
Signer Information
Common Name : CiscoSystems
Organization Unit : IOS-XE
Organization Name : CiscoSystems
Certificate Serial Number : 50F48F33
Hash Algorithm : SHA512
Signature Algorithm : 2048-bit RSA
Key Version : A

Verifier Information
Verifier Name : ROMMON
Verifier Version : System Bootstrap, Version 12.2(20121015:145923

ROMMON
--------

Image type : Special
Signer Information
Common Name : CiscoSystems
Organization Unit : IOS-XE
Organization Name : CiscoSystems
Certificate Serial Number : 50801108
Hash Algorithm : SHA512
Signature Algorithm : 2048-bit RSA
Key Version : A

Verifier Information
Verifier Name : ROMMON
Verifier Version : System Bootstrap, Version 12.2(20121015:145923

Microloader
-----------

Image type : Release
Signer Information
Common Name : CiscoSystems
Organization Name : CiscoSystems
Certificate Serial Number : bace997bdd9882f8569e5b599328a448
Hash Algorithm : HMAC-SHA256
Verifier Information
Verifier Name : Hardware Anchor
Obtaining the Description of a Module or Consolidated Package

In this example, internal details of the consolidated package are displayed on the screen:

```
router# request platform software package describe file
bootflash:isr4400-rpbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711.SSA.pkg
Package: isr4400-rpbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711.SSA.pkg
Size: 79755832
Timestamp: 2013-01-15 15:46:59 UTC
Canonical path: /bootflash/isr4400-rpbase.BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711.SSA.pkg

Raw disk-file SHA1sum:
  5cd5916a216b147e3d9e33c0dc5af81d86bda94

Digital Signature Verified
Computed SHA1sum:
  de80d5920819d224113b81a1d64b17449859952e
Contained SHA1sum:
  de80d5920819d224113b81a1d64b17449859952e
Hashes match. Package is valid.

Header size: 760 bytes
Package type: 30001
Package flags: 0
Header version: 1

Internal package information:
  Name: rp_base
  BuildTime: 2013-01-14_14.55
  ReleaseDate: Mon-14-Jan-13-16:27
  BootArchitecture: i686
  RouteProcessor: overlord
  Platform: ISR
  User: mcpre
  PackageName: rpbase
  Build: BLD_MCP_DEV_LATEST_20130114_162711
  CardTypes:

Package is bootable on RP when specified
by packages provisioning file.
```
Unsupported Commands

The Cisco 4000 Series routers contain a series of commands with the logging or platform keywords that either produce no output or produce output that is not useful for customer purposes. Such commands that are not useful for customer purposes are considered as unsupported commands. You will not find any further Cisco documentation for the unsupported commands.

The following is a list of unsupported commands for the Cisco 4000 Series routers:

- clear logging onboard slot f0 dram
- clear logging onboard slot f0 voltage
- clear logging onboard slot f0 temperature
- show logging onboard slot f0 dram
- show logging onboard slot f0 serdes
- show logging onboard slot f0 status
- show logging onboard slot f0 temperature
- show logging onboard slot f0 uptime
- show logging onboard slot f0 uptime latest
- show logging onboard slot f0 voltage
- show logging onboard slot 0 dram
- show logging onboard slot 0 serdes
- show logging onboard slot 0 status
- show logging onboard slot 0 temperature
- show logging onboard slot 0 uptime
- show logging onboard slot 0 uptime latest
- show logging onboard slot 0 voltage
- show platform software adjacency r0 special
- show platform software adjacency rp active special
Unsupported Commands

- show platform software ethernet rp active l2cp
- show platform software ethernet rp active l2cp interface GigabitEthernet0
- show platform software ethernet rp active loopback
- show platform software ethernet rp active vfi
- show platform software ethernet r0 vfi
- show platform software ethernet r0 vfi id 0
- show platform software ethernet r0 vfi name GigabitEthernet0
- show platform software ethernet r0 l2cp
- show platform software ethernet r0 l2cp interface GigabitEthernet0
- show platform software ethernet r0 bridge-domain statistics
- show platform software flow r0 exporter name GigabitEthernet0
- show platform software flow r0 exporter statistics
- show platform software flow r0 global
- show platform software flow r0 flow-def
- show platform software flow r0 interface
- show platform software flow r0 ios
- show platform software flow r0 monitor
- show platform software flow r0 sampler
- show platform hardware qfp active classification feature-manager label GigabitEthernet 0 0
- show platform software interface f0 del-track
- show platform software interface fp active del-track
- show platform software rg r0 services
- show platform software rg r0 services rg-id 0
- show platform software rg r0 services rg-id 0 verbose
- show platform software rg r0 services verbose
- show platform software rg r0 statistics
- show platform software rg rp active services
- show platform software rg rp active services rg-id 0
- show platform software rg rp active services rg-id 0 verbose
- show platform software rg rp active statistics
- show platform hardware slot 0 dram statistics
- show platform hardware slot f0 dram statistics
Unsupported Commands

- show platform hardware slot 0 eobc interface primary rmon
- show platform hardware slot 0 eobc interface primary status
- show platform hardware slot 0 eobc interface standby rmon
- show platform hardware slot 0 eobc interface standby status
- show platform hardware slot f0 eobc interface primary rmon
- show platform hardware slot f0 eobc interface primary status
- show platform hardware slot f0 eobc interface standby rmon
- show platform hardware slot f0 eobc interface standby status
- show platform hardware slot f0 sensor consumer
- show platform hardware slot f0 sensor producer
Unsupported Commands